QUALITY ASSURANCE PROJECT PLAN

FOR ALPINE LAKES FLOW AUGMENTATION

Prepared for: The Washington State Department of Ecology and Chelan County Department of Natural Resources

Project No. AS1200458C • March 31, 2025 FINAL

Funded through the following grant from the Washington State Department of Ecology Office of Columbia River: WROCR-2325-ChCoNR-00050

Project EIM ID: WROCR-VER1-00015

Aspect
A Geosyntec Company

earth + water

Aspect
A Geosyntec Company

4/14/2025

Aspect Consulting Date
Bryan Berkompas, PE
Principal Hydrologist

4/14/2025

Aspect Consulting Date
Kelsey Mach, LG, CWRE

4/14/2025

Chelan County Natural Resources Department Date
Mike Kaputa
Director

4/14/2025

Washington State Department of Ecology Date
Ingrid Ekstrom
Project Manager

4/14/2025

Washington State Department of Ecology Date
McKenna Murray
Quality Assurance Coordinator

V:\120045 Chelan County\Deliverables\Alpine Lakes 2024 QAPP\Final_2025.04\REVISED Template Alpine Lakes QAPP_Draft_03312025.docx

Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

List of Appendices

Distribution List

Name:	**Mike Kaputa**
Organization:	Chelan County Natural Resources Department
Contact Information:	41 Washington Ave., Office # 201 Wenatchee, Washington 98801 Mike.Kaputa@co.chelan.wa.us (509) 667-6612

Name:	**Ingrid Ekstrom**
Organization:	Office of the Columbia River
Contact Information:	Ecology CRO 1250 West Alder Street Union Gap, Washington 98903-0009 ieks461@ecy.wa.gov (509) 823-3495

Name:	**Dan Haller**
Organization:	Geosyntec Consultants, Inc. dba Aspect Consulting
Contact Information:	1106 N 35th Avenue Yakima, Washington 98902 dan.haller@aspectconsulting.com (509) 895-5462

1 Background and Project Description

This Quality Assurance Project Plan (QAPP) outlines procedures for stage-and-release monitoring and data collection activities at three reservoirs operated by Icicle-Peshastin Irrigation District (IPID) known as Colchuck, Square, and Klonaqua (Project Lakes). The primary purpose of the efforts detailed in this QAPP are to inform IPID lake releases as a part of the Icicle Strategy Decision Support Tool.

While not the focus of this QAPP, this data is also expected to inform benefits and impacts associated with the proposed Alpine Lakes Reservoir Optimization, Modernization, and Automation Project whose purpose is to augment instream flows, and to inform design. Additionally, data collected will be used to inform temporary donations to the State Trust Water Rights Program (TWRP) of IPID reservoir water rights by better quantifying reservoir releases. A future new QAPP or QAPP addendum will be prepared to address all data and analyses required for the automation design and TWRP donations.

The efforts under this QAPP are funded by Grant Number WROCR-2325-ChCoNR-00050 from the Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) Office of Columbia River (OCR).

1.1 Study Area and Project History

There are five lakes within the Alpine Lakes Wilderness Area that were modified in the 1920s to serve as reservoirs. Locations of the reservoirs are shown on Figure 1. Four of those reservoirs are operated by IPID: Colchuck, Square, Klonaqua, and Eightmile lakes[1] (the IPID Lakes). The fifth, Upper Snow Lake Reservoir, is operated by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) and the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation (Reclamation) to support the Leavenworth National Fish Hatchery (LNFH) and store water that supports IPID. Only the Colchuck, Square and Klonaqua are the focus of this QAPP.

To operate these reservoirs, trips are made on foot or by helicopter to manually adjust release valves. Because of the time and cost required, adjustments are generally made infrequently or only at the beginning and end of the season to open and close the valves. In drought years water is historically released from all four of the IPID Lakes to augment downstream water supply, while in average years water is released from only one lake.

The multi-stakeholder Icicle Working Group (IWG) comprised of diverse agricultural, conservation, and recreational interests, tribal governments, and local, state, and federal agencies developed the Icicle Creek Water Resource Management Strategy (Management Strategy).[2] The Management Strategy was developed by consensus of IWG members and established several Guiding Principles, including improvement of instream flow in Icicle Creek, among others. The Management Strategy outlines several actions intended to support a target flow of 100 cubic feet per second (cfs) during low-flow periods in non-

[1] A QAPP addendum is anticipated following modifications at Eightmile Dam in accordance with the Eightmile Environmental Impact Statement to include monitoring at Eightmile Lake.
[2] https://apps.ecology.wa.gov/publications/documents/1812016.pdf

drought years and 60 cfs in drought years in lower Icicle Creek, as measured at the LNFH Structure No. 2, located at River Mile (RM) 3.7.

One of these actions is known as Alpine Lakes Reservoir Automation, Optimization, and Modernization Project (Project), and involves optimizing reservoir releases from the five reservoirs to augment flows in Icicle Creek for instream flow benefit, particularly at the critical stream reach (i.e., historical channel downstream of Structure 2). This Project is the focus of this QAPP, with the goal of the proposed data collection and analysis being to inform management of lake releases, quantify lake release and reservoir storage, and improve our conceptual understanding of the Project Lakes system.

The intent of this QAPP is to collect measurements at the three Project Lakes to quantify lake releases throughout the release season (July through October) via instantaneous flow measurements from outlet channels, and reservoir water level elevation and existing LiDAR measurements used to calculate changes in storage volume. Pressure transducers will be installed in the reservoirs at the beginning of the data collection period and remain in place until the end of the study period. Deployment of flow monitoring equipment will be rotated between Project Lakes, with each deployment period being the duration of the release season. The number of rotations will depend on the quantity of available flow meters (funding based, currently only two available) and status of automation design. For lakes without a deployed flow meter, staff plate reading will be collected and converted to flow when a rating curve is established. At this time, we assume a Project data collection period of two seasons, 2025 and 2026.

The Project has multiple components which will be informed by the data collected under this and future QAPPs, including engineering design and permitting for infrastructure upgrades to allow for more refined and remote management of lake releases, and development of a Decision Support Tool for informing how lake releases are managed to best meet the IWG Guiding Principles.

As a part of the Project, a temporary trust donation was submitted by IPID for Colchuck, Square, and Klonaqua lakes in accordance with chapter 90.42.080 RCW and with a proposed period of 2023 through 2026 irrigation season.[3] The trust donation was accepted by OCR in September 2023. Quantities proposed for donation were based on a “best-case-scenario” forecast of water availability, however, as a part of the trust donations IPID and Chelan County agreed to provide OCR with an annual end of season report detailing actual instream flow benefit resulting from lake releases. While the data collected under this QAPP will inform those reports, a new QAPP or QAPP addendum will be prepared to address all data and analyses required.

The current lack of comprehensive data for the IPID lake releases and the remainder of the Icicle Creek system is a limitation in understanding flow benefit downstream of RM 5.7 and apportioning the flow benefits to individual lakes. For instance, it is not known to what degree flows released from storage will benefit streamflow as measured at Structure No. 2. Some water released may end up in shallow groundwater storage along the water course between the reservoir and lower Icicle Creek, and some of the water released

[3] A 100-year trust donation was also submitted for Eightmile Lake as a part of the dam rebuild project. Additional temporary trust donations may be submitted for Eightmile Lake on a year-by-year basis.

cannot be controlled due to seepage through dams and lakebed soils. The impact of seepage on reservoir water levels and Icicle Creek streamflow is not fully understood, but measuring the outlet flows along with reservoir volume over time will help refine our understanding of the hydrologic system.

As described in further detail below, each of the Project Lakes have unique construction considerations. Square and Klonoqua both have separate dedicated channels for release flows, while Colchuck has a single combined channel which includes release/dam seepage/spill flows. Given the current the infrastructure setup at Colchuck[4], it is not feasible to measure release flows separate from the combined outlet flows. Release flows at the beginning of the season will be estimated by comparing flow measurements before and after the release valve is opened, and at the end of the season before and after the release valve is closed (assuming the delta is equivalent to the released quantities). Continuous combined outlet flow measurements will also be used to address the project goals discussed above.

The next-phase QAPP is expected to include other data sources such as:

- Icicle Creek flow rates monitored by Ecology,[5] the United States Geological Survey (USGS),[6] and the United States Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS).[7]
- Major diversions from Icicle Creek upstream of Structure 2 [Leavenworth National Fish Hatchery (LNFH), City of Leavenworth (City) and IPID].

Additional data collection proposed under a pending Reclamation WaterSMART grant application which may include flow and temperature monitoring at locations along Icicle Creek and major tributaries (Leland, French, Eightmile and Snow Creeks), reservoir release measurements at USFWS managed Snow Lake, climatological data, and tracer studies to estimate dispersion rates and velocity of reservoir releases.

1.2 Instrumentation and Monitoring

Data to be collected consists primarily of reservoir stage and measurement of release and flows from the Alpine Lake reservoirs, as described below. Other data and information collected includes site observations, field notes and photographs. Key elements of reservoir stage and release monitoring, and data collection activities at the four reservoirs operated by IPID are listed below.

The four monitoring sites are located in remote wilderness areas under easements maintained by IPID. There are no roads leading to the sites, and use of a helicopter to support equipment maintenance and repair is reserved by IPID and agreed to by US Forest Service (USFS) under IPID easements.

[4] Design for infrastructure upgrades at the Colchuck is in progress and may include a separate release pipe or channel which can be measured separately.
[5] Ecology 45B070
[6] USGS 12458000
[7] LFHW1

1.2.1 Reservoir Stage Monitoring

Pressure transducers with built in data loggers will be installed on reservoir infrastructure or on the lake bottom, at such a depth that the pressure transducers are submerged at all times and within the rated range for the pressure transducer. Photos of the pressure transducer setup at each lake is provided in Appendix A. Pressure transducers were selected due to their limited footprint and ability to be located in the Wilderness area discretely, as well as their extended battery life, ability to collect and store continuous measurements over large periods of time and the accuracy and precision of the measurements meeting the Project Measurement Quality Objectives.

The pressure transducers will continuously record water depth and atmospheric pressure at 1-hour intervals. During periodic site visits, dataloggers will be downloaded by IPID or Aspect staff. Additionally, reservoir stage will be visually measured from a staff plate (for Klonoqua and Colchuck) or measured relative to a surveyed monument using a rod and level (for Square). A real-time kinematic (RTK)-grade GPS will be used to collect lake stage elevation measurements and survey the staff plate for converting staff plate readings to elevation values.

Data stored by the data loggers will be downloaded through a cable (encased in conduit) terminating in a protected enclosure above the high-water mark. Because the pressure transducers are not barometrically compensated, barometric pressure transducers will be installed at a secure location at each lake.

1.2.2 Release Flow Monitoring

The quantity and rate of water released from storage must be measured to most effectively meet the Guiding Principal instream flow targets in Icicle Creek. Water held in storage is released using outlet pipes controlled by headgates. Headgates at Colchuck, Square, and Klonaqua lakes can be used to adjust release flows at any reservoir stage. Where headgate positions are controlled by a valve wheel and valve stem actuator, the valve stem position is measured during modification of the headgate position for operational purposes, but the measurement is not recorded as there is not a direct correlation between headgate position and flow rates.

A staff plate will be installed in the outlet channel discharge measurement location at each reservoir to measure channel water elevations, which can be converted to discharge via a stage-discharge rating curve and enable IPID to properly adjust headgate controls in real time to match desired releases. To develop a stage-discharge rating curve, headgate controls will be adjusted to increase/decrease release flows at various rates while discharge is measured using a Sontek-IQ Plus and the staff plate in the outlet channel is read and recorded. An RTK-grade GPS will be used to survey the channel transect. Discharge and corresponding staff plate measurements will be collected in the outlet channels at Colchuck, Square, and Klonaqua Lakes to develop updated rating curves for the release channels.

2 Organization and Schedule

The following individuals will be involved in establishing the monitoring networks and conducting the data collection efforts:

- Dan Haller, Aspect Project Director: Provide project management and technical support to Chelan County Natural Resources Department (CCNRD) and direct Aspect staff.
- Bryan Berkompas, Aspect Project Lead: Development of automation and flow augmentation design, and QA/QC.
- Levi Jantzer, IPID District Manager: Planning and execution management, data collection.
- CCNRD Staff: Mary Jo Sanborn, County Project Lead: Coordination between IPID, County and Aspect. County will provide additional technical staff to support field efforts as needed.
- Ingrid Ekstrom, WA Ecology OCR: Review the project draft and final reporting.

Reservoir dataloggers will be installed at Colchuck, Square, and Klonaqua lakes in July of 2025 and remain in place collecting data during the entire study period. Existing staff plates at Square and Klonoqua will be surveyed at the beginning of the data collection period. The activities under this QAPP are anticipated to consist of multiple seasons of data collection. Deployment of flow monitoring equipment will be rotated between Project Lakes, with each deployment period being the duration of the release season. The number of rotations will depend on the quantity of available flow meters (funding based, currently only two available) and status of the automation design. At this time, we assume a data collection period of two seasons, 2025 and 2026.

Contracted air lifts will be scheduled to facilitate movement of equipment and personnel to and among the four monitoring sites. Data collection and flow augmentation releases from storage will occur between July and October. Pressure transducers measuring reservoir stage will collect data year-round and will be downloaded opportunistically during IPID mobilizations to adjust reservoir releases, which are anticipated to occur periodically at each lake between July and October. Data collected under this QAPP will be transmitted to Ecology annually by January 31 of the following year as a submittal to Ecology's Environmental Information Management (EIM) Database.[8]

[8] Project EIM ID: WROCR-VER1-00015

Table 1. Anticipated Schedule for Study Period

Month	Activity
July 2025	Install dataloggers in reservoirs. Survey existing staff plates (Klonoqua, Colchuck) and survey monument (Square)
July to October 2025	Deployment and checking of flow monitoring equipment (Sontek-IQ Plus and staff plate). Anticipated two visits to each lake per season. Check dataloggers.
September/October 2025	Download datalogger data and flow data, retrieve flow monitoring equipment.
October to December 2025	Data Entry, Verification and Analysis
January 2026	EIM Submittal
July to October 2026	Deployment and checking of flow monitoring equipment. Anticipated two visits to each lake per season. Check dataloggers.
September/October 2026	Download datalogger and flow data and retrieve flow monitoring equipment.
October to December 2026	Data Entry, Verification and Analysis
January 2027	EIM Submittal

Schedule Constraints

Access to the study locations is via helicopter and seasonally and weather limited. Timing of equipment deployment and data downloads will be opportunistic and correspond to IPID's previously scheduled lake visits during the release season (July through October). We anticipate at least two site visits per season, one to install the equipment, and one to retrieve data and equipment. Dataloggers for reservoir stage monitoring will remain in place through the off-season, but flow monitoring equipment will be retrieved following the winter season to avoid equipment damage.

3 Quality Objectives

Measurement quality objectives (MQO) specify how accurate the data must be to meet Project objectives applicable to the reservoir stage and release flow data collection. In order for the data collected under this study to meet the goals outlined above, the data must meet reasonable quality standards. Field equipment accuracy is provided for reference in Table 2. The Project MQOs are outlined in Table 3 for each measurement type and are categorized into "ideal", "qualified", and "invalid".

Table 2. Field Equipment Information

Parameter	Equipment/Method	Equipment Information		
		Accuracy	Resolution	Range[1]
Reservoir Stage Monitoring				
Water Pressure (height of water column)	Van Essen TD-Diver DI801	±0.5 cm H2O	0.2 cm H20	0 - 10 m
Barometric Pressure	Van Essen Baro-Diver DI800	±0.5 cm H2O	--	1.5 m
Lake Stage Elevation	Staff Plate (Klonoqua, Colchuck)	0.01 ft	0.01 ft	0 – 10 ft
	RTK GPS Trimble R10 (Base Station) Trimble R10-2 (Rover)	0.1 ft	--	--
	Rod and level (Square)	0.01 ft	0.01 ft	--
Bottom of Lake Elevation (existing) – see footnote 8	Leica ALS80 LiDAR (existing)	<15cm RMSE (elevation)	8 returns per square meter	NA
Reservoir Release Flow Monitoring				
Velocity/ Water Level/ Discharge	SonTek FlowTracker2	±1.0% of measured velocity[2, 3] 0.01 ft (rod)	0.0001 m/s (0.0003 ft/s) 0.01 ft (rod)	±0.001 – 4.0 m/s (±0.003 to 13 ft/s)
Velocity/ Water Level/ Discharge	Sontek-IQ Plus	±1.0% of measured velocity 0.01 m/s (0.03 ft/s)[3]	0.0001 m/s (0.0003 ft/s)	±0.001 to 10 m/s (±0.003 to 32 ft/s)
Stream Stage	Staff Plate	0.01 ft	0.01 ft	0 – 10 ft
Channel Elevation	RTK GPS Trimble R10 (Base Station) Trimble R10-2 (Rover)	0.1 ft	--	--

Notes:
cm H2O = centimeters of water

m = meters
ft/s = feet per second
RMSE = Root mean squared error

1. The expected range of values for all parameters is within the measurement range of the equipment.
2. Resulting discharge accuracy is dependent upon data collection methods and site location as described below in Section 4.
3. Accuracy of area data is most strongly influenced by the accuracy of channel geometry, rather than uncertainty in stage data. A well-established index calibration can give real-time flow accuracy of about 2-3% of the measured flow. Theoretical flow calculations in a regular channel (i.e., trapezoidal, concrete lined) may give accuracy of about 3-5%. Theoretical flow calculations in natural streams are difficult. They can provide reasonable results in streams with a simple, uniform cross section, but are notably limited in wide, shallow streams where velocity can vary dramatically across the width of the stream.

Table 3. Measurement Quality Objectives

Measurement Type	Ideal	Qualified	Invalid
Lake/Stream Stage (datalogger, staff plate)	+/- 0.01 ft	+/- 0.01 ft to 0.3 ft	>+/- 0.3 ft
Discharge (Sontek-IQ Plus and FlowTracker)	+/- 5%	+/- 5% to 13%	>+/- 13%
Lake/Stream Stage Elevation (RTK GPS)	+/- 0.1 ft	+/- 0.5 ft	>+/- 0.5 ft

Reservoir Stage Monitoring

- The MQO of +/-0.01 foot (for staff plate and datalogger measurements) and +/-0.1 foot (for RTK GPS measurements which will be used to convert the datalogger readings to elevation) represents less than one percent of the freeboard for active storage in the reservoirs and presents a realistic goal for measuring reservoir stage. Wave action on the reservoir surface may result in lower precision and data will be qualified or deemed invalid based on the values presented in Table 3.
- Data quality of the existing lake bathymetric LiDAR datasets are described in the December 2016 report by Aspect and Quantum Geospatial[9] and is adequate for meeting the project goals.

[9] Information on methodology of data collection and processing is outlined in the "Alpine Lakes, Washington LiDAR Technical Data Report", Aspect Consulting and Quantum Spatial, December 2, 2016

Release Flow Monitoring

- The MQO for flow monitoring was based on Ecology Standard Operating Procedures EAP056 (6.12.11). The ideal accuracy of 5 percent of actual flow value represents a "good" rating, while discharge data between 5 and 8 percent of actual flow value corresponds to a "fair" rating, and discharge data between 8 and 13 percent will be rated "poor". All fair and poor rated measurements will be qualified, and data +/-13 percent of actual flow will be deemed invalid.
- The MQO outlined above is considered reasonable for the site conditions as the outlet channels are relatively narrow and uniform.

Release Flow Staff Plate Measurements

The MQO of +/- 0.01 foot (for staff plate readings) and +/-0.1 foot (for RTK GPS measurements which will be used to convert the datalogger readings to elevation) is acceptable to meet the goals outlined in this QAPP. Fluctuations in channel flow may result in lower precision and data will be qualified or deemed invalid based on the values presented in Table 3.

3.1 Acceptance Criteria for Existing Data

For the purposes of this Study, data previously collected using the methodology described in this QAPP, including reservoir stage and release flow measurements at Square, Klonoqua and Colchuck Lakes, will be considered to meet the quality control requirements of this QAPP.

4 Study Design

A narrative of the overall study design is provided in Section 1. This section provides the specific design details for the data collection and analysis for measuring reservoir stage and release flow.

4.1 Study Boundaries

The study area is shown on Figures 1 through 4 and consists of three distinct areas located at the three Project Lakes (Colchuck, Square and Klonaqua).

4.2 Field Data Collection

This section outlines general procedures for field data collection.

4.2.1 Sampling Locations and Frequency

Approximate sampling locations are shown in Attached Figures 2 through 4 and described in Appendix A. For each lake (Colchuck, Square and Klonaqua) there is a proposed lake stage monitoring location and a proposed outlet flow measurement location. As shown on Figures 2 through 4, the monitoring locations for Square and Klonaqua are located on separate release flow channels from the dam seepage and reservoir spills channel, while there is no separate release flow channel at Colchuck, and the monitoring location is located on the combined outlet and spill flow channel located at the reservoir dam. Specific details for each lake monitoring location are included as Appendix A.

As stated above, because the measurements at Square and Klonoqua will not include dam seepage/spill, because no groundwater seepage has been observed in the release flow channels (i.e. no flows observed in channel prior to opening the release valve), and because shallow groundwater is not thought to occur in the area around the channel (i.e. channel is in bedrock), the measurements at Square and Klonoqua lake will be representative of **release flows only**. Measuring combined spill/outflows at Colchuck still meets the goals of the project because increased flows resulting from opening and/or adjusting the lake release valve can be measured to approximate release quantities. Therefore, flows at Colchuck should be measured at the beginning of the season before and after the release valve is opened, and at the end of the season before and after the release valve is closed. As a part of the long-term automation upgrades, the outlet infrastructure at Colchuck will be made accessible and flow monitoring equipment will be installed to capture release-only flows.

Reservoir stage (staff plate, survey) and flows released from storage (flow meter and staff plate) will be measured and recorded each time a site is visited. Reservoir stage (pressure transducer) will be monitored continuously on 1-hour increments and downloaded during each site visit. Flow meters will be installed within the outlet channels for periods of time between visits to assure adequate data is collected for generating an accurate and representative stage-discharge curve.

Reservoir Stage Measurement

Reservoir stage will be monitored continuously through the study period via pressure transducer data loggers, which will be downloaded to a laptop computer or storage device during site visits to each of the lakes. Pressure transducer installation for each Project Lake is detailed in Appendix A, but generally consists of the transducer attached to a cable made out of material with minimal stretch to minimize instrument movement, installed within an enclosed stilling well/pipe secured to the ground or another solid structure. Pressure transducer data loggers are programmed to record one measurement every hour. During each site visit, a manual lake stage measurement will be collected (via staff plate, RTK GPS or rod and level survey). The offset between the staff plate and the recorded instrument value will be monitored and used to correct for any observed instrument drift.

Reservoir stage data (manual and continuous) will be displayed on a hydrograph following the end of season data download (estimated September-October). The hydrographs will show water level variations in the reservoir. Reservoir levels may be used in conjunction with existing LiDAR data[10] to estimate volumetric changes in storage over the study period.

Reservoir Release Flows

Release channel stream flows will be collected with either a SonTek-IQ Plus or the SonTek FlowTracker2 at an appropriate location, as described below and in Appendix A, along the outlet channel to generate a stage-discharge curve, and to collect confirmation flow data points to confirm the stage-discharge curve accuracy. The release flows at each lake will be measured for at least 1 week, but up to a full season to capture the greatest possible range of flows. The goal is to collect at least 1 week or up to one season of flows using the Sontek-IQ Plus, and use the FlowTracker 2 for discrete confirmation measurements, or as a stopgap during the first year at the lakes where the two available Sontek-IQ Plus sensors are not deployed. Additional periods of data collection may be needed to meet data quality objectives outlined in Section 3, and to address any changes in channel geometry.

At the same general location as the flow measurements, water level stage within the channel will be measured to an accuracy of ±0.01 foot from a staff plate. Staff plate readings will be converted to flow using the stage-discharge curve. Staff plates will be affixed to rigid objects such as a pipe driven into the stream bed or existing infrastructure. Measurements will be made in a manner consistent with Ecology's Environmental Assessment Program Standard Operating Procedure (EAS SOP) EAP042, Section 5.2.2.

[10] LiDAR data will be retrieved from Washington LiDAR Portal maintained by Washington Department of Natural Resources. The most recent LiDAR data available for the study area is from 2020.

4.2.2 Assumption of the Study Design

Flow measurement sites should be carefully chosen to ensure accurate measurements and reduce the risk of error related to future channel modifications. At Klonoqua and Square, the flow monitoring site should be located directly downstream of the release outlet such that it captures only flows from the outlet release. At Colchuck lake, flow should be measured directly downstream of the spillway/outlet structure and capture both spill and outlet flows.

Sites should be selected based on stream channel complexity, slope, sinuosity, vegetation, geology, etc. in accordance with Rantz et al, 1982. Transect locations should be selected to minimize turbulence, avoid eddies, and be wadable for the stream conditions encountered. Locations where water flows beneath an overhanging stream bank should also be avoided. Discharge measurements should be taken as near to the gaging stations as feasible (within 30 feet up or downstream). The proposed area anticipated for flow measurements at each of the lakes are shown in Figures 2 through

4.2.3 Possible Challenges and Contingencies

Logistical problems beyond the control of Aspect, IPID, and Chelan County that interfere with data collection may occur given general equipment challenges and the particularly remote and difficult to access monitoring locations. These problems include:

- Inability to access monitoring sites due to weather conditions (i.e., rain, low visibility, snow) or transportation issues (access to helicopter pilot). Flow monitoring equipment will not be deployed in the winter due to freezing condition, but dataloggers will be installed at depths within the lakes that do not experience freezing conditions.
- Changes in stream channel condition due to erosion and debris. These changes will be documented via photos and if major changes are observed, a new site location may be selected.
- Delays in project scheduling, or budget limitations on site access.
- Turnaround time for receiving purchased equipment.
- Equipment failure due to technical issues.

5 Field Procedures

This section outlines general procedures to be followed for field deployments.

5.1 Invasive Species Evaluation

Field staff will follow Ecology's SOP EAP070 (publicly available in digital format on Ecology's website), minimizing the spread of invasive species (Ecology, 2023). At the end of each field visit, field staff will clean field gear in accordance with the SOP for minimizing the spread of invasive species for areas of both moderate and extreme concern.

Field staff will minimize the spread of invasive species after conducted field work by:

- Inspecting and cleaning all equipment by removing any visible soil, vegetation, vertebrates, invertebrates, plants, algae, or sediment. If necessary, a scrub brush will be used to then rinse with clear water either from the site or brought for that purpose. This process will be continued until all equipment is clean.

5.2 Measurement and Sampling Procedures

The procedures used in this study are typical for any hydrology investigation. SOPs to be followed are publicly available in digital format online and include the following:

- Standard Operating Procedure EAP042, Version 1.2 – Measuring Gage Height of Streams (Ecology, 2018)
- Standard Operating Procedures EAP056, Version 1.3 – Measuring and Calculating Stream Discharge (Ecology, 2018)
- Standard Operating Procedures EAP057, Version 1.1 – Conducting Stream Hydrology Site Visits (Ecology, 2018)
- Standard Operating Procedures EAP058, Version 1.2 – Operation of the SonTek® FlowTracker® Handheld ADV® (Ecology, 2018)
- Standard Operating Procedures EAP070, Version 2.3 – Minimize the Spread of Invasive Species (Ecology, 2023)
- Standard Operating Procedure EAP074, Version 1.2 – Use of Submersible Pressure Transducers During Groundwater Studies (Ecology, 2019). This SOP is intended for groundwater well measurements but contains procedures that are applicable to this project.
- Standard Operating Procedure EAP082, Version 1.2 – Correction of Continuous Stage Records Subject to Instrument Drift
- Standard Operating Procedure EAP107, Version 1.0 – Measuring Transect Coordinates with a Global Positioning System (GPS)
- Discharge Measurements at Gaging Stations, USGS, Techniques and Methods 3-A8, 2010
- Stage Measurement at Gaging Stations, USGS, Techniques and Methods 3-A7, 2010

5.2.1 Reservoir Stage Monitoring

The procedure for testing, deploying, and collecting data from pressure transducers is consistent with applicable sections of EAS SOP EAP074 (Ecology, 2017).[11]

Pressure transducer and barometric pressure dataloggers will be deployed at each lake as described above and be programmed to collect at continuous 1-hour intervals. The user manual for the proposed pressure transducer make and model (Van Essen Instruments Divers) is included in Appendix B. The clock on the reservoir pressure transducer and corresponding barometric pressure logger will be synced and will match pacific standard time. The pressure transducer should be deployed such that it is below the lowest anticipated reservoir water level but within the range of rated depths for the datalogger (10m), and should be installed within a pipe that is secured to the ground or another solid structure to avoid instrument drift. Proposed locations and deployment methods for the dataloggers is detailed in Appendix A. Each reservoir pressure transducer will be connected to a download cable that will allow for data retrieval under all anticipated lake conditions.

Following deployment, at each data collection mobilization the data will be downloaded onto a laptop or field computer from both the pressure transducer and barometric pressure loggers. Additionally, the datalogger remaining battery life and storage should be checked, along with datalogger time against computer time to check for drift. If time drift has occurred, both the lake and barometric pressure datalogger time should be reset. Extra dataloggers should be brought during each deployment. If battery life or storage is noted as being low, those dataloggers should be replaced with extra dataloggers. It is anticipated that datalogger battery and storage should last full study period.

Additionally, manual reservoir stage measurements should be collected at each deployment and download for comparing to datalogger readings, making corrections where needed, and converting datalogger readings to water level elevation. Manual stage measurement methodology will vary by location but should consist of either an existing staff plate readings (Colchuck, Klonoqua), GPS readings (using RTK-grade GPS once per season to confirm staff plate has not moved), and/or rod and level survey from a previously surveyed monument (Square). Stage readings should be recorded on field notes and a photo of the staff plate should be taken.

RTK Survey Measurements

RTK survey measurements completed for this study will use the Trimble R10 for a base station and the R10-2 as a rover. The base station will be used to create a reference point, and occupied for at least 2 hours, while collecting measurements from the rover station. Measurement points are named in the field and notes will be taken to identify the corresponding measuring point. For survey measurements of staff gages, the “0” reading on the staff gage should be measured where possible, otherwise the increment surveyed should be noted for future reference. Measurements are then processed through the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA’s) Global Navigation

Satellite System (GNSS) processor, the Online Positioning User Service (OPUS) which corrects the base station reference point and rover measurements to survey-grade precisions.

Rod and Level Survey

To determine the water surface elevation relative to the top of the dam at Square Lake, a rod and level survey will be performed starting from the surveyed monument located at the top of the dam. To perform the survey, a level will first be placed at an elevation above the dam monument. Then, a survey rod or graduated pole will be placed on the dam monument and the rod measurement will be read using the level. The rod will then be moved to the water surface and the rod measurement will be read using the survey level. If the elevation difference between the lake and the dam is greater than then length of the rod, then a turning point will be used. A turning point is a point of known elevation between benchmarks used as a temporary reference point when moving the survey level. The measured elevation difference between the starting, ending, and each turning point will be used to determine the water surface elevation relative to the top of the dam as shown on the drawing below. Each measurement should be recorded in the field log.

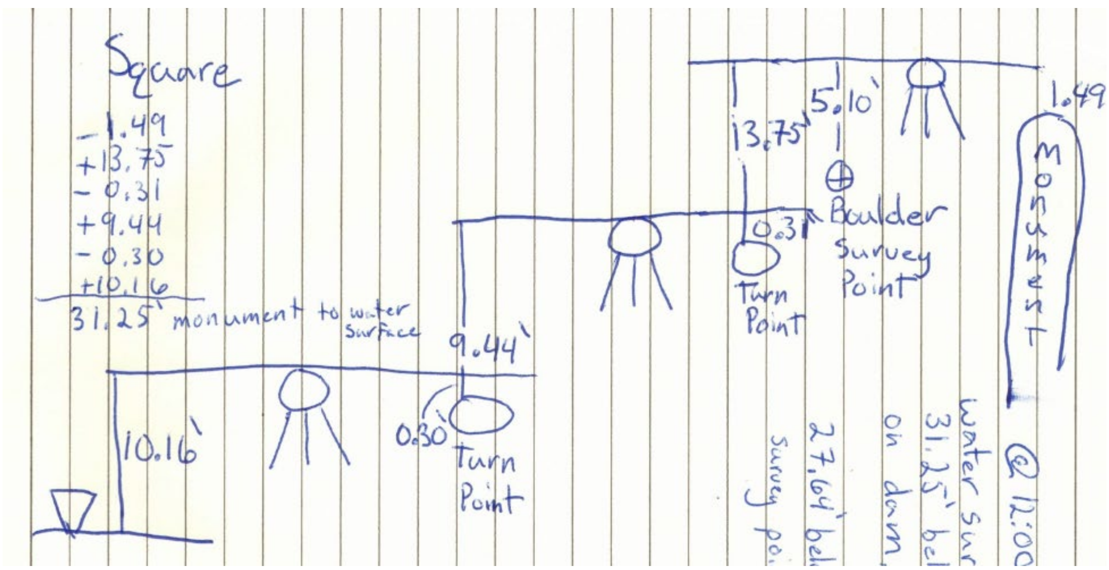


Figure 1. *Example Measurement Notes from Rod and Level Survey*

5.2.2 Release Flow Measurements

The County/IPID currently own two Sontek-IQ Plus meters. These two meters will be deployed at two lakes for as long as possible during a single season to capture a comprehensive range of flow measurements, and then rotated to two different lakes during the following season. The Sontek FlowTracker 2 will be used to take confirmation measurements during the Sontek-IQ Plus deployment. Either instrument will be deployed in the outlet channel below each reservoir to measure stream velocity, water level depth, and flow volume to calculate discharge.

In addition to the flow meter readings, stream stage readings should be recorded from the staff plate with the goal of collecting readings under at least three different flow conditions. Staff plates will be installed in the release outlet channels at each lake below the reservoirs at approximately the same stream location where flow measurements are to be collected and will be surveyed using an RTK GPS.

Sontek FlowTracker2

The methodology described here is specific to the Sontek FlowTracker2. The SontekFlow Tracker 2 will be used to take confirmation measurements during the Sontek-IQ Plus deployment. For wadable streams, or those below a 1.5-foot depth, discharge will be measured using the 6/10s method (Rantz, 1982), which assumes that mean stream velocity occurs at 60 percent of depth below the surface. Stream velocity is measured at the 60 percent depth at 30 stations across the channel. A reel tape marked in tenths of feet should be used for measuring station locations across the channel section. The tape should begin on the left bank looking upstream. Velocity measurements should be taken from left to right and should be set to average values recorded over a 40-second interval. Both sides of the channel should be entered as zero depth and zero velocity. Locations where velocity is zero or is too low to be measured should also be recorded. Start and end measurements (stage, time, and flow) should be recorded in a field log. At least one repeat measurement should be collected during each deployment.

Transect locations should be selected to minimize turbulence, avoid eddies, and be wadable for the stream conditions encountered. Locations where water flows beneath an overhanging stream bank should also be avoided. The location along the reel tape, the water level depth, and velocity will be entered into the FlowTracker2 and recorded in the field log for each measurement.

Following collection of all velocity and depth measurements along the stream, discharge will be calculated using the Mid-Section Method (utilized by the USGS) as supported by the FlowTracker2 and demonstrated below from the FlowTracker2 user manual (included in Appendix B).

Equation 5:1 - Mid-Section Method

$$\boldsymbol{Q = \sum \overline{v}_0 d_0 \left(\frac{b_1 - b_0}{2}\right) + \overline{v}_1 d_1 \left(\frac{b_2 - b_0}{2}\right) + \overline{v}_n d_n \left(\frac{b_{n+1} - b_{n-1}}{2}\right)}$$

Edge	Open water	Open Water

where, $\overline{v}$ *is the average velocity in the vertical or at the station,*
d is the water depth measured at the station,
b is the location of the station.

Sontek-IQ Plus
The methodology described here is specific to the Sontek-IQ Plus and is described in further detail in the Sontek-IQ Series user manual (included in Appendix B). SonTek-IQ products combine water velocity data and water level data with user-supplied channel geometry information about the installation site to calculate flow and volume. The channel geometry will be measured using elevations from an RTK-GPS. The Sontek-IQ should be installed in-line with the flow direction, with the downstream side and the upstream side facing the appropriate directions, generally in the center of the stream channel. To ensure the Sontek-IQ does not move, it should be bolted to solid material and the location should be surveyed at time of deployment and time of removal.

The Sontek-IQ Plus is a monostatic (same transducer is used as transmitter and receiver) Doppler current meter. The Sontek-IQ uses sound speed to convert Doppler shift to water velocity using an internal temperature sensor and user-entered salinity (assumed to be negligible in a freshwater stream). Water level measurements are taken by the sensor using a vertical beam and integrated pressure sensor. The pressure sensor used should be calibrated during deployment for changes in atmospheric condition. The Sontek-IQ takes velocity and stage data once every 30 seconds and are accumulated and averaged over a user-specific sample duration (between 1 to 15 minutes). Data is collected continuously and recorded to the Sontek-IQ's internal recorder.

The water level is combined with the channel geometry to calculate cross sectional wetted area, which is multiplied by the mean channel velocity to calculate real-time discharge. The relationship between measured velocity and mean channel velocity can be determined using theoretical flow calculations (used when no reference flow data are available) or index velocity calibration (when reference discharge measurements are available). Readings from the FlowTracker2 will be used to complete the index velocity calibration to increase the accuracy of the flow measurements.

The Sontek-IQ flow meter will be semi-permanently installed to take continuous discharge measurements for a full season to collect a broad range of flow measurements for the stage-discharge relationship development. It is expected that one season of data collection will be adequate to establish a stage-discharge rating curve. If channel geometry changes, an additional flow measurements should be taken over the period of a site visit to confirm that the rating curve has not changed. If the measurements indicate the rating curve has changed (i.e., flows and stage readings no longer correspond in accordance with the rating curve), the Sontek-IQ Plus should be re-deployed for an extended period to reestablish the rating curve.

5.2.3 Stage-Discharge Rating Curves

Discharge measurements will be used in tandem with the staff plate readings installed within the channel (described below) to develop a stage-discharge rating curve. Following initial deployment and development of a rating curve, the instruments will also be used to check flow periodically and to confirm the rating curve accuracy.

Rating curves predict discharge from stage based on an empirical mathematic formula. For the portion of the rating curve determined by data, any formula can be used that fits the data. For extrapolation of the rating curve beyond the highest/lowest measured flows, stage-discharge data for each stream will be predicted using a best-fit curve extending from the known data set. The rating curve will be extended up to twice the highest stage measurement, and one-half the lowest stage measurement. Any extension of the curves beyond this will only be used to estimate flow, and the corresponding flow numbers will be qualified to signify they are only an estimate.

Rating curves were previously developed in 2016 (approximately 8 years ago) for the reservoir outlet channels as a part of the 2016 and subsequent 2019 Pilot Studies (Aspect, 2016 and 2019). Rating curves are being updated in 2024 to account for changes in channel geometry that occur overtime, new flow monitoring locations, and access to newer technologies. To develop a stage-discharge rating curve, discharge from the lake is increased or decreased by changing headgate valve settings to simulate a variety of flow conditions, and channel water level measurements (from staff plates) and corresponding flow measurements (from FlowTracker2 and/or Sontek-IQ series) are collected.

Discharge measurements should be taken as near to the gaging stations as feasible (<30 feet). The ability to measure high flows at a site could be limited by turbulence and the ability to wade the channel. Rating curve values for higher flows that cannot be measured safely may need to be extrapolated from lower measured flows. A greater number of recorded flows and corresponding stages (minimum of 3) will assist in the calculation of more accurate rating curves for each reservoir outlet channel.

5.3 Outlier Resolution

Data will be evaluated for outliers in accordance with the methodology described below for both reservoir stage measurements and release flow measurements.

5.3.1 Reservoir Stage

Should a manual reservoir stage measurement be unexpectedly high or low with regard to the sensor water level, the manual water level will be measured again to verify the measurement. Upon verification, further analysis and investigation will occur in a stepped response. Should a continuous reservoir stage measurement be unexpectedly high or low in comparison to previous measurements, the measurement will be compared to manual readings and evaluated for if the measurement should be flagged as an outlier and removed from corresponding analyses.

First, water levels in the other lakes/streams will be analyzed for a trend in rise or loss of water level. Second, changes in the surrounding system will be investigated. Finally, if the analysis of other project area reservoirs or streams, or investigation has not explained the high or low water level measurement, the measurement will be flagged as “suspect.” If subsequent measurements confirm the water level and it can be confirmed in the field that there is no potential for a false reading, then it will be included in the analysis. If subsequent measurements do not confirm the measurement, or if the possibility of a false reading cannot be ruled out, the data will be flagged as “unusable.”

5.3.2 Release Flow

Should flow measurements or staff plate readings at the reservoir outlet channels be measured as unexpectedly high or low with comparison to expected or previous measurements, measurements will be taken again to verify measurements are correct. Upon verification, further analysis and investigation will occur in a stepped response.

For the staff plate outlet channel readings, confirmation will be made that no changes in the staff plate location have occurred by surveying the staff plate at least once per year. Second, visual comparisons will be made from the previous flow conditions to current flow conditions to better understand if flow conditions are truly different, or if channel conditions have changed and a new stage-discharge curve is needed.

For the flow measurements, equipment should be evaluated to confirm it is functioning as expected. Second, if equipment is determined to be working properly, a confirmation measurement should be taken using the alternative flow measurement method (i.e., FlowTracker2). Finally, the monitoring location should be evaluated for appropriateness in accordance with Section 4 above, and a new flow monitoring location should be chosen for taking a verification measurement.

5.4 Data Verification and Validation

Data verification will occur following each data collection mobilization during the flow augmentation period from approximately July through October, and prior to analysis at the end of the Study. The quality of data collected in the field will be reviewed in accordance with Section 5.2.3 so that adjustments are made adaptively to improve data collection during the following mobilization. Multiple lines of evidence will be used to verify measured discharge rates from the lakes and lake stage. Likewise, lake stage measurements will be downloaded from pressure transducer data loggers and checked against manual measurements and photographs of each lake. Volumes released from or remaining in storage will be estimated from lake stage-volume estimates derived from existing LiDAR and also from observed outlet channel discharge rates and verified against lake stage measurements. In addition to ongoing data verification throughout the period of data collection, final verification of data will occur at the end of the season, prior to performing annual analyses.

5.5 Data Quality (Usability) Assessment

A first phase data usability assessment will occur in the field by comparing duplicate and confirmation measurements in real time as described in Section 3. A second phase data usability assessment will also occur following data verification following each field mobilization. First, data will be assessed to confirm they meet the MQOs established in Table 3, Section 3 of this QAPP and flagged where appropriate. Second, outlier data points and questionable data will be identified in accordance with Section 5.3 of this QAPP using confirmation and duplicate measurements. Field notes, photographs and other lines of evidence will be examined, consistent with the approach described above in Section 3, to determine validity of outlier data. The data usability process is anticipated to be iterative, and additional considerations may arise during the data analysis process. Any data excluded from the analysis or flagged due to data quality concerns will be noted in data displays and analyses.

6 Quality Control

This section describes the actions to be taken before, during and after a measurement to assume quality control. These actions are both quantitative and qualitative requiring on-the-fly judgement from an experienced field staff. When field conditions, such as high velocities, wave action, or channel instability, make it impossible to collect accurate stage data or to define an accurate stage-discharge relation, stage data should be collected with the greatest accuracy feasible.

In accordance with Table 4 below, data collected in the field will be reviewed in real time and following each data collection to assure equipment is functioning as expected and results measurements are in line with the MQOs. If equipment is not functioning as expected, troubleshooting will occur in the field and equipment will be calibrated, fixed or replaced at the following mobilization, if needed.

Specific quality control procedures (both in field and out of field) along with corrective actions for each data collection method are described below and summarized in Table 4.

6.1 Steps in Preparation of Field Work

Specific recommended quality control steps to be completed in preparation for field work are outlined in Table 4 and summarized below.

Prior to each mobilization, staff should review this QAPP and make sure to pack and charge (where appropriate) required equipment and reference materials including:

- Extra battery for Sontek-IQ Plus;
- Replacement staff plate in case of damage;
- Replacement barologger and pressure transducer in case of damage or instrument malfunction;
- Field notes, measurements, maps and photos from prior deployment;
- Blank field forms and writing utensil (included as Appendix C);
- User manuals (included as Appendix B) downloaded on field computer or tablet;
- Measuring tape;
- Field tablet or laptop;
- FlowTracker2 and battery;
- Rod and level;
- Extra cable reader for datalogger.

Beginning of season only:

- RTK GPS equipment and battery;
- Sontek-IQ Plus and battery;

Staff will also check the Sontek-IQ Plus and Sontek Flow Tracker 2 using the manufacturer's user manuals (included as Appendix B) to check equipment functionality and battery life, and upgrade firmware and charge batteries as needed. Additionally, calibration of flow meters will occur in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.

6.2 Steps Taken in Field

Specific recommended quality control steps to be taken in the field are outlined in Table 4 and summarized below.

6.2.1 Reservoir Stage

Duplicate and confirmation measurements will be collected in accordance with Table 4 below.

Staff Plate Readings

For staff plate readings, duplicate measurements will be collected until two measurements in a row are within the MQO of error (0.01 ft). A survey measurement using an RTK grade GPS will be taken at least once per year, or when staff plate damage is observed to confirm that staff plate movement has not occurred. Any observed movements will be noted in the field log.

Rod and Level Survey

Duplicate measurements should be collected in the field using the “reverse measurement” method (i.e. taking a measurement going back to the survey monument from the reservoir level). If the reverse measurement is greater than 0.02 ft different, the measurement should be retaken.

Pressure Transducer Data

Raw pressure transducer data will be viewed in the field in graphic and tabular format to observe for any outliers in reading values or missing data. If equipment malfunction is observed, the datalogger should be replaced at the time of the field visit, and notes should be made regarding the new datalogger serial number and installation date/time/location. Additionally, confirmation measurements should be taken in the field at each data download using an RTK GPS of the reservoir level, staff plate reading (for Klonoqua and Colchuck only), or rod and level survey from surveyed monument (for Square only).

6.2.2 Release Flow

Confirmation measurements should be collected in the field at each site mobilization. Following installation of the Sontek-IQ plus within the channel and initiating data collection, a confirmation flow measurement should also be collected using the FlowTracker2. Flow measurements between the FlowTracker2 and Sontek-IQ Plus should be within 20 percent. If the measurements are greater than 20 percent, a second confirmation measurement should be collected with the FlowTracker2. If measurements are still more than 20 percent different, field staff should evaluate the Sontek-IQ Plus for any errors. To further refine where the error might be coming from, the velocity and water depth measurements should be compared between the Sontek-IQ Plus and FlowTracker2. If needed, service should be performed on the Sontek-IQ Plus in accordance with the user manual included as Appendix B to address errors.

Stage-discharge curves will be evaluated for continued accuracy by taking photographs and making observations of stream channel conditions to determine if changes have occurred. Additional data evaluation will occur on an as-needed basis (such as to develop or re-develop stage-discharge curves) and on an annual basis at the end of the season.

6.3 Steps Taken After the Field

Specific recommended quality control steps to be taken after the field are outlined in Table 4 and summarized below.

6.3.1 Reservoir Stage

Pressure transducer data will be compensated using the barometric pressure measurements at the end of each season. Reservoir stage measurements will be evaluated by comparing corrected pressure transducer readings to manual measurements (staff plate, RTK GPS survey, rod and level survey) to identify and correct for instrument drift or movement overtime.

6.3.2 Release Flow

Following end of season data download, the full season of Sontek-IQ Plus flow measurements will be reviewed for outliers in accordance with Section 5.3.2 or gaps in data collection. For observed outliers, the corresponding stage and velocity measurements will be evaluated to determine if there was a malfunction in one or more of the equipment sensors. Outlier data will be removed from the dataset, and actions will be taken to fix the malfunctioning sensor where appropriate or evaluate if adjustments to the methodology of the sensor deployment are warranted.

Table 4. Quality Control Procedures

Data Type	*Out of Field*		*In Field*	
	Action	**Frequency**	**Action/Correction**	**Frequency**
RTK GPS Measurements	Correction of measurements using NOAA's Online Positioning User Service (OPUS)	Following each mobilization	**Duplicate measurements.** Take duplicates until two in a row are within the MQO of error.	One random
Flow Measurements (Sontek-IQ Plus and Sontek FlowTracker2)	Check equipment battery level and functionality. Charge batteries and replace equipment as needed.	Prior to each mobilization	**Confirmation measurement of discharge from Sontek-IQ Plus (with FlowTracker2).** If >20% RPD different, take repeat confirmation measurement with FlowTracker2. Perform service on Sontek-IQ if needed.	Each site mobilization
	Calibrate and check flow meters	Per manufacturer recommendations	**Confirmation measurement of water depth reading from Sontek-IQ Plus (with staff plate).** If >0.02 ft different, take repeat confirmation measurement with Sontek-IQ and staff plate, and calibrate Sontek-IQ if needed.	Each site mobilization
Staff plate readings	Bring replacement staff plate in case of damage	For each mobilization	**Duplicate measurements.** Take duplicates until two in a row are within the MQO of error.	Each measurement
			Confirm staff plate location with RTK GPS measurement. If staff plate moved, make note in field log.	Once per year **or** if staff plate damage is observed
			Check staff plate for obvious damage. If staff plate moved, make note in field log and repair and resurvey at next visit.	Each measurement
Rod and level survey	NA	NA	**Duplicate measurements.** Take a reverse measurement (i.e. going back to the survey monument from the reservoir level), retake if reverse measurement is >0.02 ft different.	Each measurement
Pressure transducer data	Bring replacement pressure transducers	For each mobilization	**Confirmation measurement.** Take measurement from staff plate, RTK GPS and/or rod and level survey. If >0.02 ft different, correct datalogger readings based on manual measurement.	Each data download
	Compensate pressure transducer readings using barometric pressure	End of season	**Look at data graph on field computer and observe for outliers, time discrepancies, and missing data.** Note date/time of any observed outliers in data that may indicate change in datalogger elevation or hardware issues. Reassess datalogger deployment method and update deployment method/location if feasible/appropriate. Make note in field log of updated location. Reset datalogger time to compensate for drift if time discrepancy is observed. Replace datalogger if needed.	Each data download
	Plot manual measurements against pressure transducer readings to observe discrepancies and make corrections.	End of season		

7 Data Management Procedures

7.1 Reservoir Stage Monitoring

For each reservoir stage monitoring location, manual stage measurements (staff plate, surveyed measurements or rod, and level survey) will be recorded in the field log and entered into a spreadsheet along with date, time, and person completing the measurements, with units and reference points specified. Survey measurements will include vertical and horizontal datum and accuracy attributes. The measurement data will be reviewed to avoid transcription errors and then used for data analysis. Comments regarding water access or other field-specific information will be entered as notes specific to each field mobilization. Copies of field notes will be retained.

Data from pressure transducers and barometric pressure loggers will be downloaded as .csv files or equivalent. The barometric pressure data will be used to correct the pressure transducer readings using an appropriate software, spreadsheet, or scripted methodology, resulting in a measurement of feet of water column head over the pressure transducer. Feet of head over the pressure transducer will be converted to lake stage elevations using RTK GPS measurements.

Corrected reservoir stage elevation will be converted to volume using the stage-storage relationships established from the existing bathymetric LiDAR data and documented in the Alpine Lakes 2017 Flow Augmentation Pilot Study (Aspect, 2018).

7.2 Release Flow Monitoring

Flow data collected from flow meters (Sontek-IQ Plus and FlowTracker2), including velocity readings, water levels, corresponding discharge readings, and associated metadata are recorded on the devices and will be saved in .csv format or equivalent, and documented in field notes. Staff plate measurements will be recorded in the flow meter and manually, along with date, time, name of person completing measurements, and notes. Staff plate measurements will be entered into a spreadsheet for subsequent use in creating a stage-discharge rating curve, or conversion to flow measurements using an existing stage-discharge rating curve. A stage-discharge rating curve will be developed following standard USGS methods (Kennedy 1984).

8 Reporting and Field Activity Assessments

Following the end of the flow monitoring period and final annual download of reservoir stage datalogger data, a final data compilation will occur in accordance with Section 7 following the schedule established in Section 2. Data collected under this QAPP will be transmitted to Ecology annually by January 31 of the following year as a submittal to Ecology's EIM Database using Study ID: WROCR-VER1-00015. This data will include the following:

Reservoir Stage

- Compensated and corrected datalogger readings for each monitoring location converted to water level elevation.
- Staff plate readings converted to elevation, and RTK GPS survey measurement of staff plate elevation.
- Water level elevations read directly from an RTK GPS or from reference to a surveyed monument in the format of water level elevation.

Release Flows

- Discharge, wetted width, cross sectional area, average depth, and spot and average velocity measurements.
- RTK GPS survey measurements of stream channel profile and staff plate elevations.
- Staff plate readings converted to elevation.

9 References

Aspect Consulting (Aspect), 2017, Alpine Lakes 2016 Flow Augmentation Pilot Study, Draft Memorandum, May 11, 2017.

Aspect Consulting (Aspect), 2018, Alpine Lakes 2017 Flow Augmentation Pilot Study, Memorandum, April 17, 2018.

Aspect Consulting (Aspect), 2019, Alpine Lakes 2019 Drought Year Flow Augmentation Pilot Study, Memorandum, Aspect Consulting, January 8, 2020.

Aspect Consulting and Quantum Spatial, 2016, Alpine Lakes, Washington LiDAR Technical Data Report, December 2, 2016.

Maidment, D.R., editor, 1993, Handbook of Hydrology, New York, New York, McGraw-Hill, Inc.

Kennedy, E.J., 1984. Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations of the United States Geological Survey, Chapter A10, Discharge Ratings At Gaging Stations, Book 3, Applications of Hydraulics. United States Geological Survey, Publication.

Rantz, S. E. and others, 1982, Measurement and Computation of Streamflow: Volume 1, Measurement of Stage and Discharge, Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2175, U.S. Geological Survey, Washington.

SonTek, 2012, Sontek-IQ Series Principles of Operation, SonTek, September 2012.

SonTek, 2019, FlowTracker2 User's Manual 1.6, SonTek, January 2019.

United States Geological Survey (USGS), 2010, Discharge Measurements at Gaging Stations, USGS, Techniques and Methods 3-A8, 2010, https://pubs.usgs.gov/tm/tm3-a8/tm3a8.pdf

United States Geological Survey (USGS), 2010, Stage Measurement at Gaging Stations, USGS, Techniques and Methods 3-A7, 2010, https://pubs.usgs.gov/tm/tm3-a7/tm3a7.pdf

Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology), 2017, Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs) for Environmental Assessment Program, Washington State Department of Ecology, http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/eap/quality.html

Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology), 2018, Quality Assurance Project Plan (QAPP) Template for Projects Without Water Quality Sampling, Washington State Department of Ecology, Publication No. 18-11-018.

Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology), 2018, Standard Operating Procedure EAP107, Version 1.0 – Measuring Transect Coordinates with a Global Positioning System (GPS), https://apps.ecology.wa.gov/publications/documents/1803230.pdf

Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology), 2018, Standard Operating Procedures EAP057, Version 1.1 – Conducting Stream Hydrology Site Visits, https://apps.ecology.wa.gov/publications/SummaryPages/1803208.html

Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology), 2018, Standard Operating Procedure EAP042, Version 1.2 – Measuring Gage Height of Streams, https://apps.ecology.wa.gov/publications/documents/1803232.pdf

Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology), 2018, Standard Operating Procedures EAP058, Version 1.2 – Operation of the SonTek® FlowTracker® Handheld ADV®, https://apps.ecology.wa.gov/publications/documents/1803209.pdf

Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology), 2018, Standard Operating Procedures EAP056, Version 1.3 – Measuring and Calculating Stream Discharge, https://apps.ecology.wa.gov/publications/documents/1803203.pdf

Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology), 2019, Standard Operating Procedure EAP082, Version 1.2 – Correction of Continuous Stage Records Subject to Instrument Drift, https://apps.ecology.wa.gov/publications/documents/1903210.pdf

Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology), 2019, Standard Operating Procedure EAP074, Version 1.2 – Use of Submersible Pressure Transducers During Groundwater Studies, https://apps.ecology.wa.gov/publications/SummaryPages/1903205.html

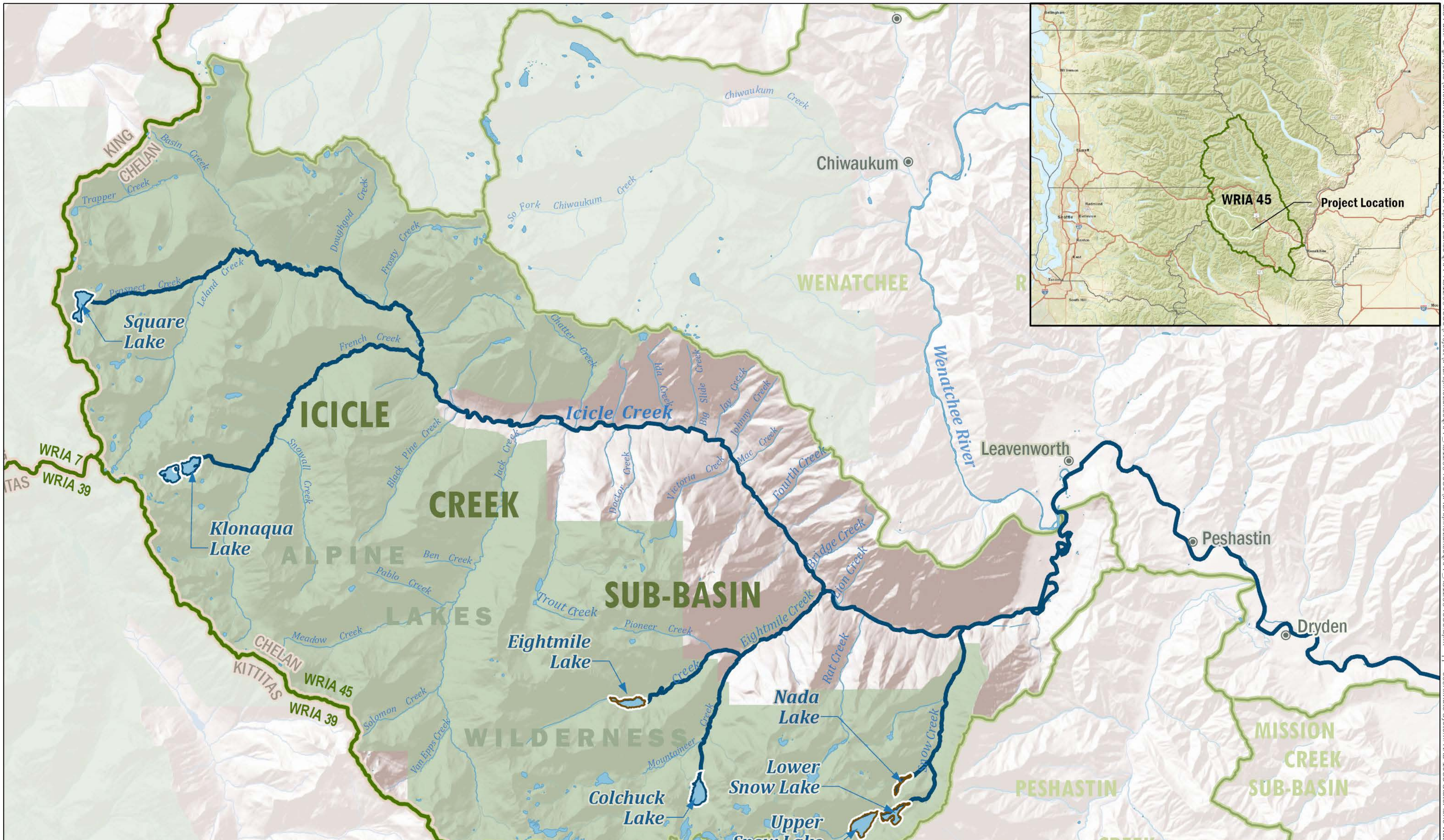
Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology), 2023, Standard Operating Procedures EAP070, Version 2.3 – Minimize the Spread of Invasive Species, https://apps.ecology.wa.gov/publications/UIPages/documents/2303225.pdf

10 Limitations

Work for this project was performed for the Chelan County Natural Resources Department (Client), and this report was prepared in accordance with generally accepted professional practices for the nature and conditions of work completed in the same or similar localities, at the time the work was performed. This report does not represent a legal opinion. No other warranty, expressed or implied, is made.

All reports prepared by Aspect Consulting for the Client apply only to the services described in the Agreement(s) with the Client. Any use or reuse by any party other than the Client is at the sole risk of that party, and without liability to Aspect Consulting. Aspect Consulting’s original files/reports shall govern in the event of any dispute regarding the content of electronic documents furnished to others.

FIGURES

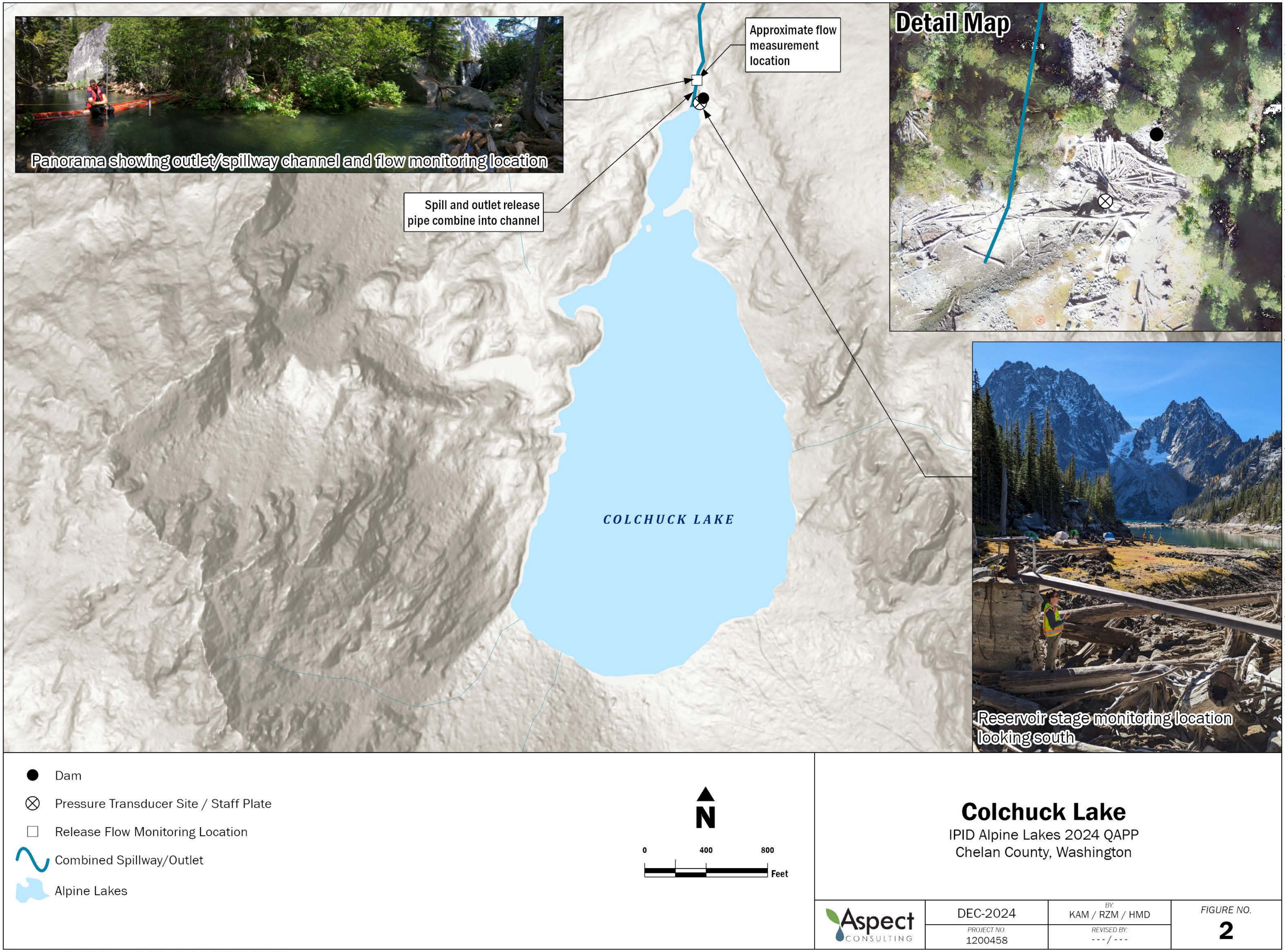


Study Area Map

Quality Assurance Project Plan for
Alpine Lakes Flow Augmentation
WRIA 45, Washington

Aspect Consulting	DEC-2024	BY: EAH / JRB	FIGURE NO.
	PROJECT NO. 120045	REVISED BY: RMB	1

Basemap Layer Credits || World Street Map: Esri, HERE, Garmin, NGA, USGS, NPS
Shaded Relief: Copyright:(c) 2014 Esri



Data source credits: MS / RAP || Basemap Service Layer Credits: Esri, NASA, NGA, USGS, FEMA

- Dam and survey monument location
- Pressure Transducer Site
- Release Flow Monitoring Location
- Barologger
- Survey Monument
- Spillway/Stream
- Outlet Channel
- Alpine Lakes

N

0 400 800 Feet

Square Lake

IPID Alpine Lakes 2024 QAPP
Chelan County, Washington

Aspect CONSULTING

DEC-2024	BY: KAM / RZM / HMD	FIGURE NO.	3
PROJECT NO. 1200458	REVISED BY: - - - / - - -		

GIS Path: G:\projects\ChelanCountyDNR_120045\IPID Alpine Lakes QAPP AS1200458C\Project\IPIDAlpineLakesQAPP_AS1200458C\IPIDAlpineLakesQAPP_AS1200458C.aprx: 03 - Square Lake || User: haley.duran || Print Date: 12/27/2024

Data source credits: MS / RAP || Basemap Service Layer Credits: Esri, NASA, NGA, USGS, FEMA

- Dam
- Pressure Transducer Site / Staff Plate
- Release Flow Monitoring Location
- Outlet Channel/Stream
- Approximate Spillway
- Alpine Lakes

N

0 400 800 Feet

Klonaqua Lakes

IPID Alpine Lakes 2024 QAPP
Chelan County, Washington

Aspect CONSULTING	DEC-2024	BY: KAM / RZM / HMD	FIGURE NO. 4
	PROJECT NO. 1200458	REVISED BY: - - - / - - -	

Data source credits: MS / RAP || Basemap Service Layer Credits: Esri, NASA, NGA, USGS, FEMA

GIS Path: G:\projects\ChelanCountyDNR_120045\IPID Alpine Lakes QAPP AS1200458C\Project\IPIDAlpineLakesQAPP_AS1200458C\IPIDAlpineLakesQAPP_AS1200458C.aprx: 04 - Klonaqua Lakes || User: haley.duran || Print Date: 12/27/2024

Appendix A

Monitoring Site Descriptions and Photos

A. Monitoring Site Descriptions and Photos

A.1. Colchuck Lake

Colchuck Lake drains to Mountaineer Creek, which runs into Eightmile Creek and empties into Icicle Creek just downstream of River Mile 8. Colchuck Lake is partially impounded by a small stone masonry dam located at the north end of the reservoir (Photograph 1). Stored water is released through a 30-inch outlet pipe using a head gate operated by hand wheel and valve stem. The hand wheel is located on top of a small concrete tower in the forebay of the reservoir (Photograph 1). The head gate control tower is accessed using a wooden plank.

The lake and barometric pressure transducer will be installed within a stilling well located on the dam as shown on Photograph 1. The existing staff plate on the dam will be surveyed and used to take stage measurements. Flow in the outlet channel directly downstream of the dam as shown on Photograph 3 includes spill flows over the dam, and release flows from a pipe located at the base of the dam wall. Because access to the outlet release pipe is generally not feasible, flow will be monitored directly downstream from the dam in the area directly downstream as shown on Photograph 2. Therefore, flow measurements at Colchuck will be representative of both spill and release flows. The staff plate at the flow monitoring location as shown in Photograph 2 will be surveyed and used to record water level in the channel.

Photograph 1. *Colchuck Dam, Staff Plate and Stilling Well.*

Photograph 2. *Colchuck Flow Monitoring Location*

Photograph 3. *Colchuck, Backside of Dam Showing Spill Over Dam, Release Flows through Pipe at Bottom of Wall.*

A.2. Square Lake

Square Lake drains into Prospect Creek that runs into Leland Creek which empties into Icicle Creek between River Miles 27 and 28. Square is partially impounded by a small stone masonry dam located at the east end of the reservoir (Figure 4). Stored water is released through an outlet tunnel using a head gate operated by hand wheel and valve stem. The hand wheel is located in a control box southwest of the dam. The outlet tunnel extends about 200 feet east of the high-water mark of the reservoir to a release channel (shown on Figure 5) that extends an additional 200 feet to the east where it empties into water flowing over the dam, forming Prospect Creek.

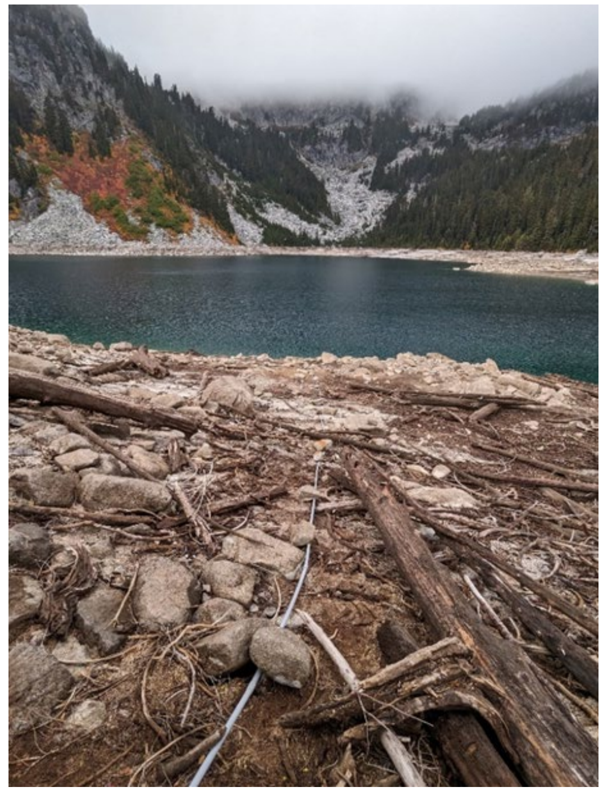
The lake pressure transducer will be installed directly in the lake within a small diameter pipe like shown within Figure 7 below, with a cable attached to a tree as shown on Figure 6 below. The barometric pressure transducer will be installed by the tree where the lake pressure transducer is attached. There is no existing staff plate for the reservoir, so the lake level will be measured either directly with an RTK GPS, or a rod and level in reference to a surveyed monument located on the dam as shown in Figure 4 below.

Flow in the outlet channel directly downstream of the dam as shown on Figure 5 consists of just release flows. According to past site visits, no water has been observed in the release channel (i.e., spill or groundwater seepage) prior to the release valve being open. The staff plate at the flow monitoring location as shown in Figure 5 will be surveyed and used to record water level in the channel.

Photograph 4. *Square Lake Monument on Dam.*

Photograph 5. *Square Lake Release Channel Monitoring Location.*

Photograph 6. Square Lake Datalogger Access



Photograph 7. Square Lake Datalogger Piping

A.3. Klonaqua Lake (Lower)

Klonaqua drains to French Creek that empties into Icicle Creek between River Miles 21 and 22. Klonaqua is partially impounded by a stone masonry and earthen dam located at the northeast end of the reservoir. Stored water is released through an outlet pipe excavated through native earth about 50 feet south of the dam using a head gate operated by hand crank and valve stem. The valve stem is located above the high-water mark, adjacent to a manhole that extends down to the outlet pipe.

The lake and barometric pressure transducers will be installed within a pipe in the manhole located by the valve stem shown within Figure 9 below. The staff gage installed within the manhole will be surveyed used to take manual water level measurements.

Flow in the outlet channel directly downstream of the dam as shown on Figure 8 consists of just release flows. According to past site visits, no flowing water has been observed in the release channel (i.e., spill or groundwater seepage) prior to the release valve being open. The staff plate at the flow monitoring location as shown in Figure 8 will be surveyed and used to record water level in the channel.

Photograph 8. *Flow Monitoring Location*

Photograph 9. *Reservoir Stage Monitoring Location*

APPENDIX B

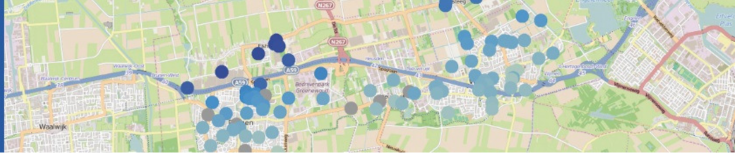
Equipment Manuals

PRODUCT MANUAL

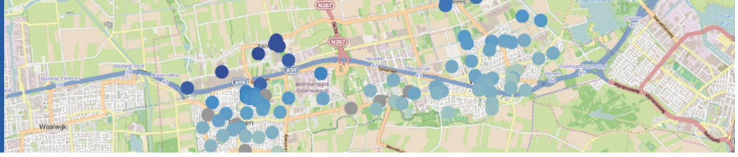
Diver

Eijkelkamp
Soil & Water

P.O. Box 4, 6987 ZG Giesbeek
Nijverheidsstraat 30,
6987 EM Giesbeek, The Netherlands
T +31 313 880 200
E info@eijkelkamp.com
I www.eijkelkamp.com



Contents



1 Introduction

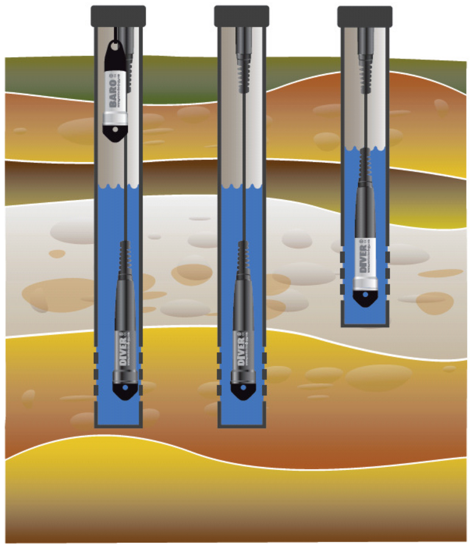
1.1 About this Manual

This manual contains information about Van Essen Instruments' Divers®. It contains a description of the Mini-Diver (DI5xx), Micro-Diver (DI6xx), Cera-Diver (DI7xx), Baro-Diver (DI500) and the CTD-Diver (DI27x). The number in brackets designates the Diver model.

This section contains a brief introduction to the Diver's measurement principles, an instrument designed to measure groundwater levels and temperatures. Furthermore, a brief description of the software that can be used in combination with the Divers is provided. The next section contains the technical specifications for each type of Diver. The following section covers the installation of Divers in monitoring wells and in surface waters. This is followed by a description of how to maintain a Diver. The next section discusses conductivity measurements using the CTD-Diver and conductivity calibration. The last section includes the answers to frequently asked questions.

1.2 Operating Principle

The Diver is a datalogger designed to measure water pressure and temperature. Measurements are subsequently stored in the Diver's internal memory. The Diver consists of a pressure sensor designed to measure water pressure, a temperature sensor, memory for storing measurements and a battery. The Diver is an autonomous datalogger that can be programmed by the user. The Diver has a completely sealed enclosure. The communication between Divers and Laptops/field devices is based on optical communication.



The Divers measures the absolute pressure. This means that the pressure sensor not only measures the water pressure, but also the air pressure pushing on the water surface. If the air pressure varies, the measured water pressure will thus also vary, without having to vary the water level.

1.3 Measuring Water Levels

All Divers establish the height of a water column by measuring the water pressure using the built-in pressure sensor. As long as the Diver is not submerged in water it measures atmospheric pressure, just like a barometer. Once the Diver is submerged this is supplemented by the water's pressure: the higher the water column the higher the measured pressure. The height of the water column above the Diver's pressure sensor is determined on the basis of the measured pressure.

To measure these variations in atmospheric pressure a Baro-Diver is installed for each site being measured. The barometric compensation for these variations in atmospheric pressure can be done using the Diver-Office software. It is also possible to use alternative barometric data such as data made available online.

The compensated values can be related to a reference point such as the top of the monitoring well or a vertical reference datum, for example the Ordnance Datum Newlyn (ODN).

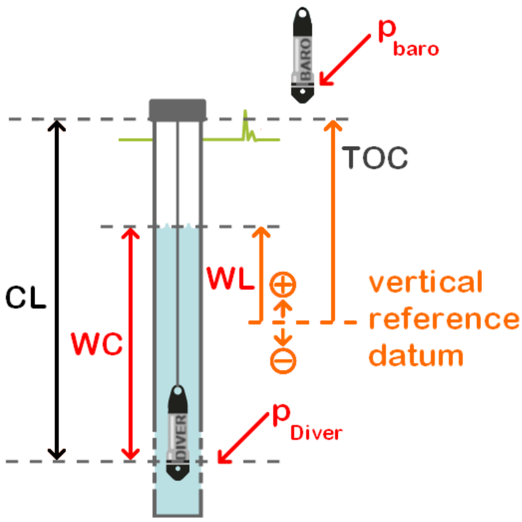
Theory

This section explains how to calculate the water level in relation to a vertical reference datum using the Diver and Baro-Diver's measurements.

The figure below represents an example of a monitoring well in which a Diver has been installed. In this case we are therefore interested in the height of the water level (WL) in relation to the vertical reference datum. If the water level is situated above the reference datum it has a positive value and a negative value if it is situated below the reference datum.

The top of casing (TOC) is measured in relation to the vertical reference datum and is denoted in the diagram below as TOC cm. The Diver is suspended with a cable with a length equal to CL cm.

The Baro-Diver measures the atmospheric pressure (p_{baro}) and the Diver measures the pressure exerted by the water column (WC) and the atmospheric pressure (p_{Diver}).



The water column (WC) above the Diver can be expressed as:

$$WC = 9806.65 \frac{p_{Diver} - p_{baro}}{\rho \cdot g} \tag{1}$$

where p is the pressure in cmH_2O, g is the acceleration due to gravity (9.81 m/s^2) and ñ is the density of the water (1,000 kg/m^3).

The water level (WL) in relation to the vertical reference datum can be calculated as follows:

$$WL = TOC - CL + WC \tag{2}$$

By substituting WC from equation (1) in equation (2) we obtain:

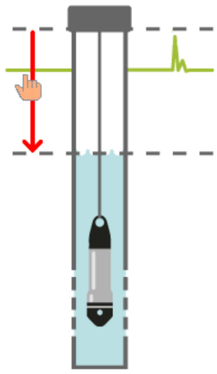
$$WL = TOC - CL + 9806.65 \frac{p_{Diver} - p_{baro}}{\rho \cdot g} \tag{3}$$

If the cable length is not exactly known, it can be determined using a manual measurement. From the figure below it is clear that the manual measurement (MM) is taken from the top of casing to the water level. The value of the water level is positive unless, in exceptional circumstances, the water level is situated above the top of casing.

The cable length can now be calculated as follows:

$$CL = MM + WC \quad (4)$$

where the water column (WC) is calculated on the basis of the measurements taken by the Diver and the Baro-Diver.



Comments:

- If the pressure measured by the Diver and the Baro-Diver is measured at different points in time, it is necessary to interpolate. The software automatically performs this interpolation.
- It is possible to enter manual measurements into the software. The software subsequently automatically calculates the cable length.

Example:

The top of casing is measured to be 150 cm above the Ordnance Datum Newlyn (ODN). TOC = 150 cm. The cable length is not exactly known and is therefore measured manually. It turns out to be 120 cm: MM = 120 cm.

The Diver measures a pressure of 1,170 cmH_2O and the Baro-Diver measures a pressure of 1,030 cmH_2O. Substituting these values into equation (1), results in a water column of 140 cm above the Diver: WC = 140 cm.

Substituting the values of the manual measurement and the water column in equation (4) results in the following cable length: CL = 120 + 140 = 260 cm.

The water level in relation to the ODN can now be easily calculated using equation (2): WL = 150 – 260 + 140 = 30 cm above ODN.

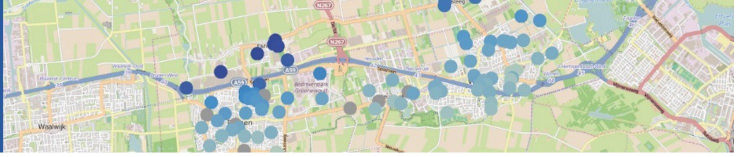
1.4 Measuring Temperature

All Divers measure the groundwater temperature. This can, for example, provide information about groundwater flows. This also makes it possible to determine the diffusion of (polluted) water.

The temperature is measured using a semiconductor sensor. This sensor not only measures the temperature, but also uses the value of the temperature to at the same time compensate the pressure sensor and electronics (incl. the crystal clock) for the effects of temperature.

1.5 Diver models

Various types of Divers are available. All Divers measure the absolute pressure and temperature. The summary below explains the differences between the various Diver types.



Mini-Diver

This is the basic Diver, manufactured using a stainless steel (316 L) casing with a 22 mm diameter. The Mini-Diver is capable of storing a maximum of 24,000 measurements (date/time, pressure and temperature).

Micro-Diver

This is the smallest Diver with a diameter of 18 mm and a stainless steel (316 L) casing. The Micro-Diver is capable of storing a maximum of 48,000 measurements. This Diver is suitable for pipes with a diameter of at least 20 mm (0.787 in).

Cera-Diver

This Diver comes with a 22 mm diameter ceramic casing and is suitable for use in brackish and salt water or in other aggressive environments. The Cera-Diver is capable of storing a maximum of 48,000 measurements.

CTD-Diver

In addition to taking pressure and temperature measurements, this Diver also measures the water's conductivity. The 22 mm diameter ceramic casing is suitable for brackish or saltwater applications as well as in aggressive environments. The CTD-Diver is capable of storing a maximum of 48,000 measurements.

Baro-Diver

This Diver measures atmospheric pressure and is used to compensate for the variations in atmospheric pressure measured by the other Divers. This Diver can also be used for measuring shallow water levels up to 1 meter. The stainless steel (316 L) casing has a diameter of 22 mm. The Baro-Diver is capable of storing a maximum of 24,000 measurements.

The Micro-Diver, Cera-Diver and CTD-Diver incorporate a greater range of functionality than the Mini-Diver and Baro-Diver. These last two Divers only offer a fixed measurement option. This means that the Diver takes measurements on the basis of user-defined intervals.

The other Divers offer the following measurement options:

- Pre-programmed pump tests or user-defined pump tests.
- Average values over a specified time period.
- An event-based option. In this case the Diver only stores measurements once the percentage variation limit set for the pressure or conductivity (CTD-Diver) measurement is exceeded. This percentage variation can be specified by the user.

For applications in surface waters it is possible to average the values over a specified period. The average values are then stored. The effects of waves are ‘averaged out’ this way.

If the memory of the Diver is full, the Diver will stop measuring. The Diver has a non-volatile memory which means that the data is preserved if for whatever reason the battery is empty.

1.6 Diver-Office Software

Diver-Office is a software package used in conjunction with every type of Diver described in this manual. The latest version of Diver-Office can be downloaded from www.vanessen.com.

Diver-Office operates under all current versions of Microsoft Windows and is easy to install on a laptop or PC.

The Diver-Office makes it possible to communicate with the Divers and/or to start/stop them. The measurement data recorded by the Divers can be read out at any time. You have the option of reviewing, compensating for variations in atmospheric pressures, printing or exporting the measurement data to various file formats for processing by other software. All values and settings are stored in a database. Furthermore, the raw Diver data is also stored as a file.

The software program’s manual contains additional information about the operation of Diver-Office.

2 Technical Information

The Diver is a datalogger housed in a cylindrical casing with a suspension eye at the top. The suspension eye can be unscrewed and is designed to install the Diver into the monitoring well and protects the optical connector. The electronics, sensors and battery are installed maintenance-free into the casing. The Diver may not be opened. In case of any complaints, please contact your supplier.

The name of the datalogger, the model number, the measurement range and the serial number (SN) are clearly identified on the side of the Diver. This information is burnt-in using a laser and is consequently chemically neutral and inerasable.

2.1 Calibration Procedure

The Diver uses a pressure sensor and is calibrated in centimetres water column (cmH2O). The conversion factor from mbar to cmH2O is:

1 mbar = 1.01972 cmH_2O or 1 cmH_2O = 0.980665 mbar

The calibration procedure involves calibrating and verifying the calibration of each individual diver. Firstly the calibration is done. Each Diver is immersed in a water bath. Subsequently, this bath is adjusted to 5 different temperatures, 10, 20, 30, 40 and 50 °C. At each temperature 6 rising and 6 falling pressures are created at 0, 20, 40, 60, 80, 100% of the measuring range. These pressures are created by a calibrated pressure calibrator. The pressures measured by the Diver are then analysed and processed and then stored in a look-up table within the Diver. Each diver has his own unique table. To verify the calibration, a calibration check is performed. During this check five rising and falling pressures are created, namely 10, 30, 50, 70, 90% of the measuring range, at 15 and 35 °C. Finally the Diver is checked against the given specifications.

2.2 Manufacturer's Certificate

The Diver passes calibration if it meets all specifications. A manufacturer's or calibration certificate is available upon request.

2.3 Specifications

Aside from the Baro-Diver for atmospheric pressure and temperature measurements, there are 12 Diver versions for pressure and temperature measurements and three CTD-Diver versions for pressure, temperature and conductivity measurements. The summary below summarises the measurement ranges of the water columns that the Divers are capable of measuring:

Mini-Diver:

- Up to 10 metres (DI501)
- Up to 20 metres (DI502)
- Up to 50 metres (DI505)
- Up to 100 metres (DI510)

Micro-Diver:

- Up to 10 metres (DI601)
- Up to 20 metres (DI602)
- Up to 50 metres (DI605)
- Up to 100 metres (DI610)

Cera-Diver:

- Up to 10 metres (DI701)
- Up to 20 metres (DI702)
- Up to 50 metres (DI705)
- Up to 100 metres (DI710)

CTD-Diver:

- Up to 10 metres (DI271)
- Up to 50 metres (DI272)
- Up to 100 metres (DI273)

Baro-Diver:

- Barometric variations (DI500)

2.4 Baro-Diver, Mini-Diver, Micro-Diver and Cera-Diver

The above Diver models meet the following general specifications:

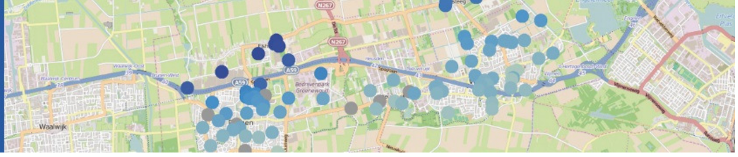
	Mini-Diver	**Micro-Diver**	**Cera-Diver**
Diameter	Ø 22 mm	Ø 18 mm	Ø 22 mm
Length (incl. suspension eye)	~ 90 mm	~ 88 mm	~ 90 mm
Weight	~ 55 gram	~ 45 gram	~ 50 gram
Protection class	IP68, 10 years continuously submerged in water at 100 m		
Storage/Transport temperature	-20 °C to 80 °C (affects battery life)		
Operating temperature	0 °C to 50 °C		
Material			
Casing	316L stainless steel (active substance no. 1.4404)	316L stainless steel (active substance no. 1.4404)	Zirconia (ZrO_2)
Pressure sensor	Alumina (Al_2O_3)		
Suspension eye/	Nylon PA6 glass fibre reinforced 30%		
nose cone			
O-rings	Viton®		
Communication	Optically separated		
Memory capacity	24,000 measurements	48,000 measurements	48,000 measurements
Memory	Non-volatile memory. A measurement consists of date/time/pressure/temperature		
Sample interval	0.5 sec to 99 hours		

	Mini-Diver	Micro-Diver	Cera-Diver
Sampling options			
Fixed interval	Yes	Yes	Yes
Event-based	No	Yes	Yes
Pump test (to be configured by user)	No	Yes	Yes
Averaging	No	Yes	Yes
Battery life*	8-10 years, depending on use		
Theoretical capacity	5 million measurements 2000× memory readouts 2000× programming		
Clock accuracy	Better than ± 1 minute per year at 25 °C Better than ± 5 minutes per year within the calibrated temperature range		
CE marking	EMC in accordance with the 89/336/EEC directive Basic EN 61000-4-2 standard		
Emissions	EN 55022 (1998) + A1 (2000) + A2 (2003), Class B		
Immunity	EN 55024 (1998) + A1 (2000) + A2 (2003)		
Certificate number	06C00301CRT01	06C00300CRT01	06C00299CRT01

2.5 CTD-Diver

The CTD-Diver meets the following general specifications:

Diameter	Ø 22 mm
Length	135 mm incl. suspension eye
Weight	~ 95 gram
Material casing	Zirconia (ZrO_2)
Protection class	IP68, 10 years continuously submerged in water at 100 m
Memory capacity	48,000 measurements
Sampling rate	1 sec to 99 hours
Sampling options	
Fixed interval	Yes
Event-based	Yes
Pump test (to be configured by user)	Yes
Averaging	Yes



Conductivity	
measurement range	(0 – 120) mS/cm
accuracy	±1% of reading with a minimum of 10 µS/cm
resolution	0.1% of reading with a minimum of: - 1 µS/cm for 30 mS/cm range - 10 µS/cm for 120 mS/cm range
Battery life*	8-10 years, depending on use
Theoretical capacity	2 million measurements 500× memory readouts 500× programming
CE marking	EMC in accordance with the 89/336/EEC directive Basic EN 61000-4-2 standard
Emissions	EN 55022 (1998) + A1 (2000) + A2 (2003), Class B
Immunity	EN 55024 (1998) + A1 (2000) + A2 (2003)

The other parameters are identical to the Cera-Diver.

* **The Diver is always active.** The leakage current of the integrated battery is dependent on the temperature. If the Diver is used, stored or transported for extended periods of time under high temperature, this will adversely affect the life of the battery. The battery's capacity at lower temperatures is reduced, but this is not permanent. This is normal behaviour for batteries.

** The accuracy of the clock is highly dependent on temperature. The clock is actively compensated for temperature in all models.

2.6 General

Transport	Suitable for transportation by vehicles, ships and airplanes in the supplied packaging.
Resistance to vibration	In accordance with MIL-STD-810.
Mechanical shock test	In accordance with MIL-STD-810, for light-weight equipment.

2.7 Temperature

The following specifications apply to the Mini, Micro, Cera, CTD-Diver and Baro-Diver for temperature measurements:

Measurement range	-20 °C to 80 °C
Operating Temperature (OT)	0 °C to 50 °C (for Baro-Diver: -10 °C tot 50 °C)
Accuracy (max)	± 0.2 °C
Accuracy (typical)	± 0.1 °C
Resolution	0.01 °C
Response time (90% of final value)	3 minutes (in water)

2.8 Pressure

The specifications for atmospheric and water pressure measurements vary by type of Diver. The specifications below apply at operating temperature.

Mini-Diver	DI501	DI502	DI505	DI510	Unit
Water column measurement range	10	20	50	100	mH_2O
Accuracy (max)	± 2.5	± 5	± 12.5	± 25	cmH_2O
Accuracy (typical)	± 0.5	± 1	± 2.5	± 5	
Long-term stability	± 2	± 4	± 10	± 20	cmH_2O
Resolution	0.2	0.4	1	2	cmH_2O
Display resolution	0.058	0.092	0.192	0.358	cmH_2O
Burst pressure	15	30	75	150	mH_2O

Micro -Diver	DI601	DI602	DI605	DI610	Unit
Water column measurement range	10	20	50	100	mH_2O
Accuracy (max)	± 3	± 6	± 15	± 30	cmH_2O
Accuracy (typical)	± 1	± 2	± 5	± 10	
Long-term stability	± 3	± 6	± 15	± 30	cmH_2O
Resolution	0.2	0.4	1	2	cmH_2O
Display resolution	0.058	0.092	0.192	0.358	cmH_2O
Burst pressure	15	30	75	150	mH_2O

Cera -Diver	DI701	DI702	DI705	DI710	Unit
Water column measurement range	10	20	50	100	mH_2O
Accuracy (max)	± 2	± 4	± 10	± 20	cmH_2O
Accuracy (typical)	± 0.5	± 1	± 2.5	± 5	
Long-term stability	± 2	± 4	±10	± 20	cmH_2O
Resolution	0.2	0.4	1	2	cmH_2O
Display resolution	0.058	0.092	0.192	0.358	cmH_2O
Burst pressure	15	30	75	150	mH_2O

CTD-Diver	DI271	DI272	DI273	Unit
Water column measurement range	10	50	100	mH_2O
Accuracy (max)	± 2	± 10	± 20	cmH_2O
Accuracy (typical)	± 0.5	± 2.5	± 5	
Long-term stability	± 2	± 10	± 20	cmH_2O
Resolution	0.2	1	2	cmH_2O
Display resolution	0.058	0.092	0.358	cmH_2O
Burst pressure	15	75	150	mH_2O

Baro -Diver	DI500	Unit
Water column measurement range	150	mH_2O
Accuracy (max)	± 2	cmH_2O
Accuracy (typical)	± 0.5	
Long-term stability	± 2	cmH_2O
Resolution	0.1	cmH_2O
Display resolution	0.058	cmH_2O
Burst pressure	15	mH_2O

2.8.1 Water column measurement range

The height of water above the Diver that can be measured.

2.8.2 Accuracy (max)

Accuracy is the proximity of measurement results to the true value. Algebraic sum of all the errors that influence the pressure measurement. These errors are due to linearity, hysteresis and repeatability. During the Diver calibration process a Diver is rejected if the difference between the measured pressure and the applied pressure is larger than the stated accuracy.

2.8.3 Accuracy (typical)

At least 67% of the measurements during the calibration check are within 0.05% FS of the measurement range.

2.8.4 Long-term stability

The stability of the measurement over a period of time when a constant pressure is applied at a constant temperature.

2.8.5 Resolution

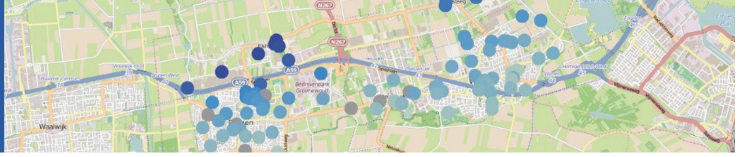
The smallest change in pressure that produces a response in the Diver measurement.

2.8.6 Display resolution

The smallest increment in pressure that the Diver can measure.

2.8.7 Burst pressure

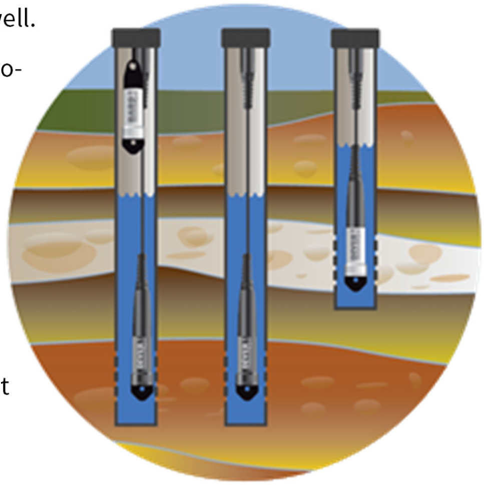
The pressure at which the Diver pressure sensor will fail.



3 Diver Installation and Maintenance

3.1 Introduction

In practice the Diver is usually suspended in a monitoring well.



The illustration to the right depicts a set of Divers and a Baro-Diver for compensating for barometric pressure.

In addition to the regular Divers, a Baro-Diver that acts as a barometer and records atmospheric pressure is installed at each measurement site. Atmospheric pressure data must be used to compensate the pressure measurements recorded by the Divers for variations in atmospheric pressure. A Baro-Diver, designed for taking atmospheric pressure measurements, is recommended for this purpose. In principle, a single Baro-Diver is sufficient for an area with a radius of 15 kilometres (depending on terrain conditions. Also see Appendix I *'Use of Divers at elevations'*).

The following describes how to install the Divers and Baro-Diver.

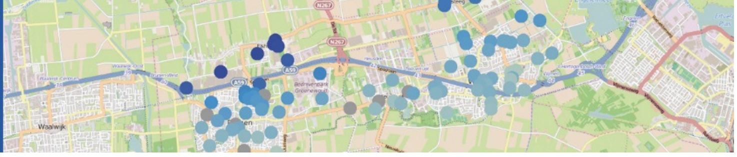
3.2 Installation in a Monitoring Well

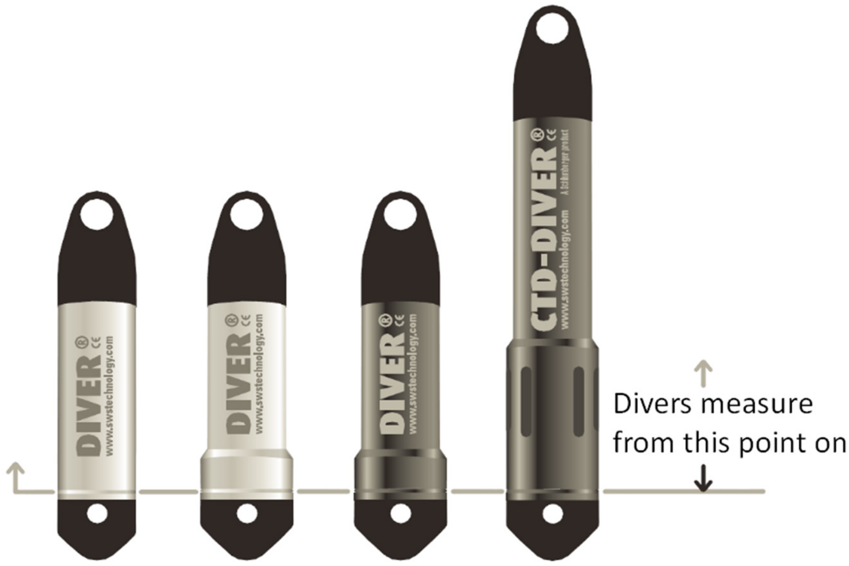
Divers are normally installed below water level in a monitoring well. The depth at which a Diver can be suspended is dependent on the instrument's measurement range. Further information about the Diver's range is contained in the Section *'Technical Information'*.

First determine the length of the non-stretch suspension cable on the basis of the lowest groundwater level. Provide for the required additional length for attaching the cable to the Diver and the length of the suspension eye at the upper end when you cut the wire to size.

Next use wire clips to attach the ends of the cable to the monitoring well's end cover and the Diver's suspension eye, respectively.

To determine the distance of the pressure sensor in the monitoring well requires the precise length of the cable to be known, to which the distance to the location of the pressure sensor in the Diver must be added to obtain the overall operating length. This is depicted in the diagram below.





It is also possible to install the Diver with a Diver Data Cable (DDC). This cable allows you to read out the Diver at the top of the monitoring well by using a USB interface cable.

Diver suspended by steel wire

Diver suspended by DDC

Note: When the Diver is installed, it is possible for the groundwater level to be temporarily elevated. The reverse is true when the Diver is removed. The groundwater level may then be temporarily lowered.

If the cable length is not exactly known, it can, for example, be calculated using the Diver-Office and a manual measurement (measuring tape measurement from the top of casing) (manual measurement + Diver measurement – Baro-Diver reading = cable length).

The following must be taken into consideration in installing a CTD-Diver:

- Preferably do not install in very tight fitting piping.
- The C value readings are most accurate (most reliable) when the through flow of the water to be measured is unimpeded.
- The preference is for CTD-Divers to be suspended at screen height.

- In contrast to 'regular' Divers, the position within the monitoring well in relation to the screen affects the measurements. Here too the following dictum applies: the greater the through flow the more reliable the measurement.
- The monitoring well is made of non-metal containing material.
- Ions released from the walls of the monitoring well can/will affect the measurements.
- Glued monitoring wells: it is known that certain glue types affect measurements.
- Since CTD-Divers and Cera-Divers are used in brackish and salt water, it is not recommended to use stainless steel wiring. Stainless steel wire and mounting clamps can rust which may cause the Diver to fall into the well.

3.3 Installation in surface water

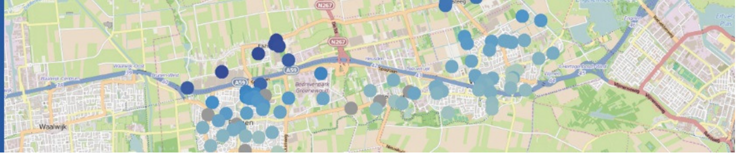
If a Diver is to be used in surface waters it is important that there is sufficient circulation around the Diver's sensors. Water flows prevent the pipe from silting up and ensures that the Diver in fact measures the surrounding water rather than the stagnating water in the monitoring well itself. We recommend that a monitoring well of at least 2" is used, of which the openings must be kept clear of, for example, algae and plant growth as much as possible.

If a steel pipe is used (see pictures) with a 1" monitoring well installed inside the pipe, allow the Diver's extremity to protrude somewhat beyond the end of the pipe so that the Diver's sensors also come into contact with the water at this point.

Install the fixing post to which the monitoring well is attached so that the Diver benefits from the maximum water depth and flow, for example in the middle of the ditch. To prevent vandalism, a steel pipe with a steel cap that can be locked can be used.

Position the Divers deep enough so that they remain below a possible ice layer.

This picture shows a Diver whose sensor protrudes from below the monitoring well. A thinner monitoring well has been placed into the steel pipe in which the Diver can be installed.



3.4 The use of Divers at Elevation

Divers can be used at any elevation ranging from 300 metres below sea level to 5,000 metres above sea level. Appendix I contains further information on the use of Divers at elevations.

3.5 Baro-Diver

The Baro-Diver must be installed in such a way that it only measures atmospheric pressure under all conditions. A location that is not subject to rapid temperature variations is preferred.

3.6 Use in Seawater

Do not use a Mini-Diver or Micro-Diver in seawater.

The Mini-Diver and Micro-Diver are made of 316L stainless steel. This material is not suited for brackish and/or seawater because it is subject to corrosion/crevice corrosion. Corrosion is caused by the salt content, and can be enhanced by temperature and the other substances in the water.

We recommend that you select the Cera-Diver and/or CTD-Diver for use in semi-saline water and/or seawater. These Divers are made of ceramic materials that are able to withstand semi-saline water and/or seawater.

3.7 Diver Maintenance

In principle, the Diver does not require any maintenance. When required, the casing can be cleaned with a soft cloth. Calcium and other deposits can be removed with white vinegar. The flow-through opening can also be rinsed with water and/or white vinegar.

Note: only use diluted acid solutions if the Diver is seriously dirtied and other cleansers are not effective.

Never use any hard brushes, abrasives or sharp objects for cleaning the Diver and always rinse it properly with clean water after cleaning, particularly near the flow-through openings. Do not use any powerful jets. This could damage the pressure sensor.

---

4 CTD-Diver

4.1 Measuring Conductivity

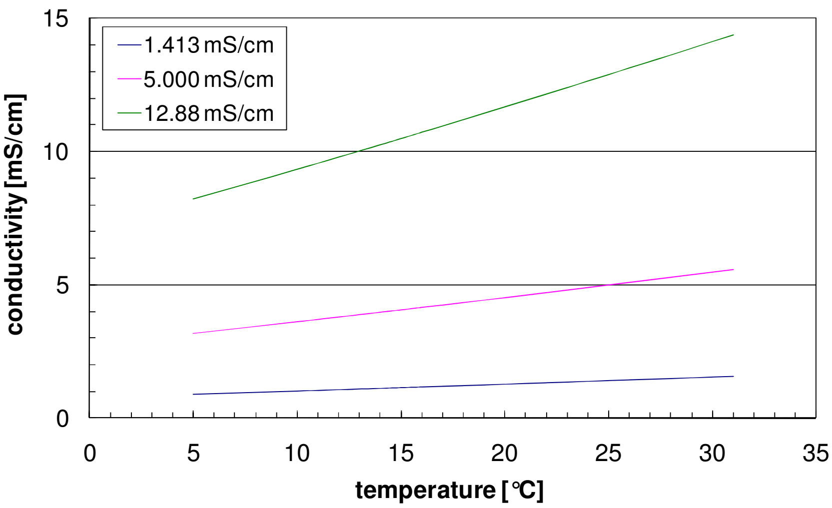
In addition to water levels and temperature, the CTD-Diver also measures the water's electrical conductivity in millisiemens per centimetre (mS/cm). A change in conductivity may be caused by for example changes in water flow, or increasing/decreasing pollution or salinization.

The CTD-Diver measures the conductivity of a solution. The CTD-Diver can be programmed by the user to measure either the true conductivity or the specific conductivity. The specific conductivity is defined as the conductivity as if the temperature is 25 °C. This setting must be programmed prior to starting the CTD-Diver.

The conductivity is measured using a 4-electrode measuring cell. This type of measuring cell is relatively insensitive to sensor fouling, thus keeping maintenance to a minimum. *The measuring cell combined with the selected measurement method results in an electrolysis-free measurement system.*

Example

The conductivity of a liquid depends on the type of ions in the liquid and to a significant degree on the liquid's temperature. This dependency is indicated on the packaging of the calibration liquids, for example. The diagram below displays the conductivity as a function of temperature for three different calibration liquids. The specified value of the calibration liquid is the conductivity of the liquid at 25 °C.



As a rule of thumb it can be assumed that conductivity varies by 2% for each 1 °C change in temperature. This means that a calibration liquid rated at 5 mS/cm (at 25 °C) still only has a conductivity of approximately 4 mS/cm at 15 °C.

The table below lists a number of typical conductivity values for various types of water.

Type	Conductivity [mS/cm]
Tap water	0.2 – 0.7
Groundwater	2 - 20
Seawater	50 - 80

4.2 Factory Calibration

Each CTD-Diver is calibrated for pressure, temperature and conductivity:

1. First the CTD-Diver is calibrated for pressure and temperature. This process is identical for each Diver and is described in the chapter calibration procedure.
2. Then the factory calibration of the conductivity sensor is performed. The CTD-Diver immersed in a 6 ascending conductivity values. The exact value of the conductivity of the liquid is determined with a calibrated reference sensor.
3. During the calibration check of the conductivity sensor, the CTD-Diver is immersed in 6 conductivity fluids: (0.15, 0.9, 3.0, 12, 35 and 75) mS/cm. The values measured by the CTD-Diver are compared to the reference values, this determines whether the deviation is within the limits of the specifications.

The factory calibration is stored permanently in the CTD-Diver.

4.3 Field calibration

The conductivity sensor is, in contrast to the pressure and temperature sensor, sensitive to pollution. Therefore, it is advisable to check the sensor regularly. A simple verification consists of two steps. Firstly, take the CTD-Diver out of the well and shake it dry. Then take an actual reading, the reading should be 0 mS/cm. The reading may be slightly higher if the conductivity sensor is not completely dry. Second, immerse the CTD-Diver in a conductivity calibration solution. Ensure, that there are no air bubbles trapped inside the conductivity measurement cell. Take another actual reading and compare with the value of the calibration solution. Note: if the CTD-Diver is set to read Conductivity, i.e. not Specific Conductivity ensures that the reading is corrected for temperature.

If the deviation is greater than the specified accuracy it is recommended to recalibrate the CTD-Diver. It is important to note that this calibration should be performed in an environment with a stable temperature. It is necessary to make use of good reference fluids and clean tools in order to perform a proper and reliable recalibration.

The conductivity accuracy specification of the CTD-Diver for the full 0-120 mS/cm measurement range can only be achieved if the CTD-Diver is calibrated at all four calibration points (1.413; 5; 12.88 and 80 mS/cm).

If you choose to use the CTD-Diver in a specific application, you may decide to perform the calibration on no 1 or 2 points. This means that the CTD-Diver meets the specifications in that particular measurement range. The CTD-Diver may deviate somewhat from the specifications outside the calibrated measurement range.

Example: If the CTD-Diver is used in a measurement range of 2-3 mS/cm, perform the user calibration at 1.413 and/or 5 mS/cm. The CTD-Diver will consequently be within the specifications for the 1.413 to 5 mS/cm measurement range.

If the user calibration is later carried out at the four calibration points, then the CTD-Diver will once again meet its specifications for the full measurement range.

The procedure for calibrating a CTD-Diver can be found in the Diver-Office software manual.

Note: When the CTD-Diver has not been used for an extended period of time take the following steps prior to calibration. Program the CTD-Diver with a one minute sample interval and start the CTD-Diver. Immerse the CTD-Diver in tap water for a period of at least 24 hours.

Important:

Prior to each reference measurement and/or calibration, the CTD-Diver must be thoroughly rinsed in demineralised water. After it has been rinsed it may not be touched by bare hands since the reference liquid can easily become contaminated by residual contaminants and/or residual salts left on hands. This invalidates a reference measurement/calibration since the reference has become distorted. This effect is highest at the lowest values.

Erroneous or improper calibration can also **negatively** affect the accuracy of the CTD-Diver.

Cleanliness during calibration is very important. All salt residues adhering to the CTD-Diver will negatively affect the accuracy of the calibration liquid. **This is why this calibration solution may never be used twice.**

Temperature differences can also cause errors (extended acclimatization is a required).

In such cases it is recommended that the factory calibration be restored.

4.4 Specific Conductivity

The specific conductivity of an electrolyte solution is defined as the conductivity if the solution is at a certain – reference – temperature. The specific conductivity is an indirect measure of the presence of dissolved solids such as chloride, nitrate, phosphate, and iron, and can be used as an indicator of water pollution.

The following equation is used for calculating the specific conductivity K_{Tref} from the measured conductivity K.

$$K_{Tref} = \frac{100}{100+\theta(T-T_{ref})} \cdot K \qquad (5)$$

where:

K_{Tref} = Specific conductivity at T_{ref}

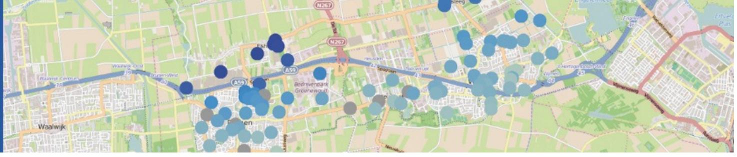
K = Conductivity at T

T_{ref} = Reference temperature (25 °C)

T = Sample temperature

θ = Temperature coefficient (1.91 %/°C)

The temperature coefficient used in the CTD-Diver is 1.91 %/°C and the reference temperature is 25°C. The setting to measure conductivity or specific conductivity can be programmed into the CTD-Diver by the user.



5 FAQ

This section contains an overview of questions frequently received from our customers and our answers to them. If you do not find the answer you are looking for in this FAQ, please contact Van Essen Instruments.

Q: *How do I install my Diver?*

A: Most Divers are installed underwater in a monitoring well. The depth at which you can suspend a Diver depends on the instrument's measurement range. Determine the lowest possible water level measured from the top of the casing (or another reference point) prior to the installation. If the Diver is at least suspended at this depth, it is then certain that the Diver always measures the water level.

B: The Diver can be suspended from a Diver Data Cable (DDC) or from a non-stretch steel cable by means of a suspension eye. Attach the Diver to the monitoring well cover and the suspension eye with two cable clips.

Q: *How do I connect a Diver to my computer?*

A: The way in which a Diver is connected to a computer depends on the way in which the Diver is installed in the monitoring well.

A Diver hanging in the monitoring well suspended from a cable must first be removed from the monitoring well before it can be read out. The Diver is read using a computer and reading unit:

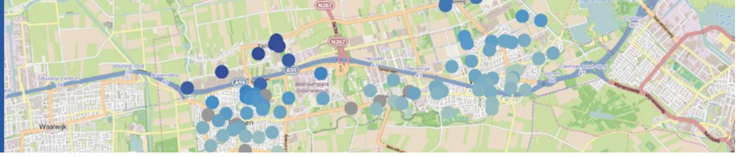
Connect the reading unit to your computer via the USB port. The required drivers are supplied. These are automatically installed using the Diver-Office software. The software can be downloaded from www.vanessen.com.

2. Unscrew the Diver's suspension eye.

3. Insert the Diver upside down into the reading unit (see above).

A Diver suspended from a Diver Data Cable (DDC) can be left hanging in the well. This Diver can be read out with a computer using an interface cable:

1. Connect the DDC interface cable to the computer.
2. Unscrew the protective cap from the end of the DDC.
3. Connect the connector on the interface cable to the end of the DDC.
4. Read out the Diver measurements using one of our programs.
5. Unscrew the DDC's interface cable.
6. Replace the protective cap on the DDC.



Q: *Is a Diver limited to being used at sea level?*

A: No, Divers can be used from 300 m below sea level to 5,000 m above sea level.

Q: *Do you always need two Divers for measuring a single monitoring well?*

A: No, but at least one Baro-Diver to monitor barometric pressure must be included in each network. For example, 20 Divers and one Baro-Diver would have to be installed for a network with 20 monitoring wells. We recommend installing one surplus Baro-Diver as a backup for larger networks. This is dependent on geographical conditions.

Q: *What is the radius from the Divers within which the Baro-Diver should be placed to ensure proper compensation for atmospheric pressure?*

A: The rule of thumb on open terrain, at approximately the same elevation one Baro-Diver is required within a maximum radius of 15 km.

Q: *What is the formula for converting the results of the Divers/Baro-Diver measurements from cmH_2O (e.g. 1,020.74 cmH_2O) to atmospheric pressure (mbar)?*

A: The Divers/Baro-Diver measure in cm water column (cmH_2O). To convert the measured cm water column to atmospheric pressure, it must be multiplied by 0.980665. In this example: 1,020.74 × 0.980665 = 1,001 mbar.

Q: *What is the Diver's battery's lifespan?*

A: The battery's lifespan is dependent on many factors, for example its temperature exposure, measurement interval, data reading and programming cycles and the type of Diver.

Given past experience, a maximum lifespan of 10 years is considered standard under 'typical' use. Typical use means that, among other things, Divers are not exposed to extreme temperatures over extended periods of time, the measurement sampling rate is not set at 1 second, a download is not requested by modem every hour, etc.

Example:

1 measurement per hour over a period of 10 years produces 87,600 measurements.

1 measurement every 15 minutes over a period of 10 years produces 350,400 measurements.

Q: *Is it possible to use the Divers in seawater?*

A: The Mini and Micro-Divers are made of 316L stainless steel. This material is not suitable for use in seawater. The Cera-Diver and CTD-Diver are made of zirconia, a ceramic material. This material does not corrode in seawater and these Divers can therefore be used in seawater. Van Essen Instruments explicitly selected a 'non-metal' for the Diver types required for use in aggressive environments (such as seawater). Any metal will eventually corrode in an environment that is too aggressive or due to the lack of oxygen. The zirconia used in the Cera-Diver and CTD-Diver is extremely resistant to corrosion. The ceramic (Alumina) pressure sensors exhibit the same properties. The Viton o-rings have been selected for their favourable properties in this environment.

Q: *How do I clean the Diver when it is very dirty?*

A: If your Diver is very dirty, it can easily be cleaned with white distilled vinegar.

A diluted phosphoric acid solution may also be used for ceramic Diver types.

Place the Diver in the solution for some time. Always thoroughly rinse the Diver with clean water after cleaning, especially near the flow through openings. If necessary, use a soft cloth to remove any deposits. Never use any hard brushes, abrasives or sharp objects to clean your Diver.

Q: *Must the Diver be calibrated?*

A: No, this is not necessary. Van Essen Instruments calibrates the Divers before they are delivered. A factory calibration certificate can be supplied as part of the production process.

The Divers can only be calibrated by Van Essen Instruments. In case of doubt, the user can perform a control measurement locally.

B: For the CTD-Diver, a user calibration can be carried out for the C channel. See the user manual for the software used (e.g., Diver-Office) for more information.

Warning:

A conductivity calibration is a delicate matter. How the CTD-Diver is cleaned prior to the calibration, temperature-related matters and how the calibration liquid is handled are all very important. It is not recommended to calibrate the CTD-Diver in the field.

6 Appendix I – Use of Divers at Elevation

Divers can be used at any elevation ranging from 300 metres below sea level to 5,000 metres above sea level. It is however recommended that all Divers and the Baro-Diver forming part of the same network be used at the same elevation (whenever possible).

The relationship between atmospheric pressure variations and elevation is exponential, rather than linear:

$$P_H = P_0 \cdot e^{-(M \cdot g \cdot H)/(R \cdot T)}$$

where

P_H = atmospheric pressure at elevation height H

P_0 = atmospheric pressure at reference height

$M = 28.8 \cdot 10^{-3}$ kg/mol (molecular mass of air)

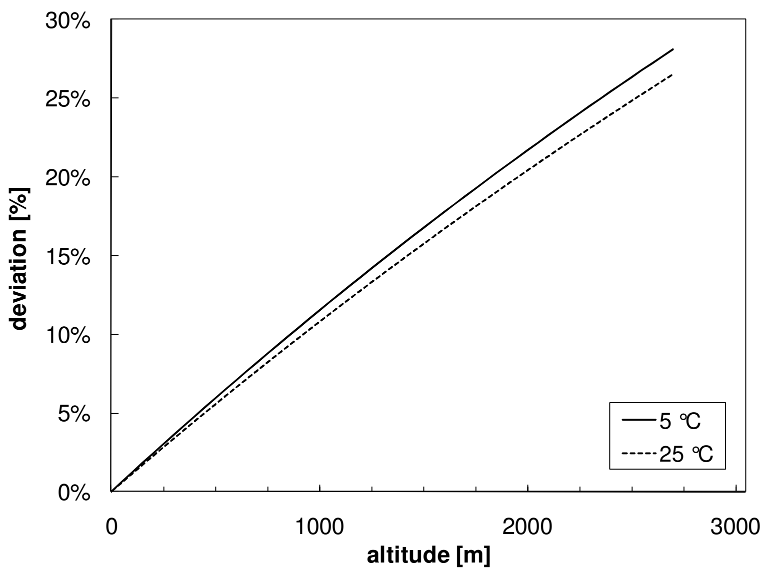
$g = 9.81$ m/s^2 (standard gravity)

H = height in metres

R = 8.314 J/mol/K (gas constant)

T = temperature in Kelvin

If the Baro-Diver is placed at a different elevation in relation to the other Divers in a measurement network, it is possible for a deviation to occur in the barometrically compensated data due to the relationships referred to above. The graph below illustrates the deviation in the barometric data as a function of the variation in elevation at 5 °C and 25 °C.



To determine the relative barometric pressure deviation relative to P_0 at 5 °C (T = 278.15°K) at a height differential of H, the above referenced formula can be used:

$$(P_H - P_0) / P_0 = 1 - e^{-(M \cdot g \cdot H)/(R \cdot T)} \times 100\% \qquad (6)$$

By substituting the data a relative deviation of 1.2 % at a height differential of 100 m is obtained. At a height differential of 1,000 m this increases to 11.5 %.

We therefore recommend that all Divers and the Baro-Divers in a network be placed such that the mutual height differentials are minimised.

If necessary, multiple Baro-Divers can be deployed to avoid the abovementioned problems.

FlowTracker®2

USER'S MANUAL 1.6
SOFTWARE VERSION 1.6
FIRMWARE VERSION 1.3

SonTek
a xylem brand

9940 Summers Ridge Rd
San Diego, CA 92121
+1.858.546.8327
inquiry@sontek.com
sontek.com

SonTek – a Xylem brand

9940 Summers Ridge Rd, San Diego, CA 92121-3091 USA

Telephone +1 (858) 546-8327 • Fax +1 (858) 546-8150

E-mail: inquiry@sontek.com • Internet: www.sontek.com

User's Manual 1.6
Software Version 1.6
Firmware Version 1.30

Release Notice **45-0120 Rev C**

This is the October 2018 release of the FlowTracker2 User's Manual. During the creation of this manual, the following were the latest versions of firmware/software. As such, if you are using different firmware/software versions, not all aspects of this manual may apply.

- FlowTracker2 firmware version 1.30
- FlowTracker2 software version 1.6

Trademarks

Warranty, Terms, and Conditions

Thank you for purchasing the FlowTracker2. The instrument was thoroughly tested at the factory and found to be in excellent working condition. If the shipping crate appears damaged, or if the system is not operating properly, please contact us immediately.

The system you have purchased is covered under a two year limited warranty that extends to all parts and labor for any malfunction due to workmanship or errors in the manufacturing process. The warranty does not cover shortcomings that are due to the design, nor does it cover any form of incidental damage as a result of errors in the measurements.

If your system is not functioning properly, first try to identify the source of the problem. If additional support is required, we encourage you to contact us immediately, and we will work to resolve the problem as quickly as possible.

If the system needs to be returned to the factory, please contact technical support to obtain a Service Request (SR) number. We reserve the right to refuse shipments without SR numbers. We require the system to be shipped back in the original shipping container using the original packing material with all delivery costs covered by the customer (including all taxes and duties). If the system is returned without appropriate packing, the customer will be required to cover the cost of a new packaging crate and material.

Contact Information

Any questions, concerns, or suggestions can be directed to SonTek by telephone, fax, or email. Business hours are 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., Pacific Standard Time, Monday through Friday.

Phone :	+1 (858) 546-8327
Fax :	+1 (858) 546-8150
Email :	inquiry@sontek.com (General information)
	sales@sontek.com (Sales information)
	support@sontek.com (Support information)
Web :	http://www.sontek.com

See our web site for information concerning new products and software/firmware upgrades.

FCC INFORMATION

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FlowTracker2 FCC license number can be found in two locations: (1) on the shipping box label and (2) engraved on the back of the FlowTracker2. Examples of the shipping box label and engraving are shown below.

Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Equations

Section 1. Quick Overview

1.1. System Components

Layout of FlowTracker2 and all major components are labeled in Figure 1:1.

- **Probe** – The FlowTracker2 probe (Figure 1:2) contains the acoustic elements to measure velocity. See Principle of Operations for more information.
- **Keypad** – The FlowTracker2 keypad is designed for quick and efficient software operation, configuration and data entry.
- **Handheld** - The handheld contains the processing electronics, batteries, keypad, and LCD screen. The handheld is designed to withstand temporary submersion, but is not intended for underwater operation.
- **Battery Compartment** – Battery Compartment consist of a water tight battery cap and an AA battery cartridge for quick access and battery replacement.
- **LCD Screen** – The LCD screen display the FlowTracker2 handheld software and real-time graphical display of raw data.
- **Probe cable** – The probe is factory mounted to a 1500mm (59-in) flexible cable. The handheld connects to the probe cable with rugged underwater flexible connector. The standard cable (1500mm) supplied with the FlowTracker2 can be extended with either an 1500mm (59-in) or 3500mm (137-in) cable extension up to maximum length of 10m (32.8-ft).
- **Communication Connector** – A waterproof (IP67) micro USB connector on the bottom of the handheld connect to external communication cable

Figure 1:1 - FlowTracker2 with 2D Probe

Layout of FlowTracker2 Probe and all major components are labeled in Figure 1:2

- **Transmitter** – The acoustic transmitter generates a short pulse of sound with the majority of energy concentrated in a narrow beam (6 mm in diameter).
- **Receivers** – The acoustic receivers are mounted on arms from the central probe head. The receivers are sensitive to a narrow beam and are focused on a common volume located a fixed distance (10 cm; 4 in) from the probe. The FlowTracker2 uses two or three acoustic receivers for 2D or 3D probes. See Beam Geometry and 3D Velocity Measurements for details.
- **Sampling volume** – The sampling volume is the physical location of the water velocity measurement. See Principle of Operations for details.
- **Temperature sensor** – The temperature sensor is mounted inside the probe. Temperature data is used to compensate for changes in sound speed. Sound speed is used to convert the Doppler shift to water velocity. See Hardware Specification for details on the temperature sensor; see Principle of Operations for details about the effect of sound speed on velocity data.

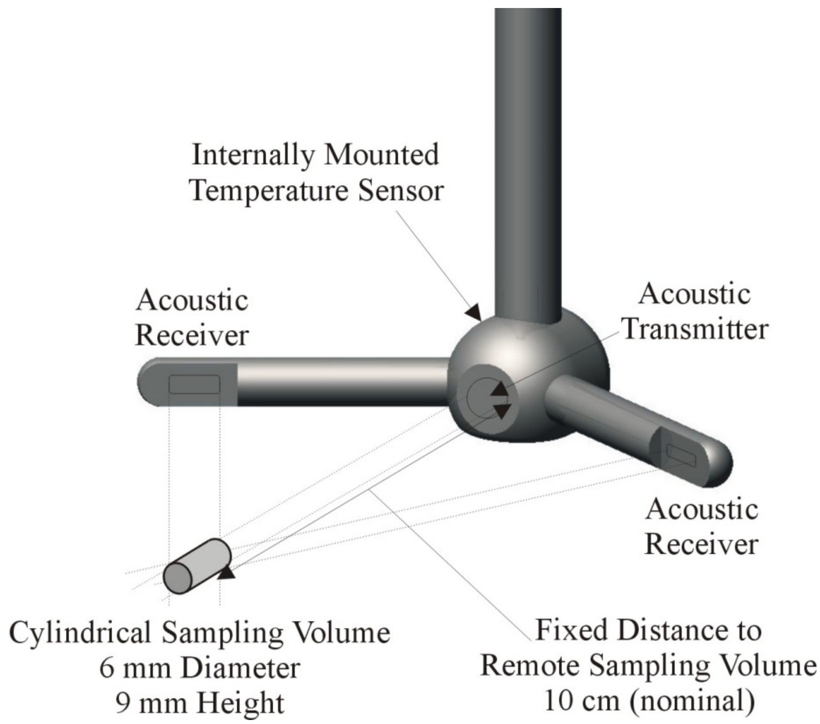


Figure 1:2 - 2D Side Looking FlowTracker2 Probe and Sampling Volume

1.2. Definitions and Terminology

This section defines terms commonly used when working with FlowTracker2

- **Averaging Time** – The time (in seconds) in which the FlowTracker2 records data at each measurement location. This is a user-specified value from 10 to 1000 seconds.
- **Handheld** – The FlowTracker2 is controlled from the keypad on the handheld. The LCD screen is used to display FlowTracker2 handheld software and real-time graphical display of raw data.
- **Measurement Location** – At each measurement location, the FlowTracker2 records one-second velocity data for the specified averaging time, location, water depth parameters and a variety of statistical and quality control data.
- **Ping Rate** – The number of pings per second (Hz). The FlowTracker2 ping rate is 40 Hz.
- **Ping** – A single estimate of the 2D or 3D water velocity.
- **Quality Control Data** – In addition to velocity, the FlowTracker2 records several quality control parameters. These include signal-to-noise ratio (SNR), standard error of velocity, boundary adjustment, the number of spikes filtered from data, and velocity angle. For details about quality control data, see Quality Control for details.
- **Salinity** – Water salinity is a user-supplied value that is used for sound speed calculations. Note: If using the system in salt water, a zinc anode should be installed on the probe for corrosion protection described in Zinc Anodes for Corrosion Protection.
- **Sample** – A sample refers to the mean of 20 pings to produce a measurement of the 2D or 3D water velocity. A sample includes velocity and signal to noise ratio data. The FlowTracker2 records two samples per second.
- **Signal Strength** – This refers to the strength of the reflected acoustic signal. It is a function of the acoustic conditions of the water – primarily the amount and type of suspended material (scatterers) present. This is most commonly accessed as a signal-to-noise ratio (SNR).
- **Signal-to-Noise Ratio (SNR)** – SNR is the ratio of the received acoustic signal strength to the ambient noise level. It is expressed in logarithmic units (dB), and is the most important quality control data for the FlowTracker2, see Quality Control for details.
- **Sound Speed** – Speed of sound in water (in m/s) is used to convert the Doppler shift to velocity. See Principle of Operations regarding the effect of sound speed on velocity data.

- **Temperature** – Water temperature (in °C) is measured by the internal temperature sensor. Temperature is used for sound speed calculations.
- **UTC** - Coordinated Universal Time, abbreviated as **UTC**, is the primary time standard by which the world regulates clocks and time

WARNING! The WARNING symbol and notice highlight instructions that must be followed to avoid personal injury. Do not proceed until all stated conditions are clearly understood and met.

CAUTION! The CAUTION notice highlights instructions that must be followed to avoid damage to the product or other equipment. Do not proceed until all stated conditions are met and clearly understood.

Section 2. System Operation

The **System Operation** section describes the keypad interface, handheld software menus and the LCD display.

2.1. On/Off Switch

The On/Off power button  for the FlowTracker2 can be accessed on the right side of the keypad, 3rd row from the top.

a) Start system, hold the power button until the LCD screen turns on.
b) Shutdown system, hold the power button until a message is displayed to shut down the handheld.
c) Activate sleep mode, press the power button once shutdown.
d) Wakeup system, press any button on keypad.

It's good practice to remove the battery cartridge at the end of each workday for

If the system is not used or stored for long periods, remove the batteries to prevent unnecessary draining and potential battery leakage.

2.2. Keypad

a) **Navigation Keys** – The handheld has a number of keys that are assigned to operate handheld software. The following keys are available for the user to either navigate or select options in the software,

i). **Left Soft Key** – The text directly above the soft key is associated with the key operations and allows the user to perform the following actions,

- return to previous menu,
- select action based on text displayed,
- restart or cancel current operation.

ii). **Right Soft Key** - The text directly above the soft key is associated with the key operations and allows the user to perform the following actions,

- start a new measurement,
- accept data entry or operation,
- create new template,
- access the quality control menu.

Figure 2:1 - Keypad Layout

iii). **Left & Right arrow** – The key allows the user to perform the following actions,

- select different options under each parameter in configuration,
- select station type or velocity method in measurement,
- select station in data collection.

iv). **Top & Bottom arrow** – The key allows the user to perform the following actions,

- scroll through the menu options,
- select files or templates,
- display graphics during data collection,
- scroll through the measurement, station and discharge summary reports.

b) **Enter Key** – The enter key (square) is situated between the four arrow keys and allow the user to perform the following actions,

i). Select the menu item in the menus
ii). Activate or deactivate running average during the beam-check data collection. This information is only displayed graphically and will not be stored in the data files.

Figure 2:2 - Keypad Layout

c) **Numbers (0-9)** – The keys allows the user to perform the following actions. Numbers will default to the first option on the key if only numerical values are required in the entry field.

i). Menu shortcut (number next to text) associated with each menu item.
ii). Configuration of instrument such, data collection settings, quality control parameters and discharge settings
iii). Enter measurement data such, station location, depth and other information.

d) **Letters (A-Z)** – The keys allows the user to perform the following actions. Letters will default to the first option on the key if letters are required in the entry field.

i). Create file and template names,
ii). Enter comments at a station, supplement data or overall measurement.

e) **Backspace** – The key allows the user to perform the following delete actions,

i). Text or values in user entry fields,
ii). Data file folder with all content or individual data files,

iii). Selected station in Discharge and General mode.

Text entry is done in the same manner as for mobile devices.

- numerical fields, the text entry assumes numbers first (i.e. for “2” press **2** key one time, **2** – **A** – **B** – **C**);
- text fields, it assumes letters first (i.e. for “B” press **2** key two times, **A** – **B** – **C**)

2.3. Keypad Filter

The FlowTracker2 handheld keypad filter enables the user to filter data or template files based on the keystrokes entered on the handheld. This feature is available to all tables with row selection functionality (rows that can be selected by using either the up or down arrows keys), such as templates selection, opening data files, etc.

Keypad Filter feature operate by filtering file names based on the keystrokes entered by the user. The files filtered in Figure 2.3 was based on the following three key strokes,

- 1st Key: **3DEF**
- 2nd Key: **1**
- 3rd Key: **4GHI**

The order of the keystrokes should be based on the order of the first couple of characters or specific wording in the file name. The software will search for any combination of characters available on the keys.

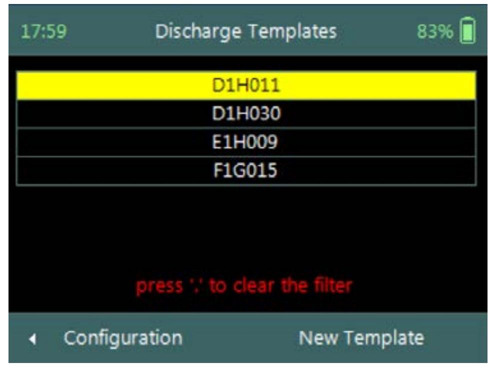


Figure 2:3 – Keypad Filter

2.4. Screen Layout

The Screen Layout of the FlowTracker2 consists of the following main features. The options or information displayed may vary from one screen to the next based on the software features that are used.

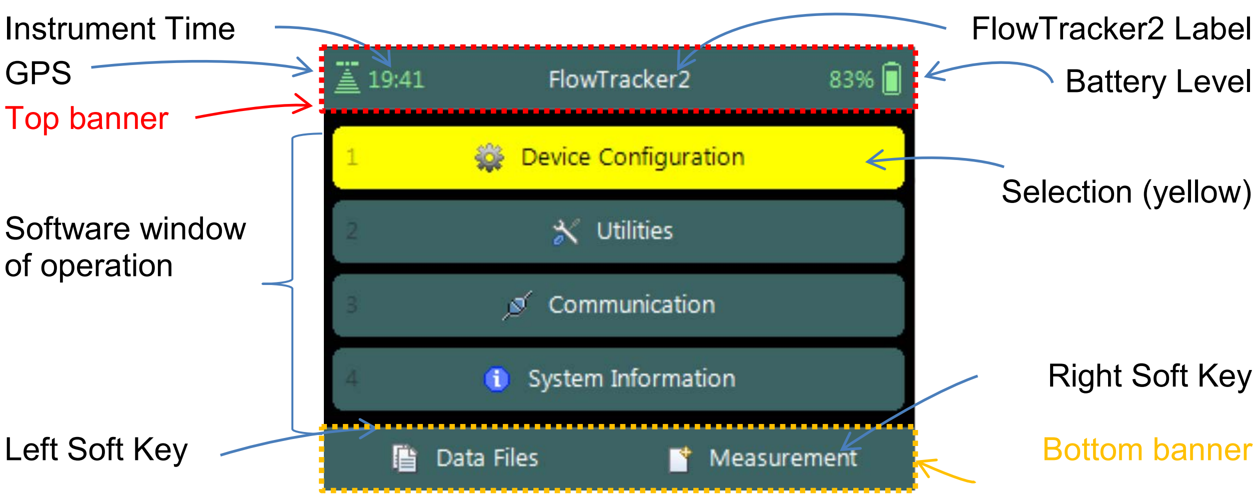


Figure 2:4 - Screen Layout

2.5. Main Menu

When the FlowTracker2 handheld is switched on the FlowTracker2 image is displayed during the startup process. Flow diagram of the handheld software is supplied in Software Flow Diagram for both the Discharge and General modes.

FlowTracker2 software layout of the handheld is similar to the "Original FlowTracker" consisting of the same three main groups, although the wording has changed.

The **Main Menu** of the handheld software is displayed after the startup process of the FlowTracker2 is completed.

Main menu consists of four menu options,

a) Device Configuration,
b) Utilities,
c) Communication,
d) System Information

*e) To **select** a menu option,*
i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select menu option,
ii). The menu option selected will be highlighted in yellow,
iii). Press the enter key to access the menu option.

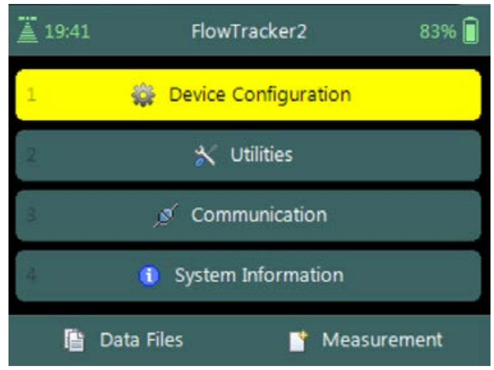


Figure 2:5 - Main Menu

There are also two additional menu options “Data Files” and “Measurement” available to the user that is situated in the bottom banner of the screen.

*f) To **select** Data Files or Measurement functions,*
i). Data Files – Press the Left Soft Key,
ii). Measurement – Press the Right Soft Key.

The number opposite each menu option is a shortcut key (i.e. pressing “2” key will access the Utilities menu).

2.5.1 Device Configuration Menu (Main Menu)

The **Device Configuration Menu** configures how the FlowTracker2 collects data, performs internal discharge calculations, evaluate data against data quality parameters and finally determine uncertainty of the measurements based on the method selected.

Device Configuration menu consists of four menu options,

a) User Interface,
b) Application Settings,
c) Discharge Templates,
d) General Templates.

*e) To **select** a menu option,*
i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select menu option,
ii). The menu option selected will be highlighted in yellow,
iii). Press the enter key to access the menu option.

*f) To **navigate** to Main Menu,*
i). Press the Left Soft Key.

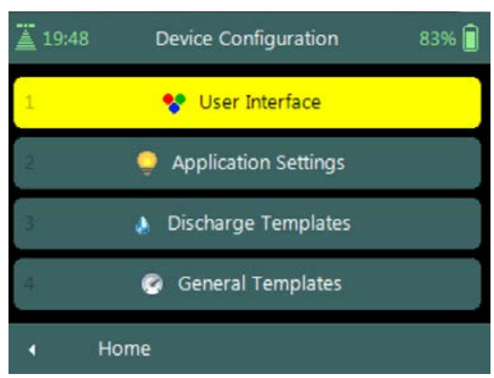


Figure 2:6 - Device Configuration Menu

2.5.2 Utilities (Main Menu)

The **Utilities Menu** accesses internal system functions of the FlowTracker2. The available functions assists with setting the internal clock and power source, management of recorder, displaying raw velocity and GPS data and performing tests on measurement and boundary conditions.

Utilities menu consists of the following menu options,

a) System Clock,
b) Recorder,
c) Battery Data,
d) Raw Data,
e) Automated Beam Check,
f) Beam Check,
g) GPS Data.

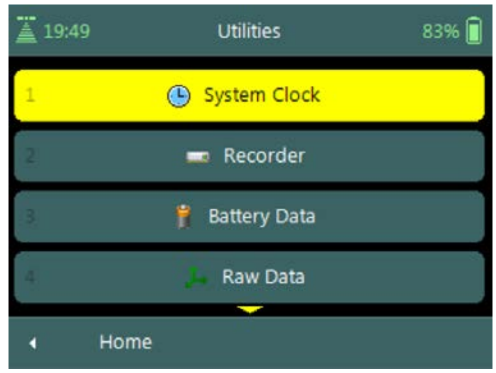


Figure 2:7 - Utilities Menu

h) *To **select** a menu option,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select menu option,
   ii). The menu option selected will be highlighted in yellow,
   iii). Press the enter key to access the menu option.

i) *To **navigate** to Main Menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

The Utilities Menu provides access to functions that should be checked periodically, but do not directly affect how data is collected.

2.5.3 Communication (Main Menu)

The **Communication** function permits communication between an external device equipped with the FlowTracker2 Desktop Software and the handheld. Communication between the desktop software and handheld can be established by using either a Micro USB cable or Bluetooth. See Connecting to the FlowTracker2 Handheld ADV for details of hardware and configuration requirements to enable communication.

The Communication function on the handheld software must be activated first before the connection feature is selected on the FlowTracker2 desktop software.

2.5.4 System Information (Main Menu)

The **System Information** screen displays the system information of the FlowTracker2 for both the Handheld and Probe, with the serial number and firmware versions as the key data sets.

Handheld System Information of the FlowTracker2 includes the following system information,

a) Device (FlowTracker2 Handheld),

b) Serial Number (123456),

c) Upgraded Firmware (V0.14.7).

*d) To **navigate** to Main Menu or Probe Information,*
   i). Main Menu – Press the Left Soft Key,
   ii). Probe Information – Press the Right Soft Key.

Figure 2:8 - Handheld System Information

Probe System Information of the FlowTracker2 includes the following system information,

a) Device (FlowTracker2 Probe),
b) Serial Number (123456),
c) Probe Firmware (V0.14.7),
d) Number of Beams (2 or 3).

*e) To **navigate** to Main Menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key two times.

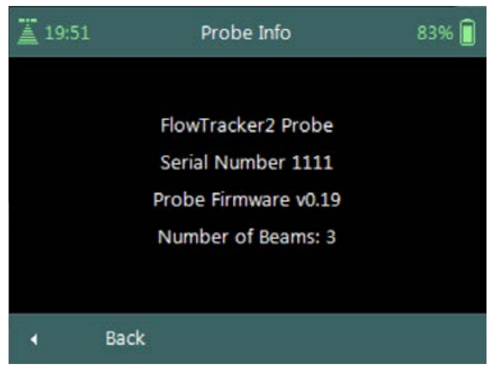


Figure 2:9 - Probe System Information

2.5.5 Measurement (Main Menu)

The **Measurement** function is the main component of the FlowTracker2 handheld software and includes two measurement modes. The Discharge mode is for applications where the primary goal is to measure river/stream discharge. The technique involves taking a series of velocity measurements at different locations throughout the cross section. These measurements are combined with location and water depth information to compute the total discharge. The General mode is designed to perform a series of velocity measurements at different locations, but does not provide discharge as an output.

The methods and techniques implemented for determining the mean station velocity, calculation of discharge and uncertainty analysis of a measurement are based on the following literature,

- ISO 748 – 2007, Hydrometry - Measurement of liquid flow in open channels using current meters or floats,
- WMO-No. 1044, Volume I – Fieldwork, 2010.
- IVE, Quantifying Uncertainty in Discharge Measurements: A New Approach

Measurement function consists of two measurement modes in the menu,

a) Discharge,
b) General.

c) *To **select** a menu option,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select menu option,
   ii). The menu option selected will be highlighted in yellow,
   iii). Press the enter key to access the menu option.

d) *To **navigate** to Main Menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

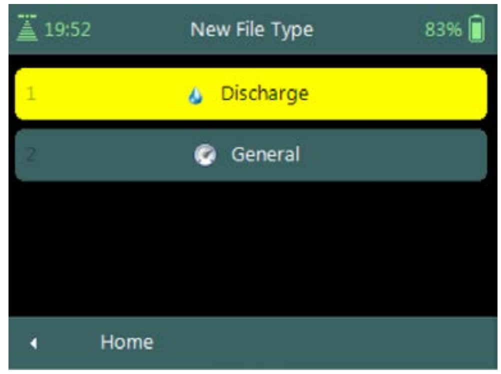


Figure 2:10 - Measurement

2.5.6 Data Files (Main Menu)

The **Data Files** function displays the recorder contents and gives the user access to FlowTracker2 measurements files.

The FlowTracker2 measurement files can be organized in the recorder based on the following user defined folder naming conventions,

- Site Name,
- Site Number,
- Month.

Data Files screen displays a list of folders based on the naming convention. Each folder can consist of either a single or multiple measurement files.

a) *To **select** a measurement folder,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select folder,
   ii). The folder will be highlighted in yellow,
   iii). Press the enter key to access the folder content,
   iv). Selecting a measurement file in the folder, follow steps i to iii.

b) *To **DELETE** a measurement file or folder*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select folder or file,
   ii). The folder or file will be highlighted in yellow,
   iii). Press backspace to delete the folder or file.
   iv). The operator will be requested to confirm deletion of the files or folders.

c) *To **navigate** to Main Menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

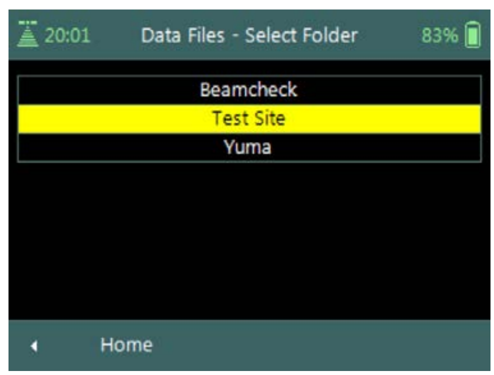


Figure 2:11 - Data Files

Before any measurement files and or folders are deleted please ensure that the following steps are performed,

- Download all measurement files using the FlowTracker2 desktop software,
- Ensure that measurement files are stored in a secure location on PC or Tablet,
- Create a secondary backup of the measurement files by copying to external USB or network drive.

The delete process is irreversible and the user will not able to retrieve the measurement files once this action is performed.

Section 3. Device Configuration

3.1. User Interface

User Interface defines the settings related to interaction (view and audio) between the operator and the device.

User Interface screen includes the following parameters,

a) Language,
b) Use Beeper,
c) Color Scheme,
d) Font Size,

e) To ***select*** *a parameter,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select a parameter,
   ii). The parameter selected will be highlighted in yellow.

f) To ***navigate*** *to Configuration Menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

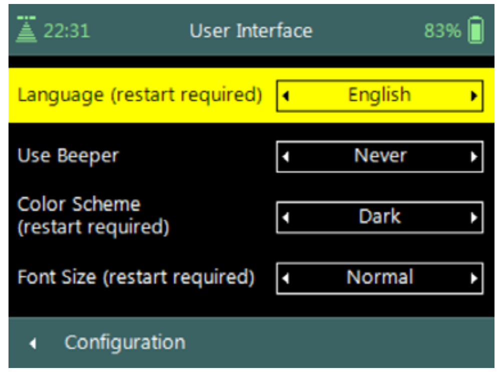


Figure 3:1 - User Interface

3.1.1 Language

The list of **Predefined Languages** supported in FlowTracker2 handheld software is grouped under the following.

a) Default language – English (US),
b) Other – Chinese-Simplified, Chinese Traditional, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish and Catalan.
c) More languages will be added to FlowTracker2 in subsequent revisions as SonTek receives translation files. Please contact SonTek if you use the FlowTracker2 desktop software translator tool to create translation files you wish to share.

d) *To* ***change*** *the Language,*

   i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the list of available languages.
   ii). Press the Left Soft Key to return to Configuration for the software to accept the change.

Additional languages can be uploaded on the FlowTracker2 handheld using the **FlowTracker2 Translator** function available in the FlowTracker2 desktop software. The process involved in creating translation files and uploading to the handheld is described in FlowTracker2 Desktop Software.

If you selected a wrong language the menu functions can be a bit hazy! The following steps will get you out of the gate.
i) *the main menu must be displayed,* ***ii)*** *top menu option must be highlighted,* ***iii)*** *press the enter key two times,* ***iv)*** *use left or right arrow key to select different language,* ***v)*** *press left soft key two times,* ***vi)*** *handheld software will restart with new selected language.*

3.1.2 Use Beeper

An internal speaker is available in the handheld to create a "**Beep**" after certain functions are completed or warning thresholds exceeded in the handheld software.

a) The Beeper options implemented in FlowTracker2 are categorized under the following,

i). Always,
ii). Major Events,
iii). Never.

b) Table 3:1 list the Beeper options and functions that will create a beep during operations.

Table 3-1 – Beeper Options

Option		Function
Always	Major Events	On startup
Always	Major Events	Maximum screen brightness
Always	Major Events	Measurement completed in point measurement view
Always	Major Events	Tilt exceeds threshold in point measurement
Always	Major Events	Automated BeamCheck completed
Always		Warning present in Report

c) *To* ***change*** *the Beeper option,*

i). Use the left or right arrow key to select Beeper option,
ii). Press the Left Soft Key to return to Configuration for the software to accept the change.

3.1.3 Color Scheme

Color Schemes give the operator the ability to improve visibility of the LCD display under different light conditions that may be experienced during field work.

a) Color schemes implemented in FlowTracker2 are categorized under the following schemes,

i). Light,
ii). Medium,
iii). Dark.

b) *To* ***change*** *the Color Scheme option,*

i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the list of available color schemes,

ii). Press the Left Soft Key to return to Configuration for the software to accept the change.

3.1.4 Font Size

Font Sizes give the operator the ability to improve visibility of text on the LCD display under different light conditions that may be experienced during field work.

a) Font sizes implemented in FlowTracker2 are categorized under the following schemes,

i). Normal,
ii). Large,
iii). Extra Large.

b) *To **change** the Font Size,*

i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the list of available font sizes,
ii). Press the Left Soft Key to return to Configuration for the software to accept the change.

3.2. Application Settings

Application Settings define the operator requirements with respect to the units system used, management of measurement files and overall GPS operation during data collection.

Application Settings screen includes following parameters,

a) Units,
b) Wading Rod,
c) File Naming,
d) Folder Naming,
e) GPS Station Tagging,

Pressure Sensor

f) Use Pressure Sensor (PS Required),
g) Probe Offset From WR Bottom,
h) Air Pressure Cal. Period (min).

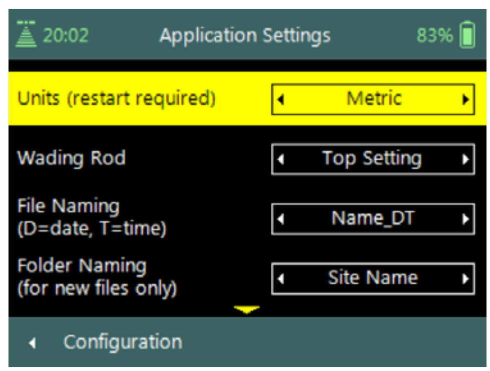


Figure 3:2 - Application Settings

i) *To **select** a parameter,*

i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select a parameter,
ii). The parameter selected will be highlighted in yellow.

j) *To **navigate** to Configuration Menu,*

i). Press the Left Soft Key.

3.2.1 Units

The **Units** function defines the **Units System** used for displaying and outputting measurement data.

a) The Units Systems supported in FlowTracker2 is grouped under the following,
   i). Metric,
   ii). English,

b) The internal unit system used is Metric and this does not affect internal calculations or data storage,

c) Table 3:2 list the units that are used for display.

Table 3-2 – FlowTracker2 Display Units

Parameter	English Units	Metric Units
Location	feet	meters
Depth	feet	meters
Pressure	dbar	dbar
Velocity	ft/s	m/s
Standard error of velocity	ft/s	m/s
Staff / Gauge height	feet	meters
Discharge	ft^3/s	m^3/s
SNR	dB	dB

d) *To **change** the Unit option,*
   i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the list of options,
   ii). Press the Left Soft Key to return to Configuration for the software to accept the change.

3.2.2 Wading Rod

Wading Rod function gives the operator the choice of what type of wading rod is used during the measurement.

The selection of the type of wading rod will impact what graphics are displayed during the data collection process and what reference (water surface or bottom) is used in determining instrument depth.

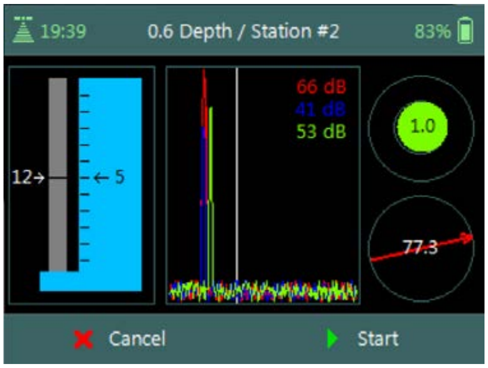


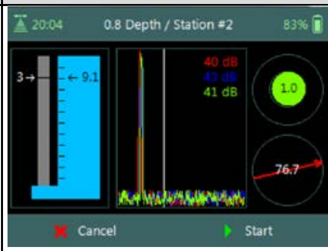
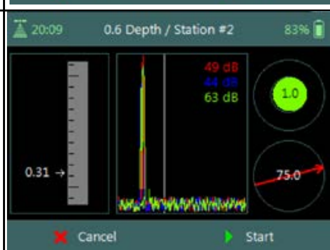
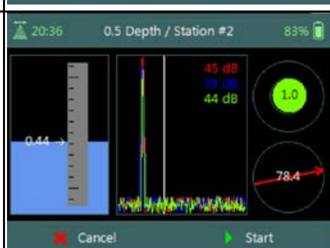
Figure 3:3 - Top Setting Wading Rod Graphic

a) The Wading Rods supported in FlowTracker2 are grouped under the following,

i). Top-Setting (Instrument referenced to water surface)
ii). Universal (Instrument referenced to bottom)
iii). Ice (Instrument referenced to water surface)
iv). Unknown

b) The graphic representation of the Wading Rods supported and the fractional depth indicators are defined in Table 3:3,

Table 3-3 - Wading Rod Graphics

Wading Rod	Graphic	Wading Rod Setting	Example	Reference
Top Setting		$= \left[\frac{\left(1 - f_{depth}\right) \times w_{depth}}{0.4}\right]$ f_{depth} – Fractional Depth w_{depth} – Water Depth	w_{depth} = 0.783m f_{depth} = 0.8 Rod = 0.391	Water Surface
Universal		$= w_{depth} - \left(f_{depth} \times w_{depth}\right)$ f_{depth} – Fractional Depth w_{depth} – Water Depth	w_{depth} = 0.783m f_{depth} = 0.6 Rod = 0.313	Channel Bed
Ice		$= w_{depth} - \left[\left(w_{depth} - w_{depth-ice}\right) \times \left(1 - f_{depth}\right)\right]$ f_{depth} – Fractional Depth w_{depth} – Water Depth $I_{thickness}$ = Ice Thickness $w_{depth-ice}$ = Water Surface to Bottom of Ice	w_{depth} = 0.783m f_{depth} = 0.5 $I_{thickness}$ = 0.2m $w_{depth-ice}$ = 0.1m Rod = 0.442	Water Surface

c) *To **change** the Wading Rod type,*
i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the list of options,
ii). Press the Left Soft Key to return to Configuration for the software to accept the change.

3.2.3 File Naming

The **File Naming** function enables the operator to assign a unique name for each measurement file. The file naming process in FlowTracker2 ensures that existing measurement files are not overwritten.

a) The file naming conventions that are supported in FlowTracker2 software are listed in Table 3:4,

Table 3-4 - File Naming Conventions

Naming Convention	Description	Example
Number	Site Number	09429500
Number_Date	Site Number_yyyymmdd	09429500_20151013
Number_DT	Site Number_yyyymmdd-hhmmss	09429500_20151013-170220
Date_Number	yyyymmdd_Site Number	20151013_09429500
DT_Number	yyyymmdd-hhmmss_Site Number	20151013-170220_09429500
Name	Site Name	Colorado
Name_Date	Site Name_yyyymmdd	Colorado_20151013
Name_DT	Site Name_yyyymmdd-hhmmss	Colorado_20151013-170220
Date_Name	yyyymmdd_Site Name	20151013_Colorado
DT_Name	yyyymmdd-hhmmss_Site Name	20151013-170220_Colorado

b) A **Follow Number** is incorporated at the end of the new file name, if there are files in the recorder with the same file name. The follow number will increase incrementally for every new file created with the same file name (e.g. 09429500_20151013_3)

c) *To **change** the File Naming convention,*

i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the list of options,

ii). Press the Left Soft Key to return to Configuration for the software to accept the change.

It's recommended that file the naming convention used contains both the date and time. This will ensure that an unique file name is created for each measurement and can easily be sorted in Windows explorer when downloaded from FlowTracker2 handheld,

- yyyymmdd-hhmmss_Site Number,
- yyyymmdd-hhmmss_Site Name.

3.2.4 Folder Naming

The **Folder Naming** function enables the operator to organize measurement files in the recorder by grouping by site or month.

a) The folder naming conventions that are supported in FlowTracker2 software are grouped under the following,

i). Site Number,

ii). Site Name,

iii). yyyy-mm.

b) A folder is created automatically in the recorder when a measurement file is created based on the folder naming convention. If all the measurement files are deleted, the folder will be removed from the recorder.

c) *To **change** the Folder Naming convention,*

i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the list of options,

ii). Press the Left Soft Key to return to Configuration for the software to accept the change.

3.2.5 GPS Station Tagging

The **GPS Station Tagging** function allows the operator control over the GPS operation during measurements.

a) The GPS options that are supported in FlowTracker2 software are grouped under the following,

i). **Automatic**. The automatic option for the GPS allows the FlowTracker2 to perform GPS measurements at each station without any additional interaction with the software.

- The GPS receiver is *Continuously Operating* and receiving data from satellites when the FlowTracker2 handheld is activated.
- If a GPS lock is not obtained before the station measurement is completed, the software will not record positional information for the station. The GPS status Icons are listed in Table 3:4.
- The positional information is averaged over the time a station is created to improve the overall measurement accuracy. The software starts averaging the positional information when the *Add Station* function is selected and stops when the station is completed, from where the averaged position is recorded against the station. The averaging process is performed for both Discharge and General modes.
- When editing an existing station and Automatic GPS mode is selected, the logic reverts to "Manual GPS" mode to ensure that a position is not assigned while editing away from the actual station location.

The operator needs to ensure that the wading rod is placed in the correct position and vertical before the "Add Station" function is selected. This will improve the overall accuracy of the GPS measurement.

ii). **Manual**. The manual option provides the operator control over GPS measurements and requires the operator to select "Record GPS Location" function before velocity measurements are made at a station for both Discharge and General modes.

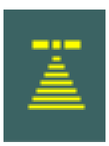
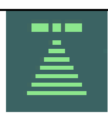
- The GPS receiver is on *Cold Start and is NOT* receiving data from satellites.
- The manual GPS measurement option forms part of the "Add Station" configuration screen and is located at the bottom of the screen. The "Record GPS Location" function can be accessed by using the Bottom Arrow.

- If a GPS lock is not obtained before the station measurement is completed, the software will not record positional information for the station. The GPS status Icons are listed in Table 3:4.
- The positional information is averaged when the "Record GPS Location" function is selected. The period of averaging the positional information is dependent on the user and a counter will display the number of measurements averaged.
- The "Record GPS location" at the bottom of the configuration screen will state "Record GPS location" if no location is assigned yet and "Update GPS location" if a location is already assigned.

iii). **Disabled**. The GPS is disabled and the operator will not be able to perform any GPS measurements.

b) The status of GPS lock is indicated by GPS icon displayed on the left corner of the top banner of the LCD screen. The icon's describing the GPS status in the handheld is defined in Table 3:5,

Table 3-5 - GPS Status Icons

Icon	Description	Conditions
	Attempting to acquire satellite signal.	GPS has not acquired any satellite signal or GPS lock and is unable to determine positional information
	Acquiring satellite signal in progress.	GPS is acquiring additional satellite signals, low quality positional information available, number of satellites < 4 and or HDOP > 2.5.
	Satellite signal acquired from available satellites.	GPS lock is obtained, high quality positional information available.

c) The averaging of positional information from the internal GPS is based on the following criteria,

i). Averaging is limited to 1000 records. If more than 1000 records are reported – the oldest records are dropped.

ii). Averaging is performed only when 5 or more records are recorded, otherwise the record with the lowest HDOP/max satellites is used.

iii). If 10 or more "high quality records" are recorded – only high quality records are used for the averaging. Otherwise both high/low quality records are used for the averaging.

d) *To **change** the GPS station tagging option,*

i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the list of options,

ii). Press the Left Soft Key to return to Configuration for the software to accept the change.

3.2.6 Use Pressure Sensor (Pressure Sensor)

The **Use Pressure Sensor** function allows the operator to enable the internal pressure sensor for depth measurements in both Discharge and General data collection modes.

Pressure sensor functions and associated software features are only available for FlowTracker2 ADV probes equipped with an internal pressure sensor.

3.2.7 Probe Offset From WR Bottom (Pressure Sensor)

The **Probe Offset From WR Bottom** functions allows the operator to enter an offset between the bottom of the ADV Probe and the wading rod base plate.

The ability to align the bottom of ADV Probe with the wading rod base plate will not be feasible for most wading rod designs. The Probe Offset From WR Bottom accounts for the difference between the bottom of ADV Probe and the wading rod base plate in the depth measurements.

It's recommended that the offset selected should exceed the average size of obstacles on the channel bed. If a two point method is performed during a measurement it is recommended that the offset should be equal to the average of all the 0.8 measurements to reduce adjustment time.

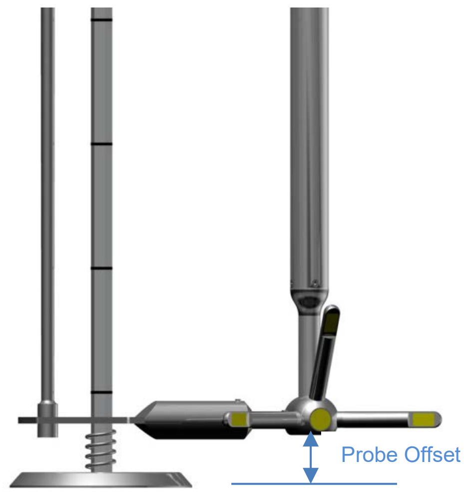


Figure 3:4 – Probe Offset From WR Bottom

The user can make use of the top setting rod vernier scale to reference the offset. Example, if the graduation mark '**1**' on the suspension rod is opposite the graduation "**0**" on the Vernier scale, it represents a 0.068 m (0.22 ft) offset.

3.2.8 Air Pressure Cal. Period (min) (Pressure Sensor)

The FlowTracker2 ADV internal pressure sensor can be calibrated against atmospheric pressure during any stage of the measurement. The **Air Pressure Cal. Period (min)** function allows the operator to set a time limit between atmospheric pressure calibrations.

Properties associated with the Air Pressure Cal. Period are defined in Table 3:6,

Table 3-6 - Air Pressure Cal. Period - Properties

Parameter	Min	Max	Default	Units	Required
Air Pressure Cal.	5	60	10	minutes	Yes

Parameter	Min	Max	Default	Units	Required
Period					

If the period between calibrations is too long, the change in atmospheric pressure can impact the accuracy of the depth measurements

3.3. Configuration Templates

3.3.1 Template Options

The **Templates** implemented in FlowTracker2 consists of the following template options. The templates consist of number of configuration parameters required for performing measurements in either **Discharge** or **General** mode under the Measurement function.

- **Discharge** Template
- **General** Template

Templates are similar to configuration files where the operator defines the configuration of the instrument, based on,

- site details,
- data collection requirements
- quality control parameters,
- measurement methods *(only for discharge mode)*.

The operator has the ability to create a unique configuration template for a single monitoring site, region or organization.

It's recommended that a unique template is created for each monitoring site. The advantage of this is twofold, operator does not have to enter in the site number and name for every measurement, and ensure that site number and name is consistent.

3.3.2 Managing Templates

3.3.2.1 Accessing Templates

Templates are stored separately from the measurement files on the internal memory of the FlowTracker2 handheld and are managed from the Discharge or General Template functions under the Device Configuration Menu. The following process describes how to create, remove or select an existing template.

Templates for Discharge and General Modes can be accessed from the Device Configuration menu,

a) *To **select** a Template type,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select the template,
   ii). The template option selected will be highlighted in yellow,
   iii). Press the enter key to access the template operating screen.

b) *To **navigate** to Main Menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

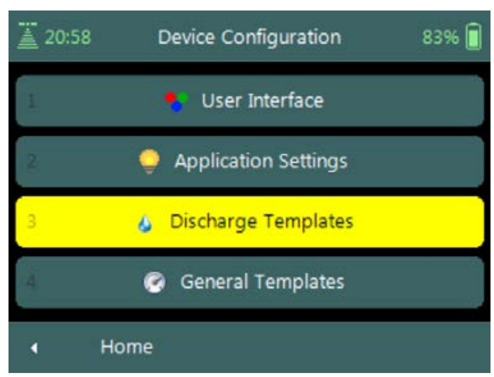


Figure 3:5 - Device Configuration Menu

Template Operating Screen will list all available templates on the handheld or if there are no templates available, indicate "Currently there are no user templates defined – please use the 'New Template' button to create the first template".

a) *To **create** a new Template,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key,
   ii). The software will redirect to "New Template" screen.

b) *To **navigate** to Configuration Menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

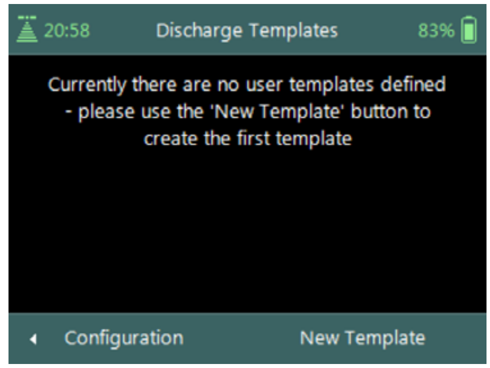


Figure 3:6 - Template Operating Screen

3.3.2.2 New Template

New Template screen displays two parameters that need to be completed to create a new template,

a) **Template Name** is user defined. The template name can be up to 50 characters long.

b) **Base Template** defines the default configuration used for new template. The user has the option to select the default SonTek configuration or from existing user configurations.

c) *To **accept** new Template,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key,
   ii). The software will return to template screen.

d) *To **CANCEL** new Template,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

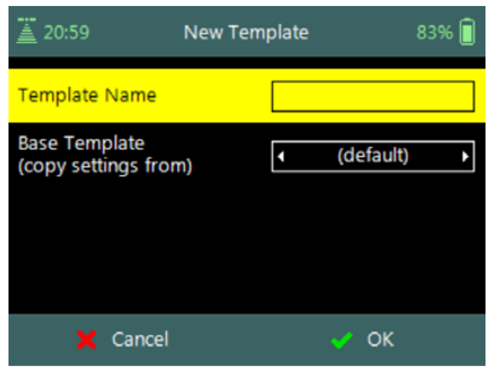


Figure 3:7 - New Template

3.3.2.3 Selecting Template

Selecting Template is performed from the template main screen.

a) *To **select** a Template,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select the template,
   ii). The template name selected will be highlighted in yellow,
   iii). Press the enter key to access the template screen.

b) *To **navigate** to Configuration or New Template,*
   i). Configuration - Press the Left Soft Key
   ii). New Template - Press the Right Soft Key

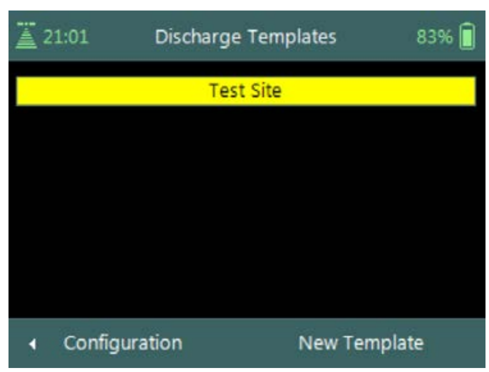


Figure 3:8 - Selecting Template

3.4. Template Functions

The **Template** functions for Discharge and General Modes contain all the configuration parameters required for performing velocity measurements, discharge calculation and uncertainty analysis. The functions defined under each template contain site information, data collection criteria, quality control parameters and measurement methods *(only for discharge mode)*.

Template menu consists of the following menu options,

a) File Properties,
b) Data Collection Settings,
c) Quality Control Settings,
d) Discharge Settings *(only for discharge mode),*
e) Displayed Velocity Methods *(only for discharge mode).*

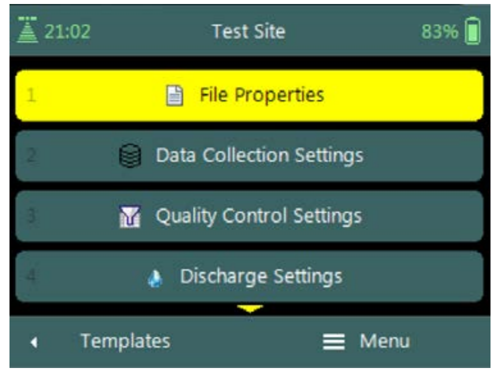


Figure 3:9 - Template Menu

f) To ***select*** *a menu option,*
  i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select menu option,
  ii). The menu option selected will be highlighted in yellow,
  iii). Press the enter key to access the menu option.

g) To ***navigate*** *to Template Screen,*
  i). Press the Left Soft Key.

h) To ***Rename*** *or* ***DELETE*** *a Template in Menu,*
  i). Press the Right Soft Key.
  ii). To select menu option, use up or down scroll arrows keys,
  iii). The menu option selected will be highlighted in yellow,
  iv). Press the enter key to access the menu option.

3.4.1 File Properties

The **File Properties** function contains site information applicable to the measurement site and operator details. The file properties ensure that the required Metadata are associated with both measurement site and data collected.

File Properties screen includes the following parameters,

a) Site Number,
b) Site Name,
c) Operator.

*d) To **select** a parameter,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select a parameter,
   ii). The parameter selected will be highlighted in yellow.

*e) To **enter** text,*
   i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry,
   ii). Enter numerical or alphabetical characters using the keypad.

*f) To **navigate** to Template Menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

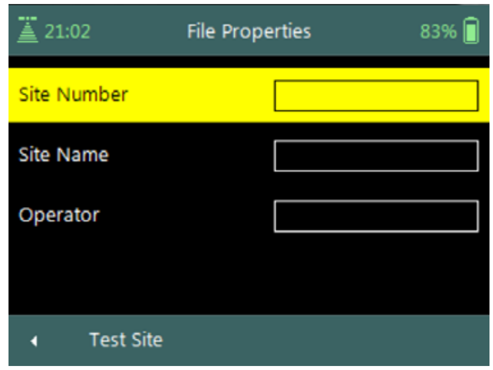


Figure 3:10 - File Properties

Properties associated with the parameters in file properties are defined in Table 3:7,

Table 3-7 - File Properties - Properties

Parameter	Description	Field Size	Default	Required
Site Number	Enter unique site number (e.g. Hydrometric Station Number)	50	Number keypad	No
Site Name	Enter unique site name (e.g. Hydrometric Station Name)	50	Alphabet keypad	No
Operator	Operator name can be entered in this field (e.g. Bees Blaas)	50	Alphabet keypad	No

3.4.2 Data Collection Settings

The **Data Collection Settings** function contains parameters required for sound speed calculation and averaging time of velocity measurements,

Data Collection Settings screen includes the following parameters,

a) Averaging Time,
b) Salinity,
c) Temperature,
d) Sound Speed,
e) Mounting Correction.

*f) To **select** a parameter,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select a parameter,
   ii). The parameter selected will be highlighted in

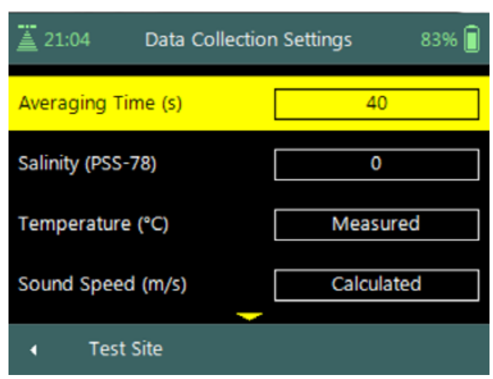


Figure 3:11 - Data Collection Settings

yellow.

g) *To **navigate** to Template Menu,*

i). Press the Left Soft Key.

Properties associated with the parameters in data collection settings are defined in Table 3:8,

Table 3-8 - Data Collection Settings - Properties

Parameter	Min	Max	Default	Units	Required
Averaging Time	10	1000	40	seconds	Yes
Salinity	0	42	0	PSU	Yes
Temperature	-5	50	Internal Measured	°C or °F	Yes
Sound Speed	1400	1580	Internal Calculated	m/s or ft/s	Yes
Mounting Correction	-5	5	0	%	Yes

3.4.2.1 Averaging Time

The **Averaging Time** parameter specifies the time duration (in seconds) of data collection during each point velocity measurement.

a) Averaging time is specified in 1-second intervals from 10 to 1000 seconds.
b) The default Averaging Time applied in FlowTracker2 is 40s.

c) *To **change** the Averaging Time,*

i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry,

ii). Type in the new value using the keypad.

The averaging time required for single point velocity measurement is usually from 40 to 60 seconds. This however is site dependent and longer averaging times are required when measuring in turbulent flow conditions.

3.4.2.2 Salinity

The **Salinity** parameter specifies the salinity value in **Practical Salinity Scale** (dimensionless) used to compute sound speed.

a) Salinity is specified in Practical Salinity Scale (PSS-78). Fresh water has a salinity of 0; seawater salinity generally ranges from 31 to 39 (PSS). The PSS-78 range is 2 to 42 for a temperature range of -2°C to +35°C and hydrostatic pressure 0 – 10000dBar.
b) The default Salinity applied in FlowTracker2 is 0 (PSS).

Where a measurement location exceeds the PSS-78 range, Salinity cannot be used for calculation of Sound Speed. **Sound Velocimeters** must be used to measure the actual sound speed of the water directly at the measurement location.

c) As a rule of thumb, a 12 (PSS) error in the value of salinity will result in a 1% error in sound speed, which results in a 2% error in velocity data.

d) Salinity should be specified or determined using a CTD instrument as accurately as possible for each measurement location. The **CastAway-CTD** is a lightweight, easy to use instrument designed for quick and accurate conductivity, temperature, and depth profiles. Starting with a unique six-electrode conductivity cell and fast response thermistor the CastAway makes use of modern technology to provide state of the art CTD measurements.

Figure 3:12 - CastAway - CTD

e) Sound speed is used in Doppler velocity calculations. See the Principle of Operations for details about the effect of sound speed on velocity data.

f) *To **change** the Salinity,*
   i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry,
   ii). Type in the new value using the keypad.

3.4.2.3 Temperature

The **Temperature** parameter specifies the temperature value used to compute sound speed.

a) The temperature value used to compute sound speed is based on internal temperature sensor by default. The temperature field will be populated with the value "**Measured**" to indicate it is based on internal temperature sensor.
b) Water temperature measured by external devices can be entered in the temperature field. The temperature value from the external sensor will then be used for sound speed calculations.

The temperature field cannot be used to store reference temperature readings as this will be used in the sound speed calculations. It is recommended that reference temperature readings be documented in the comments fields.

c) Sound speed is used in Doppler velocity calculations. See the Principle of Operations for details about the effect of sound speed on velocity data.

d) ***Enter** external temperature reading,*
   i). If the default value "Measured" is displayed, start typing using keypad, otherwise,
   ii). Use the backspace key to clear current entry,
   iii). Type in the new value using the keypad.

3.4.2.4 Sound Speed

The **Sound Speed** parameter specifies the sound speed value used in Doppler velocity calculations.

a) The sound speed value used in Doppler velocity calculations is based on internal calculations by default. The sound speed field will be populated with the value "**Calculated**" to indicate it is based internal calculations.
b) Sound Speed measured by external devices can be entered in the sound speed field. The sound speed value from the external sensor will then be used in Doppler velocity calculations.

Where a measurement location exceeds the PSS-78 range, Salinity cannot be used for calculation of Sound Speed. **Sound Velocimeters** must be used to measure the actual sound speed of the water directly at the measurement location.

The sound speed field cannot be used to store reference sound speed readings as this will be used in the Doppler velocity calculations. It is recommended that reference sound speed readings be documented in the comments fields.

c) Sound speed is used in Doppler velocity calculations. See Principle of Operations for details about the effect of sound speed on velocity data.

d) ***Enter*** *external Sound Speed reading,*
   i). If the default value "Calculated" is displayed, start typing using keypad, otherwise,
   ii). Use the backspace key to clear current entry,
   iii). Type in the new value using the keypad.

3.4.2.5 Mounting Correction

The **Mounting Correction** parameter specifies how to account for the device used to hold the FlowTracker2 in the water. The type of mount may have a small impact on velocity measurements.

a) The mounting correction allows the FlowTracker2 to account for the effect of flow disturbances caused by the mount.
b) The default mounting correction applied in FlowTracker2 is 0%.
c) The application of a mounting correction to account for the effects of flow disturbance on velocity measurements was researched by several independent agencies. At present, no consensus has been reached between different agencies in the requirement of the mounting correction. See Mounting Correction for details about the effect of flow disturbance on velocity measurements.

d) *To* ***change*** *the Mounting Correction,*
   i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry,
   ii). Type in the new value using the keypad.

3.4.3 Quality Control Settings

The **Quality Control Settings** function contains parameters required for the Quality Control process.

Quality Control Settings screen includes the following parameters,

a) SNR Threshold,
b) Std Error Threshold,
c) Spike Threshold,
d) Velocity Angle for Warning,
e) Tilt Angle Warning.

*f) To **select** a parameter,*
  i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select a parameter,
  ii). The parameter selected will be highlighted in yellow.

*g) To **navigate** to Template Menu,*
  i). Press the Left Soft Key.

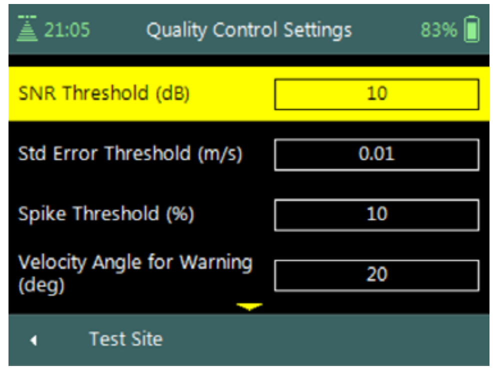


Figure 3:13 - Quality Control Settings

Properties associated with the parameters in quality control settings are defined in Table 3:9,

Table 3-9 - Quality Control Settings - Properties

Parameter	Min	Max	Default	Units	Required
SNR Threshold	0	50	10	dB	Yes
Std Error Threshold	0.001	0.25	0.01	m/s or ft/s	Yes
Spike Threshold	0.01	50	10	%	Yes
Velocity Angle for Warning	0.1	90	20	degrees	Yes
Tilt Angle Warning	0.1	5	5	degrees	Yes

3.4.3.1 SNR Threshold

The **SNR Threshold** parameter is a minimum threshold placed on the SNR variable during real-time data collection.

a) SNR is primarily a function of the amount of particulate matter in the water. For good conditions, SNR should be at least 10 dB.
b) The system can operate effectively with SNR as low as 2-3 dB, although the noise in individual velocity measurements will increase.
c) The default SNR Threshold applied in FlowTracker2 is 10dB.

*d) To **change** the SNR Threshold,*
  i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry,
  ii). Type in the new value using the keypad.

*e) To **DISABLE** the SNR Threshold,*
  i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry until "Disabled" is displayed.

3.4.3.2 Std Error Threshold

The **Standard Error Threshold** parameter is a maximum threshold placed on the Standard Error of velocity measurements.

a) Standard error of velocity (**σV**) is a direct measure of the accuracy of the mean velocity data.
b) The default Standard Error Threshold applied in FlowTracker2 is 0.01m/s.
c) *To **change** the Standard Error Threshold,*
   i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry,
   ii). Type in the new value using the keypad.
d) *To **DISABLE** the Standard Error Threshold,*
   i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry until "Disabled" is displayed.

3.4.3.3 Spike Threshold

The **Spike Threshold** parameter is the maximum threshold placed on the percentage of spikes within a measurement.

a) Spikes in velocity data occur with any acoustic Doppler velocity sensor such as the FlowTracker. Spikes may have a variety of causes – large particles, air bubbles, or acoustic anomalies.
b) The default Spike Threshold applied in FlowTracker2 is 10%.
c) *To **change** the Spikes Threshold,*
   i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry,
   ii). Type in the new value using the keypad.
d) *To **DISABLE** the Spikes Threshold,*
   i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry until "Disabled" is displayed.

3.4.3.4 Velocity Angle for Warning

The **Velocity Angle for Warning** parameter is the maximum threshold placed on the velocity angle towards the probe.

a) An angle of 0° means flow direction is perpendicular to the tag line (as desired for an ideal measurement location).
b) The default Velocity Angle for Warning applied in FlowTracker2 is 20 degrees.
c) *To **change** the Velocity Angle for Warning,*
   i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry,
   ii). Type in the new value using the keypad.
d) *To **DISABLE** the Velocity Angle for Warning,*
   i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry until "Disabled" is displayed.

3.4.3.5 Tilt Angle Warning

The **Tilt Angle Warning** parameter is the maximum threshold placed on the tilt angle of the wading rod.

a) An angle of 0° means the wading rod is vertical (as desired for an ideal mounting position).
b) The default Tilt Angle Warning applied in FlowTracker2 is 5 degrees.

*c) To **change** the Tilt Angle Warning,*
   i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry,
   ii). Type in the new value using the keypad.

*d) To **DISABLE** the Tilt Angle Warning,*
   i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry until “Disabled” is displayed.

3.4.4 **Discharge Settings**

The **Discharge Settings** function contains parameters required for discharge calculations, discharge uncertainty analysis and quality control process.

Discharge settings function is only applicable to the Discharge Mode. The General Mode does not contain any discharge calculation or uncertainty analysis.

Discharge Settings screen includes the following parameters,

a) Discharge Equation,
b) Discharge Uncertainty,
c) Discharge Reference,
d) Max Station Q for Warning,
e) Max Depth Change for Warning,
f) Max Spacing Change for Warning.
g) 0.6 Method Depth

*h) To **select** a parameter,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select a parameter,
   ii). The parameter selected will be highlighted in yellow.

*i) To **navigate** to Template Menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

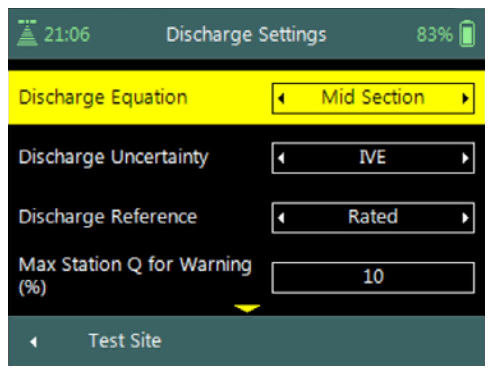


Figure 3:14 - Discharge Settings

Properties associated with the parameters in discharge settings are defined in Table 3:10,

Table 3-10 - Discharge Settings - Properties

Parameter	Min	Max	Default	Units	Required
Max Station Q for Warning	0.01	100	10	%	Yes

Max Depth Change for Warning	0.01	200	50	%	Yes
Max Spacing Change for Warning	0.01	200	100	%	Yes
0.6 Method Depth	0	100	0.5	m or ft	Yes

3.4.4.1 Discharge Equation

The **Discharge Equation** parameter allows the user to specify what type of discharge calculation method must be applied in the discharge calculation process.

a) The discharge equation calculation methods supported in FlowTracker2 software is grouped under the following,

   i). Mid-Section Method,

   ii). Mean-Section Method,

   iii). Japanese Method.

b) The default Discharge Equation applied in FlowTracker2 is Mid-Section.

The Arithmetic methods implemented for calculation of discharge are based on the following literature,

- ISO 748 – 2007, Hydrometry - Measurement of liquid flow in open channels using current meters or floats,
- WMO-No. 1044, Volume I – Fieldwork, 2010.
- Japanese Literature

c) *To **change** the Discharge Equation method,*

   i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the list of options,

3.4.4.2 Discharge Uncertainty

The **Discharge Uncertainty** parameter allows the user to specify what type of uncertainty analysis must be applied in the discharge calculation process.

a) The discharge uncertainty analysis supported in FlowTracker2 software is grouped under the following,

   i). ISO 748 - 2007

   ii). Interpolated Variance Estimator (IVE)

b) The default Discharge Uncertainty method applied in FlowTracker2 is IVE.

c) The discharge uncertainty analysis was not implemented for the Japanese discharge equation method.

The uncertainty analysis implemented for determining the overall discharge uncertainty are based on the following literature,

- ISO 748 – 2007, Hydrometry - Measurement of liquid flow in open channels using current meters or floats,

- Cohn, T., Kiang, J., and Mason, R., Jr. (2013). ”Estimating Discharge Measurement Uncertainty Using the Interpolated Variance.

d) *To **change** the Discharge Uncertainty method,*
   i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the list of options,

3.4.4.3 Discharge Reference

The Discharge Reference parameter allows the user to specify what discharge should be used to determine the percentage discharge displayed at each station.

a) The discharge reference types supported for determine the percentage station discharge are the following,
   i). Rated Discharge
   ii). Measured Discharge

b) The default Discharge Reference applied in FlowTracker2 is Rated Discharge.

c) *To **change** the Discharge Reference,*
   i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the list of options,

3.4.4.4 Max Station Q for Warning (%)

The **Max Station Q for Warning** parameter is the maximum threshold placed on station discharge.

a) Station discharge less than 5% of the total discharge is ideal; between 5 – 10% indicates that an additional station is required in the specific location, larger than 10% is not recommended.
b) The default Max Station Q for Warning applied in FlowTracker2 is 10%.

c) *To **change** the Max Station Q for Warning,*
   i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry,
   ii). Type in the new value using the keypad.

d) *To **DISABLE** the Max Station Q for Warning,*
   i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry until “Disabled” is displayed.

3.4.4.5 Max Depth Change for Warning (%)

The **Max Depth Change for Warning** parameter is the maximum threshold placed on depth change.

a) The change in depth between stations is evaluated to determine if depth may have been entered incorrectly.
b) The default Max Depth Change for Warning applied in FlowTracker2 is 50%.

c) *To **change** the Max Depth Change for Warning,*
   i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry,

ii). Type in the new value using the keypad.

*d) To **DISABLE** the Max Depth Change for Warning,*
i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry until "Disabled" is displayed.

3.4.4.6 Max Spacing Change for Warning (%)

The **Max Spacing Change for Warning** parameter is the maximum threshold placed on spacing change.

a) The change in spacing between stations is evaluated to determine if depth was not entered incorrectly.
b) The default Max Spacing Change for Warning applied in FlowTracker2 is 100%.

*c) To **change** the Max Spacing Change for Warning,*
i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry,
ii). Type in the new value using the keypad.

*d) To **DISABLE** the Max Spacing Change for Warning,*
i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry until "Disabled" is displayed.

3.4.4.7 0.6 Method Depth

The 0.6 Method Depth parameter is the threshold placed on the application of the six tenths velocity method.

a) The six tenths velocity method is set as default method in the software when the measured depth is below the threshold specified.
b) Different velocity method can be selected if the flow conditions are not suited for six tenths method.

*c) To **change** the 0.6 Method Depth,*
i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry,
ii). Type in the new value using the keypad.

3.4.5 Displayed Velocity Methods

The **Displayed Velocity Methods** function allows the user to specify which Discharge Velocity Methods must be displayed in the function.

Displayed Velocity Methods function is only applicable to the Discharge Mode. The General Mode does not contain any discharge calculation or uncertainty analysis.

Displayed Velocity Methods screen includes the following parameters,

a) 0.2/0.8/0.6 Methods
b) Kreps Methods
c) 5-Point Methods
d) 6-Point Methods
e) Vertical Velocity Curve

*f) To **select** a velocity method,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select a parameter,
   ii). The parameter selected will be highlighted in yellow.

*g) To **display** a velocity method,*
   i). Use the left or right arrow key to select either "Yes" or "No"

*h) To **navigate** to Template Menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

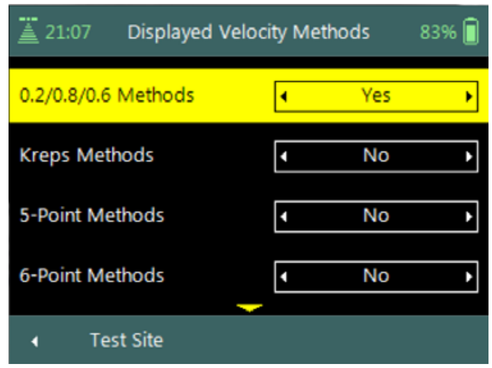


Figure 3:15 - Displayed Velocity Methods

Discharge Velocity Methods specifies how the FlowTracker2 determines mean station velocity at each station. See Determining Mean Station Velocity for details on the Discharge Velocity Methods. **Properties** associated with the parameters in displayed velocity methods are defined in Table 3:11,

Table 3-11 - Displayed Velocity Methods - Properties

Discharge Velocity Method	Default Display	Required
0.2/0.8/0.6 Methods	Yes	At least one method is required for Discharge Mode
Kreps Methods	No	
5-Point Methods	No	
6-Point Methods	No	
Vertical Velocity Curve	No	

Methods implemented for determining mean velocity in a vertical are based on the following literature,

- ISO 748 – 2007, Hydrometry - Measurement of liquid flow in open channels using current meters or floats,
- WMO-No. 1044, Volume I – Fieldwork, 2010.

Section 4. Utilities

4.1. System Clock

System Clock function enables the setting of the internal date and time used in the FlowTracker2 handheld software. The main data collection processes are associated with internal date and time stamps and it is important that the instrument date and time are configured correctly.

System Clock screen includes the following parameters,

a) Date,
b) Time,
c) UTC Time.

*d) To **change** internal date and time,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key to select Menu,
   ii). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select an option,
   iii). Press enter key to select the parameter highlighted in yellow.

*e) To **navigate** to Utilities menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

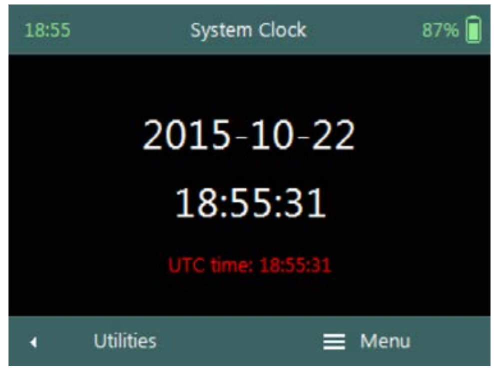


Figure 4:1 - System Clock

The System Clock options implemented to set the internal data and time of the FlowTracker2 handheld are the following,

- Manual Change
- Sync with GPS Time

Setting the correct date and time in the FlowTracker2 handheld is important to ensure that the correct metadata are associated with all measurements.

4.1.1 Manual Change

Manual Change option requires the user to enter the correct date and time based on external references.

Change System Clock screen includes the following parameters,

a) Offset From UTC,
b) Date,
c) Time.

*d) To **select** a parameter,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select a parameter,
   ii). The parameter selected will be highlighted in

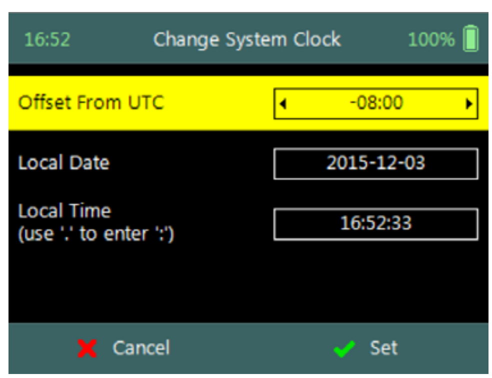


Figure 4:2 - Change System

yellow. **Clock**

*e) To **change** the Offset From UTC,*
   i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the list of available offsets,
   ii). Type in the new value using the keypad.

*f) To **change** the Date or Time,*
   i). Use the backspace key to clear current entry,
   ii). Type in the new value using the keypad.

*g) To **accept** the new Date and Time settings,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key,
   ii). The software will return to System Clock screen.

*h) To **CANCEL** change of System Clock settings,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

The System Clock time is displayed on the left corner of the top banner of the LCD screen in hh:mm. The time displayed can be referenced against an external reference to determine if the instrument internal clock is correct.

The **Properties** associated with the date and time parameters for manual Change option are defined in Table 4:1,

Table 4-1 - Date and Time - Properties

Parameter	Format	Separator	Example
Date	yyyy-mm-dd	-	2015-10-22
Time	hh:mm:ss	:	19:11:22
Offset From UTC	hh:mm	:	00:15

4.1.2 Sync with GPS Time

Sync with GPS Time option synchronizes the internal date and time of the FlowTracker2 handheld to GPS date and time.

When synchronizing the System Clock with GPS the internal time will be based on UTC time. Make sure the offset from UTC is set based on your region and select “Sync with GPS Time” again. The GPS time will now be correct with the offset from UTC time.

a) The information displayed on **Sync with GPS Time** screen includes the following,
   i). Waiting for GPS time.

b) The date and time will be updated when there are sufficient satellites in view of the handheld to establish a GPS lock.

c) The software will Navigate to the System Clock screen when the synchronization is complete.

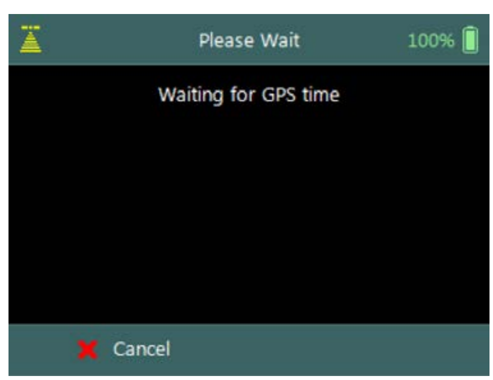


Figure 4:3 - Sync with GPS Time

d) *To* ***CANCEL*** *Sync with GPS Time,*
    i). Press the Left Soft Key.

GPS On: If the internal clock is detected to be more than one minute off – the clock text will be displayed in red and blinking. If the time difference with internal clock is less than 1 minute – the clock will be green.
GPS off: If the time difference with internal clock is less than 1 minute – the clock will be green.

The **system clock** has an internal battery that will keep time for approximately 3 months without the handheld AA battery cartridge installed. If the system is stored for a similar or longer period of time, it will be necessary to check or change the time.

4.2. Recorder

Recorder function enables the user to manage the memory usage of the internal recorder in the FlowTracker2 handheld. The available memory of the internal recorder is dependent on the type, number and size of the files stored.

a) The following information is displayed on the **Recorder** screen,
    i). Pie chart showing percentage of free and used recorder space,
    ii). Free Space in Megabytes (MB),
    iii). Used Space in Megabytes (MB).

b) The size of the internal recorder is 2000MB.

c) *To* ***ERASE*** *internal recorder,*
    i). Press the Right Soft Key to select Erase All.

d) *To* ***navigate*** *to Utilities menu,*
    i). Press the Left Soft Key.

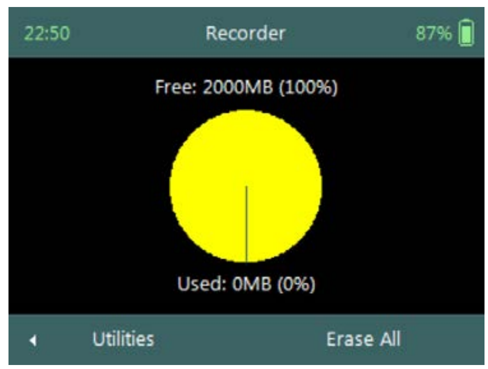


Figure 4:4 - Recorder

4.2.1 Manage Recorder

The FlowTracker2 stores different file types in the internal recorder based on the measurement method selected, templates created, configuration, firmware upgrade or language translation. The **Properties** associated with the FlowTracker2 file types stored on the internal recorder are defined in Table 4:2,

Table 4-2 - File Types - Properties

File	Type	Extension	Visible	Erase
Measurement File	Flow Tracker 2 Measurement File	.ft	Yes	Yes
Templates	Flow Tracker 2 Configuration	.ft_template	Yes	Yes

File	Type	Extension	Visible	Erase
	Template File			
Manual Beam Check	Flow Tracker 2 Beam Check File	.ft_beamcheck	Yes	Yes
Configuration	not relevant/not user exposed	**.dat**	No	No
Firmware	Flow Tracker 2 Firmware File	.ft_firmware	1) Uploaded from PC. 2) Not visible or accessible in HH by user.	No
Language	Flow Tracker 2 Localization File	.lang	1) Created and uploaded from PC. 2) Can be deleted in HH by pressing the Delete button while the language is selected.	No

The management of the internal recorder is important requirement to ensure that good data management practices are followed with regard to the following aspects,

- safe keeping of measurement files,
- discarding unwanted measurement files,
- available recorder space,
- removing hidden or corrupt files.

The internal recorder should not be used as the main storage device for safe keeping of measurement files. It is recommended that measurements are downloaded by the end of each day and a copy of the measurement files are stored on either a computer or USB flash drive.

4.2.2 Erase Recorder

The **Erase** function allows the user to erase all Measurement, Template and Manual Beam Check files that were stored on the internal recorder. See Table 4.2 for file types that are impacted by the erase function.

a) **Erase Recorder** require the user to input confirmation code “**123**”.

b) To ***ERASE*** *internal recorder,*
   i). Enter the confirmation code using the keypad,
   ii). Press the Right Soft Key to confirm.

c) To ***CANCEL*** *Erase Recorder,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

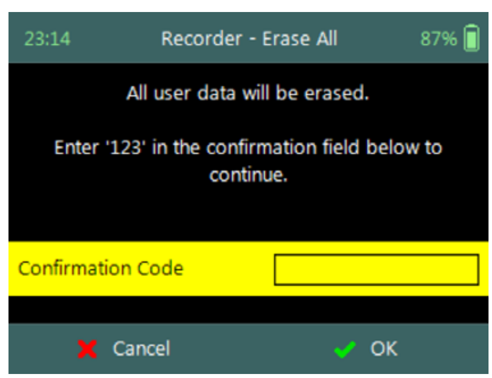


Figure 4:5 - Erase Recorder

Be certain that all data has been downloaded before erasing the recorder. Data cannot be recovered after the recorder is erased.

Regularly erasing the recorder ensures that good data management practices are followed. This will process will reduce the impact of unwanted or corrupt files on the available memory.

4.3. Battery Data

Battery Data function displays the battery voltage and estimated capacity of the battery used within the FlowTracker2 handheld.

The available battery capacity is displayed on the right corner of the top banner of the LCD screen as a percentage of the full capacity. The percentage available will guide the user in determining if batteries need to be replaced before a new measurement is started.

The **Battery Data** screen includes the following parameters,

a) Battery Type,
b) Battery Voltage,
c) Percentage Full.

*d) To **change** the Battery Type,*
   i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the list of available offsets.

*e) To **navigate** to Utilities menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

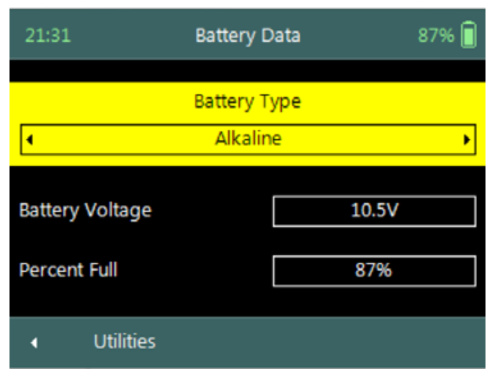


Figure 4:6 - Battery Data

4.3.1 Battery Type

The **Battery Type** parameter specifies the type of battery used within the FlowTracker2 handheld.

a) The Battery Types supported in FlowTracker2 is grouped under the following,

   i). Alkaline: 8 x size AA/LR6 Alkaline batteries,
   ii). NiMH : 8 x size AA, Type BK200AAB, 1.2Vdc, 1900mAh

Only this type of NiMH rechargeable batteries with IEC 62133 approval can be used, or else safety protection will be void.

The use of NiMH Rechargeable Batteries is only CE certified per IEC 62133 for FlowTracker2 part number FT2-HH-2 and above.

b) Battery specifications vary depending on brand. FlowTracker2 specifications are based on,

   i). Alkaline: Energizer Industrial EN91,

ii). NiMH: Panasonic Rechargeable BK200AAB,
iii). See also Table 4:5 – Battery Specification.

c) The typical capacity for battery types operating FlowTracker2 are the following. This is dependent on the brand of battery used and the environmental conditions that it is exposed to. **Battery capacity estimates are based on voltage and are only approximate, particularly for rechargeable batteries where voltage characteristics can change significantly over the life of the batteries.**

i). 8 x size AA: ≈ 15 hours continuous use with typical settings.

The typical settings used for determining the battery capacity indicated above are based on the following,

- Operating screen at 100% brightness,
- ADV sensor pinging at 50% of the measurement time,
- No sleep periods,
- GPS off.

Cold weather can greatly affect battery voltage and capacity; always check battery voltage after the system has acclimated to outside temperatures.

Battery manufacturer guidelines must be followed during normal use, long term storage and charging requirements. The disposal of batteries must be done with care and it is recommended that local authority guidelines be used.

4.3.2 Battery Voltage

The **Battery Voltage** displayed is the current battery voltage level available from the batteries installed in the FlowTracker2 handheld.

4.3.3 Percentage Full

The **Percentage Full** is an estimate of the remaining capacity of the battery as a percentage of the full capacity.

When the remaining capacity of the battery reaches **0%**, the FlowTracker2 handheld will supply the following message, "*Battery level critically low – shutting down*". The user will be required to replace the batteries before continuing with operations.

4.4. Raw Data Display

Raw Data function allows the graphical display of raw time series data measured by the FlowTracker2. The raw time series data are displayed with the units as shown below.

The **Raw Data** screen includes the following variables,

a) Velocity,
b) SNR,
c) Temperature,
d) Tilt,
e) Battery,

Pressure Sensor

f) Pressure.

*g) To **select** a variable,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to view a variable.

*h) To **navigate** to Utilities menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

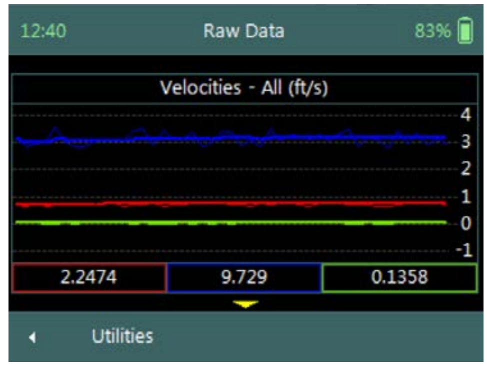


Figure 4:7 - Raw Data

Raw Data displayed in this function are NOT stored but enable the user to verify if the flow conditions are ideal for measurements**.**

4.4.1 Velocity Raw Data

The **Velocity** variable displays the individual velocity components of the one second measured raw velocity data.

a) Velocity data can be expected to show notable variations (most of which are real), and should be indicative of the general conditions in the water,
b) The raw velocity data are updated once per second,
c) The FlowTracker2 Probe Coordinate System is outlined in Figure 4:8.

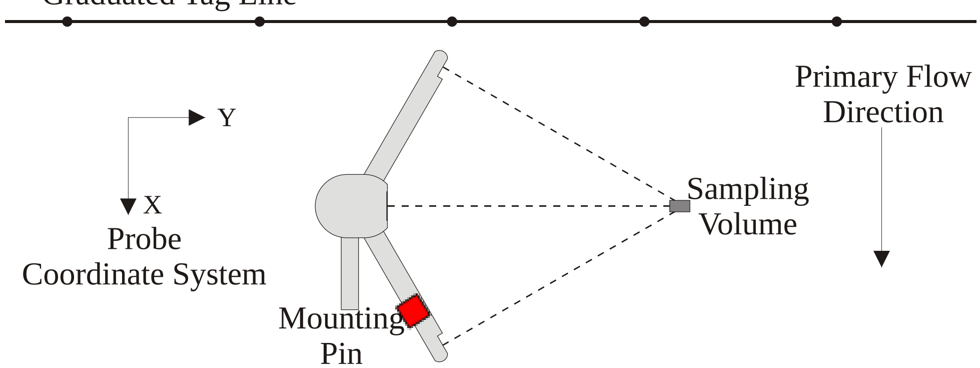
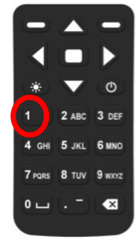
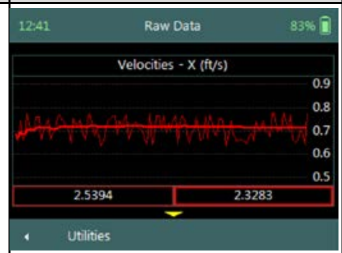
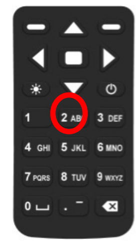
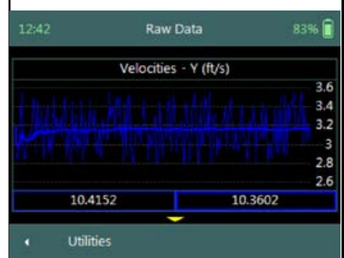
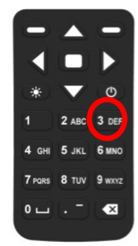
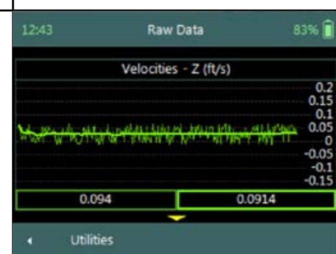
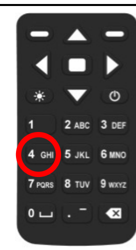


Figure 4:8 - FlowTracker2 Coordinate System

d) The velocity components of FlowTraker2 and display options for individual or all velocity components are listed in Table 4:3. The shortcut key on the keypad determines which velocity component will be displayed.

Table 4-3 - Raw Velocity Display

Velocity Component	Description	Line Color	Keypad Key	Graphic Display
X - Velocity	The positive X-axis is defined perpendicular to both the probe's stem and the axis of the transmit transducer in the direction of receiver arm #1 (marked with a red band).	Red		
Y - Velocity	The positive Y-axis is defined along the axis of the transmit transducer from the transmitter towards the sampling volume (making a right-handed coordinate system).	Blue		
Z - Velocity	The positive Z-axis is defined as vertically up in the direction of the probe's stem.	Green		
All Velocities	All of the above	Red / Blue / Green		

e) The continuous lines displayed in the graphics are defined under the following categories,

i). **Thin** continuous line represents the one second raw velocity data,

ii). **Thick** continuous line represents moving average of the one second raw velocity data.

f) The velocity values displayed in the rectangular boxes for each velocity component below the graphical display are defined under the following categories,

i). **Thin** box outline, instantaneous one second raw velocity data,

ii). **Thick** box outline, represents moving average of the one second raw velocity data.

4.4.2 SNR Raw Data

The **SNR** variable displays the individual Beam SNR measurements from the one second measured raw data.

a) SNR is primarily a function of the amount of particulate matter in the water. For good conditions, SNR should be at least 10 dB. The system can operate effectively with SNR as low as 2-3 dB, although the noise in individual velocity measurements will increase,
b) The SNR data is updated once per second,
c) The display options for individual or all beam SNR values are listed in Table 4:4. The shortcut key on the keypad determines which beam SNR will be displayed,

Table 4-4 - Beam SNR Display

Beam	SNR	Line Color	Keypad Key
Beam1	SNR1	Red	1
Beam2	SNR2	Blue	2
Beam3	SNR3	Green	3
All Beams	All SNR	All	4

d) The continuous lines displayed in the graphics are defined under the following categories,
   i). **Thin** continuous line represents the one second raw SNR data,
   ii). **Thick** continuous line represents moving average of the one second raw SNR data.
e) The SNR values displayed in the rectangular boxes for each beam below the graphical display are defined under the following categories,
   i). **Thin** box outline, instantaneous one second raw SNR data,
   ii). **Thick** box outline, represents moving average of the one second raw SNR data.

4.4.3 Temperature Raw Data

The **Temperature** variable displays the temperature measurements from the one second measured raw data.

a) Temperature data are used for sound speed calculations and can affect velocity data.
b) Check temperature data to be sure the values are reasonable for the environment.
c) The Temperature data are updated once per second.

4.4.4 **Tilt Raw Data**

The **Tilt** variable displays the angle of the wading rod from the vertical based on one second measured raw data.

a) The Tilt information is calculated from the internal pitch and roll sensor in the FlowTracker2 probe.
b) The Pitch and Roll data is recorded once per second.

4.4.5 **Battery Indicator**

The **Battery** variable displays the real time battery voltage level of the batteries housed in the FlowTracker2 handheld.

a) The FlowTracker2 uses eight AA batteries contained in a battery pack.
b) Cold weather can greatly affect battery voltage and capacity; always check battery voltage after the system has acclimated to outside temperatures.
c) The Battery data are updated once per second.
d) Comparison of Battery types are listed in Table 4:5

Table 4-5 – Battery Specification

Category	Alkaline	NiMH
General description	Single use	Rechargeable
Nominal battery capacity (typical)	1500 mAh	1900mAh
New battery voltage	12V	11V
Drained battery voltage	8V	9V

When the remaining capacity of the battery reaches **0%**, the FlowTracker2 handheld will supply the following message, "*Battery level critically low – shutting down*". The user will be required to replace the batteries before continuing with operations.

4.4.6 **Pressure** **(Pressure Sensor)**

The **Pressure** variable displays the pressure measurements from the one second measured raw data.

a) Pressure data are used for calculating the total water and point measurement depth from the water surface.

b) Atmospheric or Air pressure calibration should be performed before and during a measurement to compensate for changes in atmospheric pressure during a measurement.

c) Pressure data are updated once per second.

Pressure data will not be displayed if the probe is in air. The probe must be submerged in water. Pressure sensor data displayed in this function are NOT stored and enables the user to verify the pressure sensor operations.

4.5. Automated Beam Check

The **Automated Beam Check** function allows the user to perform a Beam Check in the region of the measurement section before data collection starts. The automated beam check perform a number of quality control checks on the data collected to determine if the flow conditions are suitable for discharge measurements.

The **Automated BeamCheck** procedure and data analysis is discussed in detail in 6.4 Automated Beam Check of the manual. It is recommended that the user study this section to get a full understanding of the BeamCheck procedure.

The **Automated Beam Check** screen shows the steps involved in performing an automated beam check.

a) The FlowTracker2 probe should be placed in the region of the measurement section in moving water such that the probe is submerged and well away from any underwater obstacles.
b) The FlowTracker2 collects data for about 20 seconds.

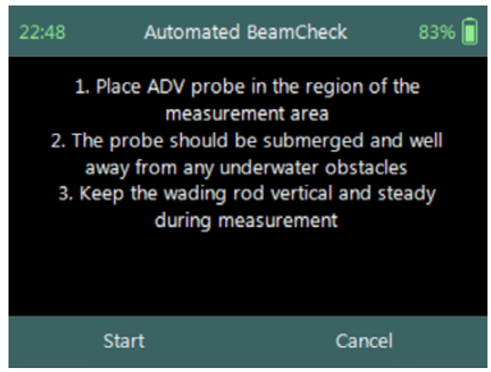


Figure 4:9 - Automated Beam Check

c) The graphical display of the Quality Control parameters supplied during the Automated BeamCheck is time series of each parameter.

d) The display options for individual or all beam check data are listed in Table 4:6. The shortcut key on the keypad determines which beam SNR will be displayed,

Table 4-6 - Automated Beam Check Display

Beam	Line Color	Keypad Key
Beam1	Red	1
Beam2	Blue	2
Beam3	Green	3
All Beams	All	4

e) *To **select** a Quality Control Criteria,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to view quality control criteria.

f) *To **start** the automated beam check,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

g) *To **CANCEL** automated beam check,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key,
   ii). The software will navigate to Utilities window.

h) *To **accept** Automated Beam Check,*

i). Press the Right Soft Key,
ii). The software will navigate to the Utilities window.

4.6. Beam Check

Beam Check operates by sending a pulse of sound into the water, and then plots the signal to noise ratio of the return signal versus range for each of the FlowTracker's receivers. This information can be evaluated to determine the effective measurement range, to look for interference from boundaries/structures, to survey a deployment site, or to observe the quality of the returned signal.

The **Beam Check** procedure and data analysis is discussed in detail in 6.3 Beam Check of the manual. It is recommended that the user study this section to get a full understanding of the BeamCheck procedure.

a) The Beam Check function can be accessed from the Utilities menu,

b) Beam Check file will be recorded in the handheld recorder for each Beam Check performed. The file naming convention for beam check files consists of the following,

   i). File Extension: .ft_beamcheck
   ii). Naming Convention: yyyymmdd-hhmmss

c) The maximum number of samples that can be recorded during a Beam Check is 30.

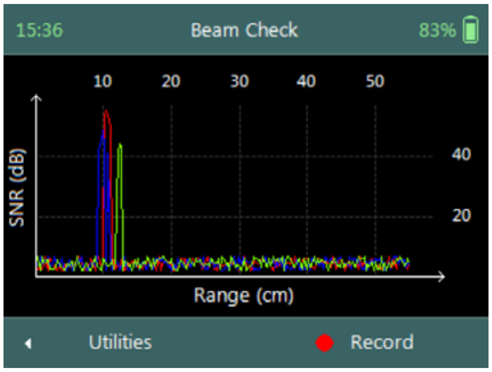


Figure 4:10 – Beam Check

d) Place the probe in either a small tank, bucket of water or measurement section in canal or river such that the probe is submerged and there is a boundary (surface, side, or bottom) within view,

*e) To **record or stop recoding** of Beam Check,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key,

*f) To **navigate** to Utilities menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

4.7. GPS Data

GPS Data function display the Global Positioning System data received from the internal GPS receiver in the FlowTracker2 handheld. The GPS data displayed consist of satellite time, satellite information and coordinates.

The **GPS Data** screen includes the following variables,

a) Device Date UTC,
b) Device Time UTC,
c) Satellite Date UTC,
d) Satellite Time UTC,
e) # Satellites,
f) Fix Quality,
g) Latitude,
h) Longitude,
i) Altitude,
j) HDOP.

*k) To **navigate** to Utilities menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

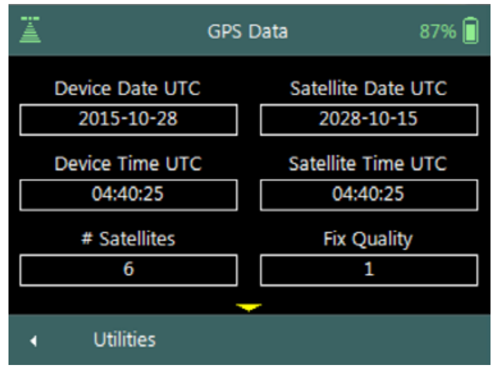


Figure 4:11 - GPS Data

Properties associated with the variables in displayed GPS Data screen are defined in Table 4:7,

Table 4-7 - GPS Data - Properties

Variable	Description	Format \ Units
Device Date UTC	The FlowTracker2 handheld internal date set to Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).	yyyy-mm-dd
Device Time UTC	The FlowTracker2 handheld internal time set to Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).	hh:mm:ss
Satellite Date UTC	Current satellite date based on Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).	yyyy-mm-dd
Satellite Time UTC	Current satellite time based on Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).	hh:mm:ss
# Satellites	Number of satellites in view of GPS receiver in the FlowTracker2 handheld	n/a
Fix Quality	GPS Quality indicator (0=no fix, 1=GPS fix, 2=Dif. GPS fix)	n/a
Latitude	GPS derived Latitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS
Longitude	GPS derived Longitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS
Altitude	GPS derived altitude above mean sea level.	m
HDOP	Horizontal dilution of position is a GPS term used to describe the geometric strength of satellite configuration on GPS accuracy. HDOP values are typically between 1 and 2 although the ideal is a HDOP value of 1.	n/a

4.8. Pressure Sensor (Pressure Sensor)

Pressure Sensor function allows the user to perform individual measurement steps associated with pressure sensor during a Discharge or General measurement.

Depth data will not be displayed if the probe is in air. The probe must be submerged in water. Pressure Sensor Data displayed in this function are NOT stored. It enables the user to verify the pressure sensor operation and determine if flow conditions are ideal for measurements.

The **Pressure Sensor** screen includes the following features,

a) PS Calibration,
b) PS Instrument Depth,
c) PS Total Depth,
d) PS Charts.

*e) To **navigate** to Utilities menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

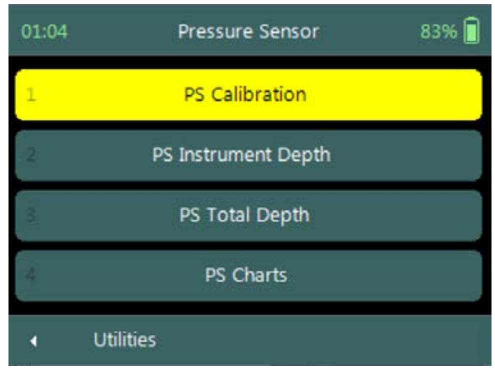


Figure 4:12 – Pressure Sensor

4.9. System Maintenance

System Maintenance function enables the user to perform number of maintenance tasks on the FlowTracker2 handled and probe firmware.

System Maintenance screen includes the following functions,

a) Force Probe Upgrade,

*b) To **select** a variable,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to view a variable.

*c) To **navigate** to Utilities menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

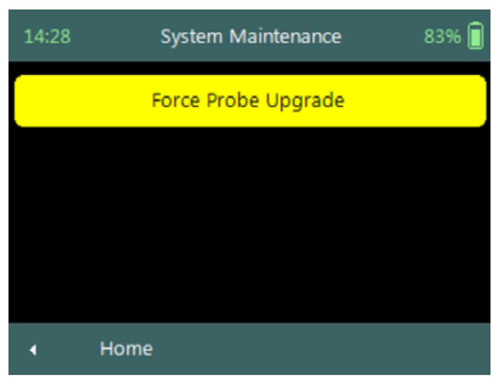


Figure 4:13 – System Maintenance

4.9.1 Force Probe Upgrade

The **Force Probe Upgrade** function allows the user to either upload or downgrade the firmware on the probe. This function is normally used when communication problems are experienced with the probe or when the probe firmware needs to be downgraded.

Warning screen of **Force Probe Upgrade** function displays the warnings associated with downgrading probe firmware,

a) *To* ***CANCEL*** *force probe upgrade,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.
b) *To* ***continue*** *with force probe upgrade,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

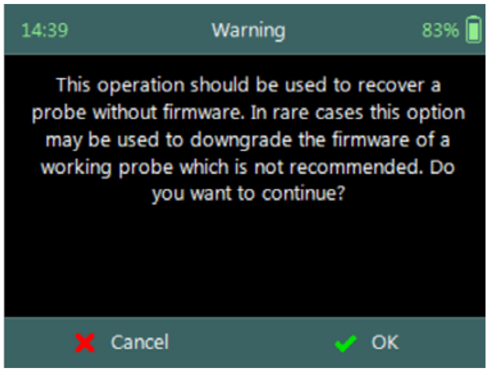


Figure 4:14 – Force Probe Upgrade Warning

In case where the probe firmware version is newer than the firmware installed on the handheld, the handheld will supply a warning message before each velocity measurement is performed: “The Probe firmware is newer than expected – please consider upgrading the Handheld firmware to the latest version available”

Section 5. Data Collection Modes

The FlowTracker2 provides two data collection modes that the user can apply in the collection of velocity data. The Discharge and General modes available in FlowTracker2 has different field applications and the method of each mode is described in this section.

5.1. Discharge Mode

Discharge Mode is for applications where the primary goal is to measure river/stream discharge. The technique involves taking a series of velocity measurements at different locations throughout the cross section. These measurements are combined with location and water depth information to compute the total discharge.

5.1.1 **Measurement Technique**

The basic **Measurement Technique** used for performing discharge measurement using the Discharge Mode is briefly discussed under the following points and this measurement process should be read in conjunction with Site Selection Requirements.

a) A measurement site is selected based on criteria stipulated in Site Selection Requirements. The site selection process is a crucial part of collecting discharge measurement data.
   i). Ideal measurement site, the flow should be perpendicular to the tag line at all points with no flow reversals or obstructions.
   ii). The measurement site should encompass the minimum measurement site and hydraulic requirements discussed in Site Selection Requirements.
   iii). Flow conditions at the measurement site are the most important factor in determining overall accuracy of the measurement.

b) A graduated tag line is strung across the river.
c) The operator starts at one edge, recording the starting-edge location and water depth.
d) The river cross section is split into several stations. At each station, the operator records the station location and water depth, and then performs velocity measurements at one or more depths to determine the mean velocity at that station.
e) During velocity measurements, the probe's X-axis is maintained perpendicular to the tag line (Figure 5:1); the red band (receiver arm #1) should face downstream. Only the X-component of velocity (**Vx**) is used to in the discharge calculation, regardless of the flow direction (flow direction is also measured and recorded).

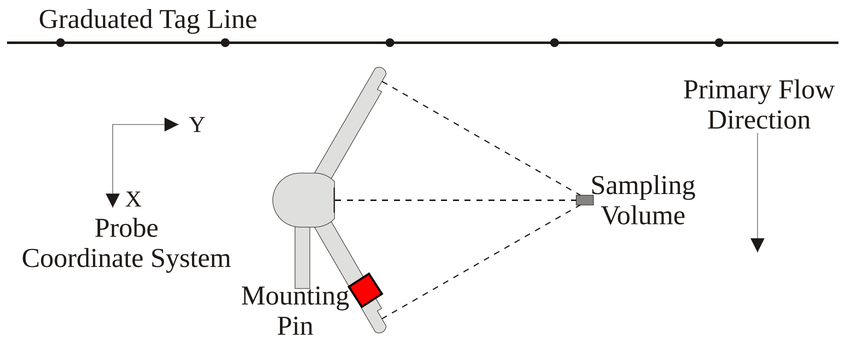


Figure 5:1 – FlowTracker2 Probe Orientation Relative to Stream Flow

f) When all station measurements are completed, the operator records the ending-edge location and water depth.
g) The total discharge is the sum of all station discharge values.

5.1.2 Discharge Calculation Methods

The discharge calculation methods implemented in FlowTracker2 are based on established methods that are documented in international standards and are widely used by government agencies, hydrologists and hydrographers. The discharge calculation methods were originally developed for current meter instruments. The FlowTracker2 makes use of the same measuring technique and for this reason the same calculation methods can be used to determine the total discharge.

The methods implemented for calculation of discharge are based on the following literature,

- ISO 748 – 2007, Hydrometry - Measurement of liquid flow in open channels using current meters or floats,
- WMO-No. 1044, Volume I – Fieldwork, 2010.
- Japanese Literature

The FlowTracker2 supports several discharge calculating methods for calculating discharge following the basic measuring technique outlined above.

- **Mid-Section** equation (see 5.1.2.1),
- **Mean-Section** equation (see 5.1.2.2),
- The **Japanese** equation (see 5.1.2.3).

5.1.2.1 Mid-Section Equation

The **Mid-Section** method is based on a measurement section that is divided into a number of stations with panels created for each station across the section. The average velocity of a panel is assumed to be equal to the average velocity in the vertical calculated from the point velocity measurements made. The equation of the Mid-Section method is given in Equation 5:1.

This method is used by the U.S. Geological Survey (USGS), the primary U.S. government agency responsible for river discharge monitoring.

Equation 5:1 - Mid-Section Method

$$Q = \sum \bar{v}_0 d_0 \left(\frac{b_1 - b_0}{2}\right) + \bar{v}_1 d_1 \left(\frac{b_2 - b_0}{2}\right) + \bar{v}_n d_n \left(\frac{b_{n+1} - b_{n-1}}{2}\right)$$

Edge	Open water	Open Water

where, $\bar{v}$ *is the average velocity in the vertical or at the station,*
d is the water depth measured at the station,
b is the location of the station.

The application of the Mid-Section equation within a measurement section is graphically shown in Figure 5:2. The principle of the Mid-Section method is highlighted in the figure below where the panel width ($W_{2)}$ is calculated based on the station locations (L_2) with the station as the center of the panel.

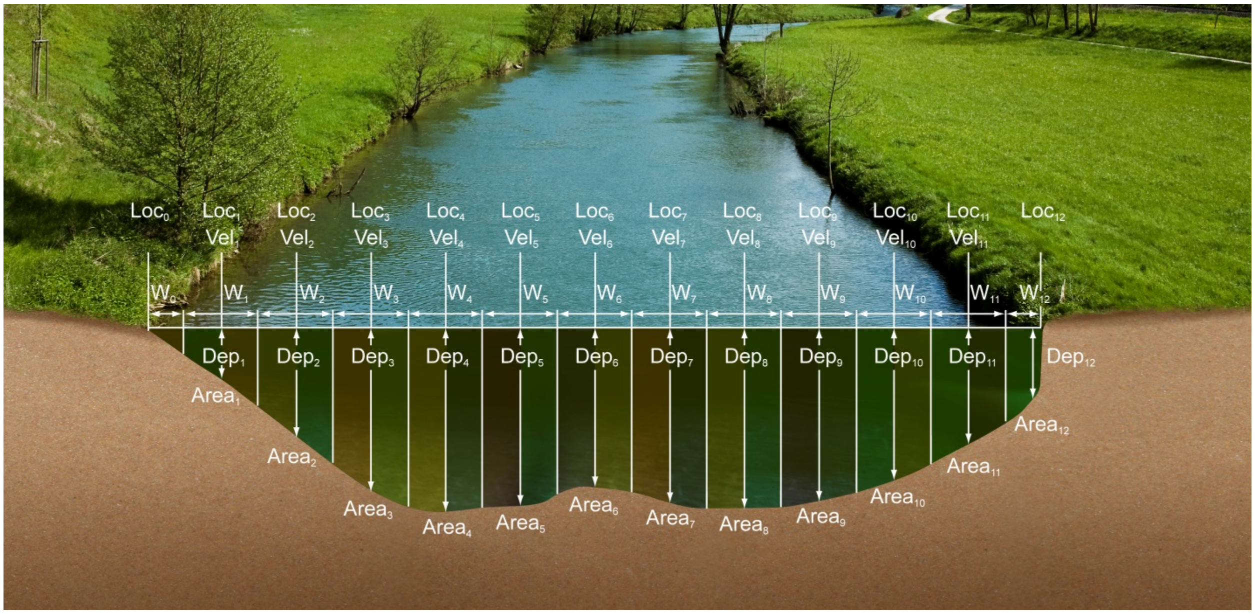


Figure 5:2 - Mid-Section Method

There are few special cases to consider when applying the Mid-Section method in calculating of total discharge.

a) **Edges**

i). Edge can be either the Left Bank or Right Bank,

ii). Edge calculations are handled differently from stations in open water with reference to the first component of Equation 5:1,

iii). The mean velocity at the edge is scaled from the adjacent station by a user defined correction factor (CF),

iv). Edge water depth of zero will result in zero flow for the edge calculation.

b) **Islands** (multiple channels)

i). If a river is split into multiple channels, any internal island(s) must be accounted for in the discharge calculation,

ii). The stations at each edge of the island(s) are treated as an Island Edge,

iii). Island edge calculations are handled the same as 71 with reference to the first component of Equation 5:1,

iv). The mean velocity at the island edge is scaled from the adjacent station by a user defined correction factor (CF),

v). Edge water depth of zero will result in zero flow for the edge calculation.

5.1.2.2 Mean-Section Equation

The **Mean-Section** method is based on a measurement section that is divided into number of stations with panels created in between adjacent stations across the section. The average velocity of a panel is assumed to be the average velocity of the two adjacent stations velocities in the vertical calculated from point velocity measurements made. The equation of the Mean-Section method is given in Equation 5:2.

Equation 5:2 - Mean-Section Method

$$Q = \sum (b_1 - b_0)\left(\frac{d_1 + d_0}{2}\right)\left(\frac{\overline{v}_1 + \overline{v}_0}{2}\right) + (b_2 - b_1)\left(\frac{d_2 + d_1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{\overline{v}_2 + \overline{v}_1}{2}\right) + (b_{n+1} - b_n)\left(\frac{d_{n+1} + d_n}{2}\right)\left(\frac{\overline{v}_{n+1} + \overline{v}_n}{2}\right)$$

Edge	Open water	Open Water

where, $\overline{v}$ *is the average velocity in the vertical or at the station,*
d is the water depth measured at the station,
b is the location of the station.

The application of the Mean-Section equation within a measurement section is graphically shown in Figure 5:3. The principle of the Mean-Section method is shown in the figure below where panel width (W) is calculated based on the station locations between adjacent stations across the section.

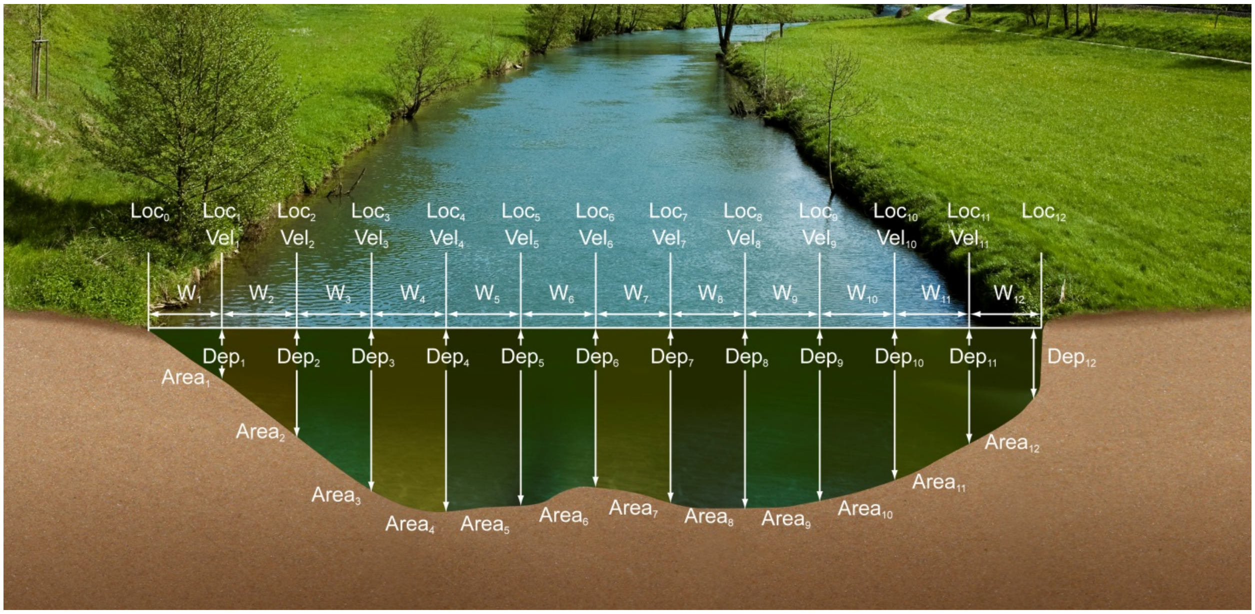


Figure 5:3 - Mean-Section Method

There are few special cases to consider when applying the Mean-Section method in calculating of total discharge.

a) **Edges**

   i). Edge can be either the Left Bank or Right Bank,
   ii). Edge calculations are handled exactly the same from stations in open water with reference to the first component of Equation 5:2,
   iii). Correction factor (CF) is NOT applied in Mean-Section method to scale the mean velocity at the edges from the adjacent station,
   iv). The discharge on the edges can be determined by applying Equation 5:2 on the assumption that the velocity at the edges is zero.

b) **Islands** (multiple channels)

   i). If a river is split into multiple channels, any internal island(s) must be accounted for in the discharge calculation,
   ii). The stations at each edge of the island(s) are treated as an Island Edge,
   iii). Island edge calculations are handled the same as 73 with reference to the first component of Equation 5:2,
   iv). Correction factor (CF) is NOT applied in Mean-Section method to scale the mean velocity at the edges from the adjacent station,
   v). The discharge on the edges can be determined by applying Equation 5:2 on the assumption that the velocity at the edges is zero.

5.1.2.3 Japanese Equation

The **Japanese** method is similar to both the Mean-Section and Mid-Section methods in some respects with its own unique measuring technique. The most significant feature of the Japanese method is the duplicate measurements performed of each depth and point velocity measurements at a station. The Japanese national standard guideline for determining the measurement interval for depth and velocity are dependent on the measurement section width and are supplied in Table 5:1.

Table 5-1 - Predetermination of Measuring Intervals

River Width, B (m)	Measuring Interval of Depth, M (m)	Measuring Interval of Velocity, N (m)
Less than 10m	10 – 15% of B	N=M
10-20	1	2
20-40	2	4
40-60	3	6
60-80	4	8
80-100	5	10
100-150	6	12
150-200	10	20
200 over	15	30

The Japanese method has two separate equations for determining the total discharge based on the measurement section width. The equation of the Japanese method for measurement section greater than 10m is given in Equation 5:3.

Equation 5:3 - Japanese Method > 10m

$$Q = \sum \underbrace{\left\{\left[(b_1 - b_0) \times 0.5\left(\frac{d_1+d_1'}{2} + \frac{d_0+d_0'}{2}\right) + (b_2 - b_1) \times 0.5\left(\frac{d_2+d_2'}{2} + \frac{d_1+d_1'}{2}\right)\right] \times \left(\frac{\overline{v}_1+\overline{v}_1'}{2}\right)\right\}}_{\textbf{Edge}} +$$

$$\underbrace{\left\{\left[(b_n - b_{n-1}) \times 0.5\left(\frac{d_n+d_n'}{2} + \frac{d_{n-1}+d_{n-1}'}{2}\right) + (b_{n+1} - b_n) \times 0.5\left(\frac{d_{n+1}+d_{n+1}'}{2} + \frac{d_n+d_n'}{2}\right)\right] \times \left(\frac{\overline{v}_n+\overline{v}_n'}{2}\right)\right\}}_{\textbf{Open Water}}$$

The equation of the Japanese method for measurement section smaller than 10m is given in Equation 5:4.

Equation 5:4 - Japanese Method < 10m

$$Q = \sum \underbrace{\left\{\left[(b_1 - b_0) \times 0.5\left(\frac{d_1+d_1'}{2} + \frac{d_0+d_0'}{2}\right) + \left(\frac{b_2 - b_1}{2}\right) \times 0.5\left(\frac{d_2+d_2'}{2} + \frac{d_1+d_1'}{2}\right)\right] \times \left(\frac{\overline{v}_1+\overline{v}_1'}{2}\right)\right\}}_{\textbf{Edge}} +$$

$$\underbrace{\left\{\left[\left(\frac{b_2 - b_1}{2}\right) \times 0.5\left(\frac{d_2+d_2'}{2} + \frac{d_1+d_1'}{2}\right) + \left(\frac{b_3 - b_2}{2}\right) \times 0.5\left(\frac{d_3+d_3'}{2} + \frac{d_2+d_2'}{2}\right)\right] \times \left(\frac{\overline{v}_2+\overline{v}_2'}{2}\right)\right\}}_{\textbf{Open Water}} +$$

$$\underbrace{\left\{\left[\left(\frac{b_n - b_{n-1}}{2}\right) \times 0.5\left(\frac{d_n+d_n'}{2} + \frac{d_{n-1}+d_{n-1}'}{2}\right) + \left(\frac{b_{n+1} - b_n}{2}\right) \times 0.5\left(\frac{d_{n+1}+d_{n+1}'}{2} + \frac{d_n+d_n'}{2}\right)\right] \times \left(\frac{\overline{v}_n+\overline{v}_n'}{2}\right)\right\}}_{\textbf{Open Water}}$$

The application of the Japanese equation within a measurement section that is greater than 10m is graphically shown in Figure 5:4.

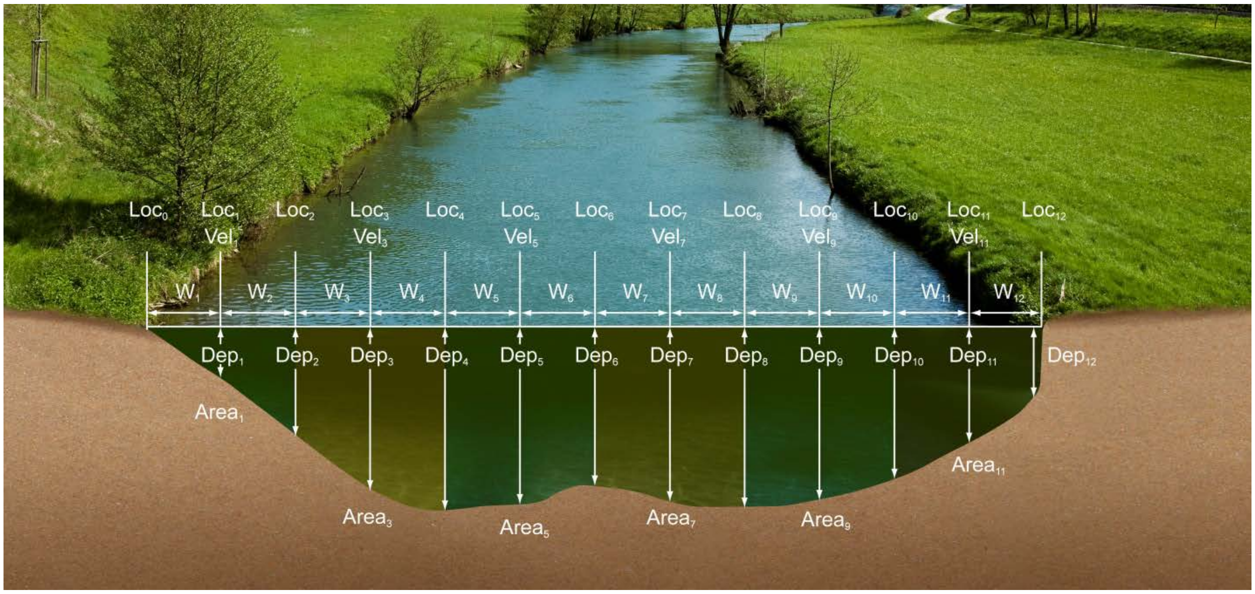


Figure 5:4 - Japanese Method >10m

There are few special cases to consider when applying the Japanese method in calculating of total discharge.

a) **Edges**

   i). Edge can be either the Left Bank or Right Bank,

   ii). Edge calculations are handled exactly the same from stations in open water with reference to the first component of Equation 5:3,

   iii). Correction factor (CF) is NOT applied in Japanese method to scale the mean velocity at the edges from the adjacent station,

b) **Islands** (multiple channels)

   i). If a river is split into multiple channels, any internal island(s) must be accounted for in the discharge calculation,

   ii). The stations at each edge of the island(s) are treated as an Island Edge,

   iii). Island edge calculations are handled the same as 75 with reference to the first component of Equation 5:3,

   iv). Correction factor (CF) is NOT applied in Japanese method to scale the mean velocity at the edges from the adjacent station,

5.1.3 Determining Mean Station Velocity

The **Mean Station Velocity** or **Mean Velocity in a Vertical** determines how mean velocity is determined at each station. The measurement techniques used involves variations in the number of point velocity measurements taken at a range of measurement depts. The method used to calculate the mean velocity in a vertical depends on the number of point velocity measurements made within a vertical.

Methods implemented for determining mean station velocity in a vertical are based on the following literature,

- ISO 748 – 2007, Hydrometry - Measurement of liquid flow in open channels using current meters or floats,
- WMO-No. 1044, Volume I – Fieldwork, 2010.

The methods implemented in FlowTracker2 for determining the Mean Station Velocity are defined in Table 5:2.

Table 5-2 - Determining Mean Station Velocity

Method	Measurement Depth	Mean Velocity Equation
0.6	0.6 * depth	$V_{mean} = CF * V_{0.6}$
0.2/0.8 **0.8/0.2**	0.2 * depth 0.8 * depth	$V_{mean} = CF * ((V_{0.2} + V_{0.8}) / 2)$
.2/.6/.8 **.8/.6/.2**	0.2 * depth 0.6 * depth 0.8 * depth	$V_{mean} = CF * ((V_{0.2} + 2*V_{0.6} + V_{0.8}) / 4)$
Ice 0.6	0.6 * effective depth	$V_{mean} = 0.92*V_{0.6}$ (Correction Factor 0.92 can be changed by user)
Ice 0.5	0.5 * effective depth	$V_{mean} = 0.88*V_{0.5}$ (Correction Factor 0.88 can be changed by user)
Ice 2/8 **Ice 8/2**	0.2 * effective depth 0.8 * effective depth	$V_{mean} = CF * ((V_{0.2} + V_{0.8}) / 2)$
Kreps 2- **Kreps 2+**	0.0 (near surface) 0.62 * depth	$V_{mean} = CF * (0.31*V_{0.0} + 0.634*V_{0.62})$
5 Point+ **5 Point-**	0.0 (near surface) 0.2 * depth 0.6 * depth 0.8 * depth 1.0 (near bottom)	$V_{mean} = CF * ((V_{0.0} + 3*V_{0.2} + 3*V_{0.6} + 2*V_{0.8} + V_{1.0}) / 10)$
6 Point+ **6 Point-**	0.0 (near surface) 0.2 * depth 0.4 * depth 0.6 * depth 0.8 * depth 1.0 (near bottom)	$V_{mean} = CF * ((V_{0.0} + 2*V_{0.2} + 2*V_{0.4} + 2*V_{0.6} + 2*V_{0.8} + V_{1.0}) / 10)$
Vertical Velocity Curve	Any number of points at user-specified depths	V_{mean} = CF * Integrated velocity Measurements can be made in any order; they are sorted by depth to calculate the integrated mean velocity. Repeat measurements at the same depth are averaged prior to calculating the integrated velocity.

Method	Measurement Depth	Mean Velocity Equation
None	No velocity measurement	$V_{mean} = CF * V_{adjacent}$ Mean velocity is based on the velocity from the adjacent station(s), multiplied by a user-specified correction factor. This method is used when velocity measurements cannot be made or with the Japanese method.
Input V	User input velocity	$V_{mean} = V_{input}$ User enters an estimated velocity value. This method is used when velocity measurement is not possible, most commonly due to weed growth along a riverbank.

Methods involving more than one measurement can be done in either direction (from surface to the bottom or from the bottom towards the surface).

5.1.3.1 Method None

The method **None** is used in a number of different scenarios from assigning zero velocity to channel banks, stations where no measurements are possible to Japanese method where the measurement section is wider than 10m.

a) **Channel Banks**

i). Edges describing the left or Right bank of a channel,
ii). Island Edges describing the banks of island\s,
iii). The method **None** is assigned automatically for Edges and Island Edges by the software.

b) **Station Measurement not Possible**

i). The measuring site conditions do not allow velocity measurement (perhaps due to weed growth),
ii). Velocity for this station is based on the mean station velocity from the adjacent station(s) with velocity measurements multiplied by the user-specified correction (**CF**) factor for this station.

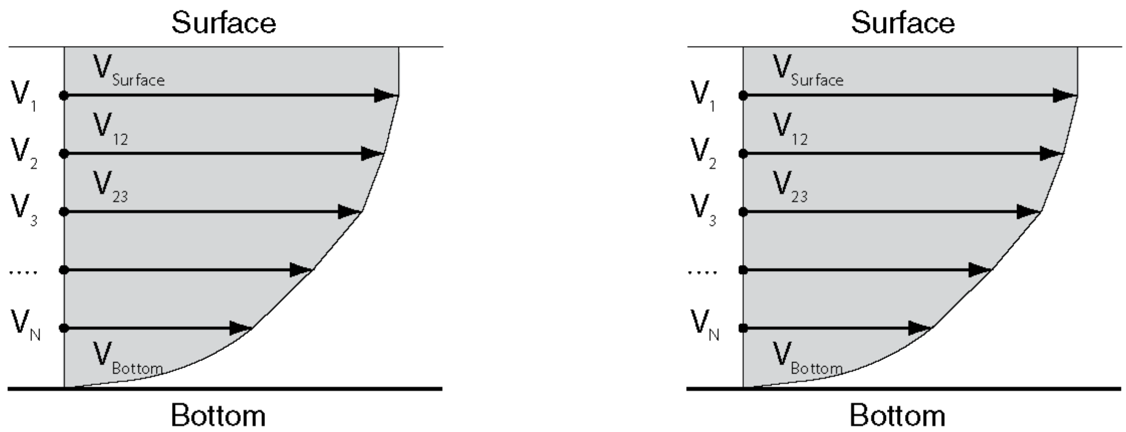
c) **Japanese Method**

i). Japanese measuring technique for measurement sections wider than 10m require velocity measurements only at every second station,
ii). A velocity method of “Depth Only” is assigned to **None** velocity stations.

5.1.3.2 Vertical Velocity Curve

The **Vertical Velocity Curve** method is a series of point velocity measurements that are well distributed between the water surface and channel bed. Normally observation is made at 0.1 depth increments between 0.1 and 0.9 of the total water depth. Point velocity measurements at the standard 0.2, 0.6 and 0.8 depths are required to compare the vertical velocity curve method against standard methods.

a) For each measurement, you must manually enter the measurement depth.
b) The mean station velocity (mean velocity in vertical) is calculated by integrating all velocity measurements considering their location as illustrated in Figure 5:5.



Mid and Mean Section Integration

$$V_{Surface} = V_1$$
$$V_{i(i+1)} = (V_i + V_{i+1})/2$$
$$V_{Bottom} = (6/7)^* V_N \text{ (1/6 power law)}$$

Japanese Equation Integration

$$V_{Surface} = V_1$$
$$V_{i(i+1)} = (V_i + V_{i+1})/2$$
$$V_{Bottom} = (1/2)^* V_N \text{ (Linear velocity change)}$$

Figure 5:5 - Vertical Velocity Curve

c) If multiple measurements are made at the same measurement depth, these measurements are averaged prior to calculating the velocity integration.

5.1.3.3 Correction Factor

The **Correction Factor** (CF) is a user supplied parameter used to scale the mean station velocity or velocity in the vertical.

Be careful when selecting a **Correction Factor**, as the mean station velocity is always scaled by this value. Incorrect use of this parameter will affect the final discharge measurement.

a) The **CF** is commonly used at edges, internal islands, and other method **None** stations to scale the velocity from the adjacent station(s).

b) Table 5:3 list the **Correction Factors** implemented for each Station Type and Velocity Method.

Table 5-3 – Correction Factors

Station Type	Velocity Method	Correction Factor
Bank	n/a	User defined
Island Edges	n/a	User defined
Open water	None	User defined
	0.6	1

Station Type	Velocity Method	Correction Factor
	0.2 / 0.8	1
	0.2 / 0.6 / 0.8	1
	Enter Velocity	1
Ice	None	User defined
	0.5	0.88
	0.6	0.92
	0.2 / 0.8	1
	0.2 / 0.6 / 0.8	1
	Enter Velocity	1

c) The **CF** can consist of any value between -1.00 and 1.00, except 0.0.

d) The **CF** can be entered for any station and the mean station velocity will be multiplied by the CF.

5.1.4 Discharge Uncertainty Calculation

Discharge Uncertainty Calculation is performed on every discharge measurement to determine the overall measurement uncertainty.

a) The uncertainty calculation methods implemented in FlowTracker2 is based on the **Interpolated Variance Estimator (IVE)** and **ISO** methods,

i). The **Interpolated Variance Estimator (IVE)** uncertainty calculation method uses a method developed by researchers at the U.S. Geological Survey. The IVE uncertainty calculation is the default method as it provides the most reliable indicator of measurement quality,

ii). The **ISO** method is based on the international standard. It provides users with the results of a published, standard technique; however, in some cases this calculation may not provide a reliable indicator of data quality.

The uncertainty analysis implemented for determining the overall discharge uncertainty are based on the following literature,

- ISO 748 – 2007, Hydrometry - Measurement of liquid flow in open channels using current meters or floats,
- Cohn, T., Kiang, J., and Mason, R., Jr. (2013). ”Estimating Discharge Measurement Uncertainty Using the Interpolated Variance.

b) The application of uncertainty calculation methods to discharge calculation methods are defined,

i). The uncertainty calculation methods implemented are only applicable to the “Mid-Section” and “Mean-Section” discharge calculation methods.

ii). The Japanese method does not incorporate discharge uncertainty calculations and a method “None” is assigned.

c) The uncertainty calculations are based on several different parameters. In addition to overall uncertainty, the FlowTracker2 also looks at the contribution of each of the following parameters.

i). **Accuracy**: The accuracy of the FlowTracker2 calibration (this is generally negligible),

ii). **Depth**

- In the **IVE** calculation, this term includes both uncertainty in the depth measurement and the effect of changes in depth between stations,
- In the **ISO** calculation, this term includes only the uncertainty in depth measurements.

iii). **Velocity**

- In the **IVE** calculation, this term includes both uncertainty in the velocity measurement and the effect of changes in velocity between stations,
- In the **ISO** calculation, this term includes only the uncertainty in velocity measurements.

iv). **Width**

- Estimated uncertainty in width measurements.

v). **Method:** Determining Mean Station Velocity.

- Use for the **ISO** method only.

vi). **Number of stations**

- Use for the **ISO** method only.

5.1.5 Under Ice Measurements

The discharge calculation methods discussed previously in this section are also applicable for **Under Ice Measurements.** It is recommended that the operator refer to existing literature describing under ice measurements as there are number of aspects that need to be taken into account.

"Standard Operating Procedures for under ice discharge measurements using ADCPs", Water Survey of Canada, Environment Canada, is a good reference guide for performing under ice measurements

There are a couple of additional requirements for calculating total discharge in addition to what was discussed under Discharge Calculation Methods when performing under ice measurements,

a) Additional measurements required during under ice measurements,

i). Ice thickness,

ii). Water surface to bottom of ice,

iii). Water surface to bottom of slush (if slush is present).

b) Calculating of effective depth. The effective depth is defined by the distance between the streambed and the bottom of the ice or slush in the case slush is present,

   i). 0.2 depth setting = a + 0.2C

   ii). 0.8 depth setting = b – 0.2C

   iii). 0.6 depth setting = b – 0.4C

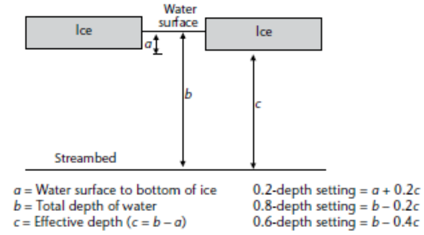


Figure 5:6 - Effective Depth

c) Station area is calculated by multiplying the effective depth and station width.

5.1.6 Weighted Gauge Height

The **Weighted Gauge Height** during a discharge measurement is the mean water level calculated at the monitoring site during the measurement time. It is important that an accurate mean gauge height is determined as this is used with the discharge measured to develop stage-discharge relationship for the monitoring site. The methods implemented in FlowTracker2 for determining the weighted gauge height during a discharge measurement is the **average** of both the **Discharge Weighted** and **Time Weighted** gauge height.

a) The discharge weighted process is based on the discharge calculated within the time interval associated with each set of gauge height readings. The equation of the discharge weighted method is given in Equation 5:5.

Equation 5:5 - Discharge Weighted

$$H = \frac{q_1 h_1 + q_2 h_2 + q_3 h_3 + q_n h_n}{Q}$$

where, H *is the mean gauge height,*
Q *is the total discharge,*
q *is the discharge measured between time interval of gauge height readings,*
h *is the average gauge height readings taken between time interval.*

b) The time weighted process is based on the arithmetic mean of the gauge height calculated within the time interval associated with each set of gauge height readings.

Equation 5:6 - Time Weighted

$$H = \frac{t_1 h_1 + t_2 h_2 + t_3 h_3 + t_n h_n}{T}$$

where, H *is the mean gauge height,*

T is the total time for the measurement,
t is the duration of time interval between gauge height readings,
h is the average gauge height readings taken between time interval.

The method for determining the weighted gauge height are based on the following literature,

- Measurement and Computation of Stream flow: Volume 1. Measurement of Stage and Discharge. Page 170. By S. E. RANTZ and others

5.2. General Mode

The **General Mode** of data collection is for applications that need a series of velocity measurements at different locations that do not require a standard discharge output.

5.2.1 Measurement Technique

The basic **Measurement Technique** used for performing velocity measurements using General Mode is briefly discussed below. The measurement technique differs from the Discharge Mode where the objective is to determine water velocity at specific locations.

a) The measurement location is not required to comply with any measurement site or hydraulic requirements stipulated in Site Selection Requirements.
b) The flow conditions at the measurement location should be within the FlowTracker2 specifications.
c) Station is created for each point velocity measurement assigned a unique X and Y coordinate.
d) Station velocity measurement performed at user defined location and depth.

5.2.2 Determining Mean Velocity

The **Mean Velocity** outputs generated from velocity measurements performed in General Mode consist of Mean Station Velocity and Mean Velocity of All Stations.

a) The **Mean Station Velocity** is the average of the velocity measurements performed over a user defined sampling interval at a specific measurement depth.
b) The **Mean Velocity of All Stations** is the average of all the station measurements performed each at its own unique location and measurement depth.

Section 6. Quality Control

Quality Control (QC) is continuously performed on all variables collected during a measurement in both Discharge and General Modes. The Quality Control Parameters are automatically reviewed at different stages of a measurement and if any values exceed the expected criteria a warning is supplied.

6.1. Quality Control Parameters

Quality Control Parameters used to analyze the variables collected during a measurement are discussed in the following section. The quality control parameters with its expected values are supplied in Table 6:1. All quality control parameters can be adjusted or disabled based on measurement site and or user requirements.

Table 6-1 - Quality Control Parameters

Parameter	Description	Expected
SNR	**SNR** is the most important Quality Control parameter, • It measures the strength of the acoustic reflection from particles in the water, • Without sufficient SNR, the FlowTracker2 cannot measure velocity.	Ideally > 10 dB Minimum ≥ 4 dB
Velocity Standard Error	**σV** (velocity standard error) is a direct measure of the accuracy of velocity data, • It includes the effects of turbulence in the river and instrument uncertainty.	Typically < 0.01m/s (0.03 ft/s). Higher in turbulent environment.
Boundary Interference	**Boundary** QC evaluates the measurement environment for interference from underwater obstacles, • **FAIR** or **POOR** results may indicate significant interference from an underwater obstacle.	• BEST, • GOOD, • FAIR, • POOR.
Velocity Spike Filtering	**Spikes** in FlowTracker2 velocity data are removed using a spike filter, • Some spikes are common and no cause for concern, • Too many spikes indicate a problem in the measurement environment (e.g., interference from underwater obstacles or highly aerated water).	Typically < 5% of total samples. Should be < 10% of total samples.
Velocity Angle	**Angle** is the direction of the measured velocity relative to the FlowTracker2 X-axis, • Used for discharge measurements only, • A good site should have small velocity angles,	Ideally < 20º

Parameter	Description	Expected
	• Large angles may be unavoidable at some sites.	
Tilt Angle	**Angle** of the wading rod relative to the vertical, • Used for both discharge and general mode, • A good measurement should have small tilt angles, • Large tilt angles may be unavoidable at some sites.	Ideally < 5º
Station Percent Discharge	**%Q** is the percentage of the total discharge in a single measurement station, • Most agencies have criteria for the maximum **%Q**.	Typical criteria: Ideally < 5% Maximum < 10%
Station Water Depth	**Depth** is the maximum percentage variation in depth between adjacent stations.	Typical criteria: Maximum < 50%
Station Location	**Location** is the maximum percentage variation in location between adjacent stations.	Typical criteria: Maximum < 100%
Velocity Profile 0.2 \ 0.8	**0.2 \ 0.8 Velocity Profile** evaluated against expected velocity distribution, • Used for discharge measurements only, • Suggest 0.6 depth measurement if set criteria is complied with.	Ideally: near-surface velocity > n Velocity

6.1.1 Signal to Noise Ratio (SNR)

Signal to Noise Ratio (SNR) is a measure of the strength of the reflected acoustic signal relative to the ambient noise level of the FlowTracker2. SNR is the most important quality control data provided by the FlowTracker2.

a) SNR is reported in logarithmic units (dB). It is recorded with each one-second velocity sample.
b) For the best operating conditions, SNR should be greater than 10 dB.
c) The FlowTracker2 can operate reliably with SNR as low as 4 dB, although the noise in individual measurements will increase.
d) Low SNR indicates a lack of suspended material in the water. For clear water, seeding material can be introduced to increase SNR. Seeding is typically only required in large laboratory tanks. Most field applications have sufficient natural scattering material.

SNR Data Display

e) The SNR data displayed during and after a point velocity measurement and when a station and or stations are completed in both General and Discharge Modes are supplied in Table 6:2. Individual beam SNR data can be accessed by exporting the raw data in either JSON or CSV format from FlowTracker2 desktop software,

Table 6-2 – SNR Data Types

Mode	Reporting	Type	Description
All	Graphical	Raw Data	One second SNR data is displayed for each beam and color codes based on the beam number (see Table 4:4).
		Moving Average	Moving average is calculated of the one second SNR data and is graphically displayed with the raw SNR data.
	Real Time	Raw Data	Instantaneous one second raw SNR data is displayed with the graphical display.
Discharge	Review Point Measurement	Mean Point Measurement SNR	The point measurement SNR is the mean of beam 1 and 2 at the point measurement. Receiver 3 (if installed) is not used in the mean calculation because we assume the probe is side-looking (either a 2D or 2D/3D probe), and only Vx and Vy are of interest. Receiver 3, which is only used for Vz, is irrelevant.
	Review Station	Mean Station SNR	The station SNR is the mean of all point measurements at a station.
	Discharge Summary	Mean Section SNR	The discharge summary SNR is the mean of all the station mean SNR within the section
General	Review Point Measurement	Mean Beam SNR at Point Measurement	The point measurement SNR is the mean of one second SNR data for each individual beam (2 or 3 depending on probe type) at the point measurement.
	Review Station	Mean Beam SNR at Station	The station SNR is the mean for each individual beam (2 or 3 depending on probe type) of all point measurements at a station.
	General Summary	Mean SNR	The general summary SNR is the mean of all individual beam SNRs at all point measurements.

SNR Data Evaluate

f) SNR is the most important quality control data provided by the FlowTracker2. SNR is evaluated against number of quality control criteria and at the end of each velocity point measurement, the following SNR checks are run in General mode and Discharge mode.

i). SNR from all beams must be greater than 4 dB for reliable data collection.

ii). **Low SNR**. If the SNR of any beam is below 4.0 dB, *"Low SNR"* alert will be given at the end of point and section measurement.

- For 2D systems, if the SNR of either beam is low, this will affect all velocity data even if the other beam shows higher SNR values.
- For 2D/3D systems, if only the SNR of Beam 3 is low, vertical velocity data (Vz) are affected; the horizontal velocity data (Vx and Vy) may still be valid. This can occur if Beam 3 is out of the water in very shallow water.

iii). **Approach Low SNR**. If the SNR is between 4 and 7 dB, *"Approach Low SNR"* alert will be given at the end of point and section measurement.

iv). **Beam SNRs Not Similar**. When the difference between any two beams is greater than SNR Threshold,

- This may indicate interference from an underwater obstacle or a potential problem with the probe,
- At the first alert, repeat the measurement (perhaps after moving probe location),
- If the problem persists, run Beam Check to evaluate FlowTracker2 operation in more detail.

v). **Large SNR Variation**. When the standard deviation of the SNR of each beam during the measurement is greater than a fixed threshold of 5 dB,

- This may indicate interference from an underwater obstacle, a highly turbulent environment, or highly aerated water,
- At the first alert, repeat the measurement (perhaps after moving probe location),
- If the problem persists, evaluate the measurement environment. In some cases, large variations may be unavoidable and may not impact the quality of velocity data.

vi). **SNR Threshold Variation**. When SNR for a new measurement differs from the mean of three or more completed stations in this measurement by more than SNR Threshold,

- This may indicate interference from an underwater obstacle or some other dramatic change in stream conditions,
- At the first alert, repeat the measurement (perhaps after moving probe location),
- If the problem persists, evaluate the measurement environment to look for any potential cause for the change in SNR.

vii). **SNR Threshold** is checked with the completion of a point velocity measurement and measurement section (see Timing of Warning Messages)**.**

- User is notified of any stations that exceed the above criteria.
- If desired, user can delete suspect stations and repeat the measurements.

g) The SNR checks are re-run (Discharge mode and General mode measurement) to ensure the warnings are set with the most current data.
h) This criterion can be adjusted or disabled under Quality Control Settings.

SNR is primarily a function of the amount and type of particulate matter in the water. SNR cannot be immediately converted to sediment concentration, it provides an excellent qualitative picture of sediment fluctuations and with proper calibration, SNR can be used to estimate sediment concentration.

6.1.2 Velocity Standard Error

Standard Error of Velocity (**σV**) is a direct measure of the accuracy of the mean velocity data.

a) **σV** can be directly interpreted as the accuracy of the mean velocity.
b) **σV** is calculated by dividing the standard deviation of one-second samples by the square root of the number of samples.
c) **σV** is normally dominated by real variations in the flow and will vary depending on the measurement environment (see Principle of Operations).

σV Data Display

d) The **σV** displayed after a point velocity measurement, station and or stations are completed in both General and Discharge Modes are supplied in Table 6:3.

Table 6-3 – σV Data Types

Mode	Reporting	Type	Description
Discharge	Review Point Measurement	σV Point Measurement	X-component velocity standard error.
	Review Station	Mean Station σV	The station σV is the mean of the X-component velocity standard error from each point velocity measurement.
	Discharge Summary	Mean Section σV	The discharge summary σV is the mean of all stations average X-component velocity standard error.
General	Review Point Measurement	Beam σV at Point Measurement	The point measurement σV for each individual beam (2 or 3 depending on probe type) at the point measurement.
	Review Station	Mean Beam σV at Station	The station σV is the mean for each individual beam (2 or 3 depending on probe type) of all point measurements at a station.
	General Summary	Mean σV	The general summary σV is the mean of all stations average X-component velocity standard error.

σV Data Evaluate

e) **σV** is evaluated against number of quality control criteria and at the end of each velocity point measurement, the following velocity standard error checks are run in General mode and Discharge mode.

i). The standard error threshold for each measurement is the greater of the following,

- **σV Threshold** (default 0.01 m/s / 0.033 ft/s),
- If the mean **σVx** for three or more completed stations measurements is greater than **σV Threshold**, then increment the **σV Threshold** by the mean value (**Mean σVx + σV Threshold**),
- If the **σV Threshold** is larger than 0.250m/s, then set **σV Threshold** equal to 0.250m/s.
- If the mean spike filtered X-component velocity (high velocity has higher **σVx**) is larger than **σV Threshold** then set **σV Threshold** to 5% of X-component velocity.

ii). When σVx is greater than the standard error threshold for that measurement,

- This may indicate interference from an underwater obstacle, a highly turbulent environment, or highly aerated water,
- At the first alert, repeat the measurement (perhaps after moving probe location),
- If the problem persists, evaluate the measurement environment. In some cases, large variations may be unavoidable (e.g., in highly turbulent waters).

iii). **σV Threshold** is checked with the completion of a point velocity measurement and measurement section (see Timing of Warning Messages)**.**

- User is notified of any stations that exceed the above criteria.
- If desired, user can delete suspect stations and repeat the measurements.

f) If the point measurements X-component velocity standard error is 0 or if it exceeds the updated **σV Threshold** then a **Standard Error > QC** warning is given.

g) The velocity standard error checks are re-run (Discharge mode and General mode measurement) to ensure the warnings are set with the most current data.

h) This criterion can be adjusted or disabled under Quality Control Settings.

6.1.3 Boundary Interference

The **Boundary Interference** quality control looks for interference from underwater objects that are in or close to the FlowTracker2 sampling volume. The system tries to avoid this interference, but you must be aware of system limitations.

a) The impact of underwater objects and or boundaries on the measurement is related to the FlowTracker2 principle of operation.

i). Reflections can occur from the bottom, the water surface, or submerged objects (e.g., rocks).

ii). The FlowTracker2 measures velocity in a sampling volume 10 cm (4 in) from the probe tip.
iii). If the sampling volume is on top of or beyond an underwater object, velocity data will be meaningless.

b) When working in very shallow water or near underwater obstacles (with the sampling volume within 15 cm (6 in) of the obstacle), acoustic reflections can potentially affect velocity data.

i). At each measurement location, the FlowTracker2 looks for these conditions, and if necessary, adapts its operation to avoid interference.
ii). For most locations, any required changes do not affect system performance.
iii). In some environments, changes may result in a lower maximum velocity.

Boundary Display

c) The FlowTracker2 records any changes required to avoid acoustic interference. It reports this as **Boundary QC**. This value describes the effect (if any) of boundary adjustments on performance. The **Boundary QC** variable (**Bnd**) can have the following values (0 and 1 are the most common).

0 (Best)	• No boundary adjustments were necessary, or if necessary, they have minimal impact on system performance. Maximum velocity is at least 3.5 m/s (11 ft/s)
1 (Good)	• Minor boundary adjustments were necessary, with moderate impact on system performance. Maximum velocity is at least 2.5 m/s (8 ft/s).
2 (Fair)	• Larger boundary adjustments were necessary, with notable impact on system performance. Maximum velocity is at least 1.2 m/s (4 ft/s).
3 (Poor)	• Major boundary adjustments were necessary, with significant impact on system performance. Maximum velocity is less than 1.2 m/s (4 ft/s). The FlowTracker will still provide good performance for lower flows.

Figure 6:1 - Boundary QC Conditions

Boundary Data Evaluate

d) The **Boundary Interference** check looks for interference with underwater objects that are in or close to the FlowTracker2 sampling volume. The FlowTracker2 automatically adapts its pinging to minimize boundary interference, but it can only adapt so much, and the resulting pings could still be influenced by the boundary. The FlowTracker2 software receives two values from the firmware to use in determining the amount of boundary interference: velocity ambiguity and the best single ping precision, both available in m/s.

i). If the **Boundary QC** results are **FAIR** or **POOR**, this indicates possible interference, and the FlowTracker2 will issue an alert before the measurement is made.

- User is prompted to consider moving the probe to avoid this interference.
- If the probe is moved, repeat the boundary test prior to data collection.
- If repeated Boundary QC tests do not give improved results, user can proceed with the measurement, but should carefully evaluate velocity data.

ii). The **Boundary Interference** is checked before a point velocity measurement is made and if the condition is not "Best", then the Boundary Interference warning is given (see Timing of Warning Messages).

e) This criterion can be adjusted or disabled under Quality Control Settings.

6.1.4 Velocity Spike Filter

The **Velocity Spike Filter** quality control is applied to each point velocity measurements in both General mode and Discharge mode. Spikes in velocity data occur with any acoustic Doppler velocity sensor such as the FlowTracker. Spikes may have a variety of causes – large particles, air bubbles, or acoustic anomalies.

Filter Method

a) The FlowTracker2 spike filter is a variation on a method called "Tukey's Outlier. Just like in Tukey's method, the data are sorted in ascending order, then divided into 4 quartiles.

i). A histogram of each velocity component is calculated.
ii). The FlowTracker2 determines the 1st Quartile (**Q1**) velocity value where 25% of the samples are less than this value. The 3rd Quartile (**Q3**) is the velocity value where 75% of the samples are smaller than this value. The Interquartile Range (**IQR**) is defined as the spread between the 1st Quartile and the 3rd Quartile (**IQR = Q3-Q1**).
iii). If the **IQR** is less than 0.015 m/s, **IQR** is set to 0.015 m/s.
iv). Any value less than (**Q1–2*IQR**) or greater than (**Q3+2*IQR**) is considered a spike and is not used for mean velocity calculations.

b) Spikes are filtered based on all velocity components (Vx, Vy, and Vz). If any velocity component falls outside the above limits, that sample is not used for the mean velocity, standard deviation or velocity standard error calculation.

c) No other filtering or editing is done to FlowTracker2 velocity data.

Spike Data Display

d) The number of spikes is displayed and recorded at the end of each measurement.

e) Raw, one-second velocity data are recorded with each measurement station. This allows you to evaluate unedited velocity data for each station.

Spike Data Evaluate

f) The **Velocity Spike Filter** is applied to each point velocity measurements in both General mode and Discharge mode, but the filter is not attempted unless there are at least 10 samples in a measurement. The **Spike Threshold** (default 10%) is used as follows to determine the number of velocity spikes present in the data.

i). If the number of spikes is a greater percentage of the total number of points than specified by the **Spike Threshold**, a warning is given.

- This may indicate interference from an underwater obstacle, a highly turbulent environment, or highly aerated water.
- At the first alert, repeat the measurement (perhaps after moving probe location).
- If the problem persists, evaluate the measurement environment – a large number of spikes may be unavoidable, but may not overly impact the quality of velocity data.

ii). The **Spike Threshold** is checked with the completion of a point velocity measurement and measurement section (see Timing of Warning Messages)**.**

- User is notified of any stations that exceed the above criteria.
- If desired, user can go back and delete suspect stations and repeat the measurements.

g) The **Velocity Spike Filter** is checked at the end of each point velocity measurement and if the number of velocity spikes is larger than allowed by the **Spike Threshold**, then give the **High % Spikes** warning.

h) The velocity spike filter check is re-run (Discharge mode and General mode measurement) to ensure the warnings are set with the most current data.

f) This criterion can be adjusted or disabled under Quality Control Settings.

6.1.5 Velocity Angle

The **Velocity Angle** quality control parameter is applied to each point velocity measurement in **Discharge** mode.

a) For an ideal discharge measurement site, flow should be perpendicular to the tag line used to define the cross section.

b) A good measurement site will typically show some flow variations, but with all angles less than about 20°.

c) The ability of the FlowTracker2 to measure the 2D flow eliminates the need to estimate the flow direction with each measurement, as is required for most 1D current meters. This reduces a potential source for error in velocity measurements.

Velocity Angle Method

d) Velocity angle is defined as the direction of flow relative to the X direction, and is calculated as **atan(Vy/Vx)**.

i). The FlowTracker's X-axis is always held perpendicular to the tag line.

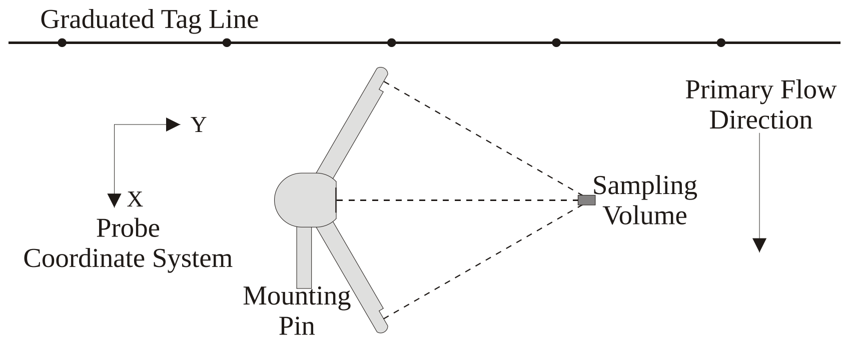


Figure 6:2 – FlowTracker2 Probe Orientation Relative to Stream Flow

ii). An angle of 0° means flow direction is perpendicular to the tag line (as desired for an ideal measurement location).

iii). Only the X component of velocity (Vx) is used for discharge calculations. This ensures proper discharge measurements regardless of the flow direction.

Velocity Angle Evaluate

e) The Velocity Angle measured is evaluated to ensure reliable data collection. The velocity angle for a point measurement is computed from the de-spiked point measurement mean velocity components as angle = atan2(Vy, Vx). The **Max Angle** criterion (default 20º) is used as follows.

i). Velocity angle is checked only if velocity is greater than a fixed threshold (0.02 m/s; 0.07 ft/s).

ii). When measured angle is greater than **Max Angle**, a warning is given.

- Evaluate the measurement site to verify the measured angle is reasonable.
- Consider repeating the measurement if the angle does not appear reasonable (perhaps after moving probe location).
- For large velocity angles, consider moving the measurement site.

iii). The **Max Angle** is checked with the completion of a point velocity measurement and measurement section (see Timing of Warning Messages).

- User is notified of any stations that exceed the above criteria.
- If desired, user can go back and delete suspect stations and repeat the measurements.

f) The Velocity Angle is checked at the end of each point velocity measurement and if the measurement's mean velocity X component is at least 0.02 m/s and if the velocity angle is larger than **Max Velocity Angle**, then give the **Velocity Angle > QC** warning.

g) The velocity angle check is re-run (Discharge mode and General mode measurement) to ensure the warnings are set with the most current data.

h) **Max Angle** is active only in **Discharge** data collection mode.

i) This criterion can be adjusted or disabled under Quality Control Settings.

6.1.6 Tilt Angle

The **Tilt Angle** quality control is applied to each point velocity measurements in both General mode and Discharge mode

a) A good measurement will typically show variations in wading rod angle, but with all angles less than about 5°.

Tilt Method

b) Tilt angle is defined as the angle of the wading rod relative to the vertical.

   i). The tilt angle of 0° means that the wading rod is vertical.

   ii). The tilt angle is only an indicator and not used in any calculations

Tilt Evaluate

c) If the wading rod angle exceeds **Max Wading Rod Angle**, a warning is issued; you are prompted to realign the wading rod.

   i). When measured angle is greater than **Max Angle**, a warning is given.

   - Evaluate the measurement to verify the measured angle is reasonable.
   - Consider repeating the measurement if the angle does not appear reasonable (perhaps after moving probe location).

   ii). The **Max Wading Rod Angle** is checked with the completion of a point velocity measurement and measurement section (see Timing of Warning Messages)**.**

   - User is notified of any point velocity measurement that exceeds the above criteria.
   - If desired, user can go back and delete suspect point velocity measurement and repeat the measurements.

d) The tilt angle is checked at the end of every point velocity measurement and if the wading rod angle > **Max Wading Rod Angle**, then give the **Velocity Angle > QC** warning.

e) The tilt angle is checked at the end of a section and reports the stations where the tilt angle exceeds **Max Wading Rod Angle**.

f) This criterion can be adjusted or disabled under Discharge Settings.

6.1.7 Station Percent Discharge

Most agencies that perform discharge measurements expect that no individual station should contain more than a certain percentage of the total discharge. The **Max Station Q** criterion (default 10%) alerts you if this standard is exceeded.

% Stn Q Method

a) The user can set the discharge reference to either “rated” or “measured”. The reference is used when computing the discharge percent to display. When the discharge percent is calculated,

   i). The rated discharge is used only at the end of each station,

   ii). The measured discharge is used only at the end of a section.

% Stn Q Evaluate

b) If the station discharge exceeds **Max Station Q** percent of the rated flow, a warning is issued; you are prompted to consider adding another station.

   i). If rated flow is entered, the discharge from each station is checked against this rated value when the station is completed.

   ii). **Max Station Discharge** is checked at the end of each station and measurement section (see Timing of Warning Messages).

   - User is notified of any stations that exceed the Max Depth Change criterion.
   - User is prompted to verify the depth value or re-enter the depth.

c) The maximum station discharge is checked at the end of a station and if the ratio of station discharge to rated discharge > **Max Station Discharge**, then give the **High Stn % Discharge** warning.
d) The maximum station discharge is checked at the end of a section and reports the stations where the percent of station discharge to total discharge exceeds **Max Station Discharge**.
e) **Max Station Discharge** is active only in **Discharge** data collection mode.
f) This criterion can be adjusted or disabled under Discharge Settings.

6.1.8 Station Water Depth

The **Max Depth Change** criterion (default 50%) is intended to avoid data entry errors.

a) It is assumed that depth changes between stations will be gradual.

Max Depth Evaluate

b) If the entered depth is different from a reference by more than Max Depth Change (and at least 0.20 m; 0.66 ft) an alert is issued to be sure the depth was not incorrectly entered.
   i). If only the previous station is available, the newly entered depth is compared to the depth from the previous station.
   ii). If depth data are available on both sides of this station, the newly entered depth is compared to an interpolated depth between the two adjacent stations.
   iii). **Max Depth Change** is checked during station configuration and at the end of a measurement section (see Timing of Warning Messages).

   - User is notified of any stations that exceed the Max Depth Change criterion.
   - User is prompted to verify the depth value or re-enter the depth.

c) Water depth is checked of each station and if the water depth varies from the reference depth by a percentage larger than **Max Depth Change**, then give the **Water Depth Change > QC** warning.
d) The station water depth check is re-run (only for Discharge mode) to ensure the warnings are set with the most current data.
e) **Max Depth Change** is active only in **Discharge** data collection mode.
f) This criterion can be adjusted or disabled under Discharge Settings.

6.1.9 Station Location

The **Max Spacing Change** criterion (default 100%) is intended to avoid data entry errors.

Max Station Evaluate

a) It is assumed that the spacing of adjacent stations will be nearly constant across the river.
b) If spacing between stations has changed by more than **Max Spacing Change**, an alert is issued to be sure the location was not incorrectly entered. A 100% **Max Spacing Change** means the new station spacing is more than two times the previous station spacing.
   i). Determine if the station location trend is expected to be increasing or decreasing by comparing the location of the first two stations. All stations are expected to match this trend.
   ii). Any time a station location is changed, the location is compared to adjacent value(s) to see if the station is out of order.
      - If the trend in location from the previous station to this station does not match the expected trend, then give the **Station Order** warning.
      - If the trend in location from this station to the next station does not match the expected trend, then give the **Station Order** warning.
      - Collecting an out-of-order station is allowed. However, when an out-of-order station is entered we verify the location value since the station is sorted into the correct place within the stream.
   iii). Any time a station location is changed, the location is compared to the starting edge location. If the new location is outside the starting edge, a **Location Outside Edge** warning is given.
   iv). **Max Station Change** is checked during station configuration (see Timing of Warning Messages).
      - User is notified of any stations that exceed the Max Station Change criterion.
      - User is prompted to verify the location value or re-enter the location.
c) The expected station spacing is computed from the previous two station locations. If the station spacing from the previous station to this location is more than **Max Spacing Change** percent of the expected station spacing, then give the **Stn Spacing > QC** warning. A warning will be triggered only if the station spacing is too big (there is no warning that it is too small).
d) The station location check is re-run (only for Discharge mode) to ensure the warnings are set with the most current data.
e) **Max Spacing Change** is active only in **Discharge** data collection mode.
f) This criterion can be adjusted or disabled under Discharge Settings.

6.1.10 **Velocity Profile 0.2 \ 0.8**

The **Velocity Profile 0.2 \ 0.8** criterion is intended to identify unusual velocity distribution within the measurement profile.   .

a) For an ideal discharge measurement site, the velocity distribution in the measurement profile should follow 1/6 power-law.

Velocity Profile Evaluate

b) The velocity measurements performed at 0.2 time depth and 0.8 time depth are evaluated against expected velocity profile. If any of the following conditions are true, this indicates an unusual velocity profile, and the user is given the option to add a third velocity measurement at 0.6 time depth.

i). The magnitude of the near-surface velocity (0.2 times depth) is less than the magnitude of the near-bottom velocity (0.8 times depth).

ii). The magnitude of the near-surface velocity (0.2 times depth) is more than two times the magnitude of the near-bottom velocity (0.8 times depth).

iii). The near-surface velocity (0.2 times depth) and near-bottom velocity (0.8 times depth) show flow in the opposite direction.

6.2. Quality Control Warning Messages

6.2.1 **Types of Warning Messages**

Quality Control Warning Message is supplied when measured variable exceeds the expected criteria of each parameter in Quality Control Parameters. The quality control warning messages implemented in the Quality Control process are supplied in Table 6:4. The table layout describing the quality control warning messages consist of the following key components,

a) **Warning**, the warning supplied when the parameter is exceeded,
b) **Reporting**, aspect of the measurement process relate to the quality control warning message,
c) **QC Criteria**, quality control criteria based on SonTek default values or user specified.

Table 6-4 - Quality Control Warning Messages

Warning	Reporting	QC Criteria	Description	Suggested Action
Low SNR	Point Velocity	Low SNR	SNR below 4 dB	• Improve SNR
Approach Low SNR	Point Velocity	Approach Low SNR	SNR between 4db and 7 dB	• Improve SNR
Beam SNRs Not Similar	Point Velocity	SNR Threshold	Difference in SNR for any 2 beams is > **SNR Threshold**.	• Look for underwater obstacles; repeat measurement. • Check probe operation
Large SNR Variation	Point Velocity	SNR Variation	One-second SNR data varies more than expected during a measurement. May indicate underwater interference or a	• Look for underwater obstacles; repeat measurement. • Look for environmental

Warning	Reporting	QC Criteria	Description	Suggested Action
			highly aerated environment.	sources (e.g., aerated water).
SNR Threshold Variation	Point Velocity	SNR Threshold	SNR more than **SNR Threshold** different from previous measurements; major change in measurement conditions.	• Look for underwater obstacles or other changes in river condition. • Repeat measurement
Standard Error > QC	Point Velocity	σV Threshold	**σV** > **σV Threshold**; adjusted based on previous data and measured velocity. May indicate interference or a highly turbulent environment.	• Look for underwater obstacles or a change in conditions. • Consider real turbulence levels in river. • Repeat measurement.
Boundary Interference	Point Velocity	Boundary Interference	**Boundary QC** is **FAIR** or **POOR**. Indicates possible interference from underwater obstacles.	• Consider re-locating probe and repeating test. • Measurement can proceed if results are consistent.
High % Spikes	Point Velocity	Spike Threshold	**Spikes** > **Spike Threshold** percent of samples. May indicate poor measurement conditions.	• Look for underwater obstacles or unusual conditions (e.g., aerated water). • Repeat measurement.
Velocity Angle > QC	Point Velocity	Max Velocity Angle	**Angle** > **Max Velocity Angle**. May only indicate non-ideal measurement environment.	• Consider if measured angle is realistic. • Repeat measurement if needed.
Rod Angle > QC	Point Velocity	Max Wading Rod Angle	**Angle** > **Max Wading Rod Angle**. May indicate non-ideal measurement method.	• Consider if measured angle is realistic. • Repeat measurement if needed.
High Stn % Discharge	Station	Max Station Discharge	**%Q** > **Max Station Discharge**. Station contains a large portion of the total discharge.	• Consider adding more stations.
Water Depth > QC	Station	Max Depth Change	Station depth differs from adjacent stations by more than **Max Depth Change** %. This may indicate data entry problem.	• Verify station depth value. • Re-enter if needed.
Stn Spacing > QC	Station	Max Spacing Change	Spacing between stations has changed by more than **Max Spacing Change** %. This may indicate a data entry problem.	• Verify station location value. • Re-enter if needed.
Station Order	Station	None	Station location out of sequence or outside river edge. This may indicate a data entry problem.	• Verify station location value. • Re-enter if needed.
Location Outside Edge	Station	None	Station location out of sequence or outside river edge. This may indicate a data entry problem.	• Verify station location value. • Re-enter if needed.

Warning	Reporting	QC Criteria	Description	Suggested Action
Fractional Depth > 1	Point Velocity	None	**Fractional Depth < 1.** Verify ratio between measurement depth and total depth and this should not >1	• Verify fractional depth value. • Re-enter if needed.

6.2.2 Timing of Warning Messages

The quality control warning messages are supplied at certain stages of the measurement process for both the Discharge and General Modes. The timing of the quality control warning messages are supplied in Table 6:5. *"D" indicates Discharge mode and "G" indicates General mode.*

Table 6-5 - Timing of Quality Control Warning Messages

Warning Messages	Station Setup	Pre Measurement	Post Measurement	Post Station	Post Section
Low SNR			**D,G**		**D,G**
Approach Low SNR			**D,G**		**D,G**
Beam SNRs Not Similar			**D,G**		**D,G**
Large SNR Variation			**D,G**		**D,G**
SNR Threshold Variation			**D,G**		**D,G**
Standard Error > QC			**D,G**		**D,G**
Boundary Interference		**D,G**			
High % Spikes			**D,G**		**D,G**
Velocity Angle > QC			**D**		**D**
Rod Angle > QC			**D,G**		**D,G**
High Stn % Discharge				**D**	**D**
Water Depth > QC	**D**				**D**
Stn Spacing > QC	**D**				
Station Order	**D**				
Location Outside Edge	**D**				
Fractional Depth > 1		**D,G**			**D,G**

6.3. Beam Check

Beam Check operates by sending a pulse of sound into the water, and then plotting the signal to noise ratio of the return signal versus range for each of the FlowTracker2 receivers. This information can be evaluated to determine the effective measurement range, to look for interference from boundaries/structures, to survey a deployment site, or to observe the quality of the returned signal.

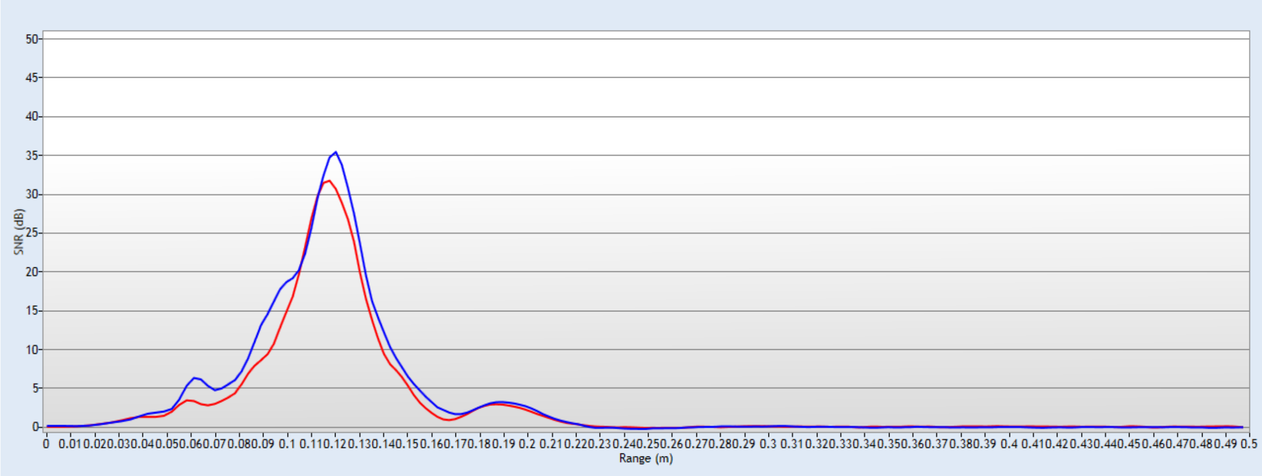


Figure 6:3 - Beam Check

6.3.1 Beam Check Overview

The FlowTracker2 transmits a pulse of sound, it then receives the return signal to noise ratio for each of the 2 (or 3) receivers as a function of time following the transmit pulse. Features in the signal to noise ratio profile verify different aspects of system performance,

a) The horizontal axis indicates the range from the FlowTracker2 probe (in m).
b) The vertical axis is in signal to noise ratio units called SNR (in dB).
c) Ringing from the transmit pulse appears on the left side of the graph.
d) The location of the sampling volume is indicated by increased signal to noise ratio in a bell-shaped curve,
   - i). The sampling volume curve corresponds to the transmit pulse passing through the focal point of the receivers,
   - ii). The peak of this curve corresponds to the center of the sampling volume,
   - iii). The location of the sampling volume varies from probe to probe, but is typically 10-12 cm,
   - iv). All receivers (2 or 3) should see the peak in the same location, although there will be variation in the height and shape of the curve.
e) A sharp spike indicates a boundary reflection (if a boundary is within range),
   - i). If the probe is close to a boundary, a sharp reflection should be seen,
   - ii). The size and shape of this reflection will vary depending on the nature of the boundary, its distance from the FlowTracker2 and the acoustic conditions of the water,
   - iii). We can estimate the distance from the probe to the boundary by the location of the boundary reflection.
f) After the boundary reflection, the signal to noise ratio flattens out in the region where there is no reflected signal from the water,

i). Signal to noise ratio decreases to the electronic noise level past the boundary and is typically about 30-70 counts,

ii). An easy way to measure the instrument noise level is to run Beam Check when the probe is not in the water. In this case, the entire plot should show a constant return at the instrument's noise level.

g) When using Beam Check, it is important to understand that the output plot will vary considerably because of the nature of acoustic scattering,

i). The shape and height of the return signal, particularly the bell curve for the sampling volume, will show considerable variation between updates,

ii). Each of the items described above should be visible (Figure 6:1),

iii). If no sampling volume peak can be seen, try adding some fine dirt or other Seeding material and stirring the water to increase the signal to noise ratio.

iv). If the Beam Check output differs significantly from the sample shown here, refer to Diagnosing Measurements with Beam Check for more details about interpreting this data.

6.3.2 Beam Check Features

- **Sample -** Indicates the number of the transmitted pulse that is currently being displayed on the graph and in the tabular data boxes. If real-time or previously recorded (archived) data is being displayed, only the current sample number is displayed.
- **Sample Averaged -** When **Averaging** has been selected, this box indicates the number of samples that have been averaged together for the currently displayed graph and tabular data.
- **Noise Level -** Shows the electronics noise level for the receiver of each beam. This value is determined by the signal to noise ratio when the instrument is not receiving any return reflections from the water. This value should match the signal to noise ratio for the flat portion of the graph. The noise level is displayed in SNR.
- **Peak Position -** This is the location of the center of the peak for the sampling volume for each of the receivers. The position of the peak should be about the same for each receiver.
- **Peak Level -** This is the height of the peak for the sampling volume for each of the receivers. This will vary depending on the amount of scattering material in the water.
- **Graph Range** (X-axis) - The graph itself shows a plot of the signal to noise ratio for each beam as a function of range following the transmit pulse. The range portion is shown along the graph's X-axis and the value can be shown in centimeters, meters, etc.
- **Graph SNR** (Y-axis) - The graph itself shows a plot of the signal to noise ratio (SNR) for each beam as a function of range following the transmit pulse. The SNR portion is shown along the graph's Y-axis and the value is shown in SNR.

6.3.3 **Beam Check Operation**

Beam Check can be performed in either a small tank, bucket of water or measurement section in canal or river such that the probe is submerged and there is a boundary (surface, side, or bottom) within view.

a) Hold the FlowTracker2 that the boundary is located approximately 20-30 cm (8-12 in) from the probe.
b) User may need to add a small amount of fine dirt or other seeding material and stir the bucket well for good test conditions. Regular tap water usually does not have enough scatterers (seeding) for a valid test.

6.3.4 **Diagnosing Measurements with Beam Check**

Beam Check function can be used to detect measurement conditions and or hardware related issues that can affect the measurement accuracy and precision.

6.3.4.1 Low Scattering Strength

Lack of scattering material in the water normally encountered during measurements at springs or under ice will result in a small or non-existing sampling volume peak (see Figure 6:4). In cases where there is not sufficient backscatter, place a small amount of seeding material in the water to act as scattering material (see Seeding).

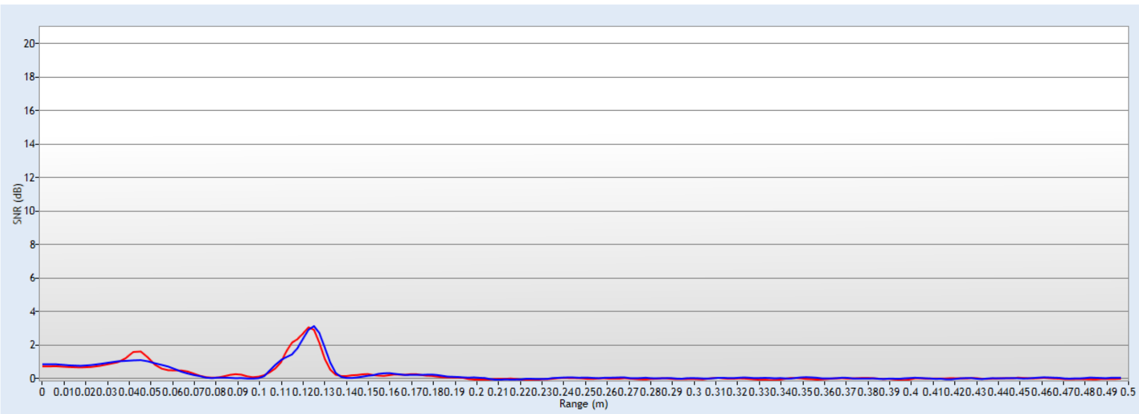


Figure 6:4 - Low Scattering Strength

6.3.4.2 Strong Scattering Strength

Most river systems and or irrigation canals have sufficient scattering material in the water and will result in a well-defined sampling volume peak (see Figure 6:5).

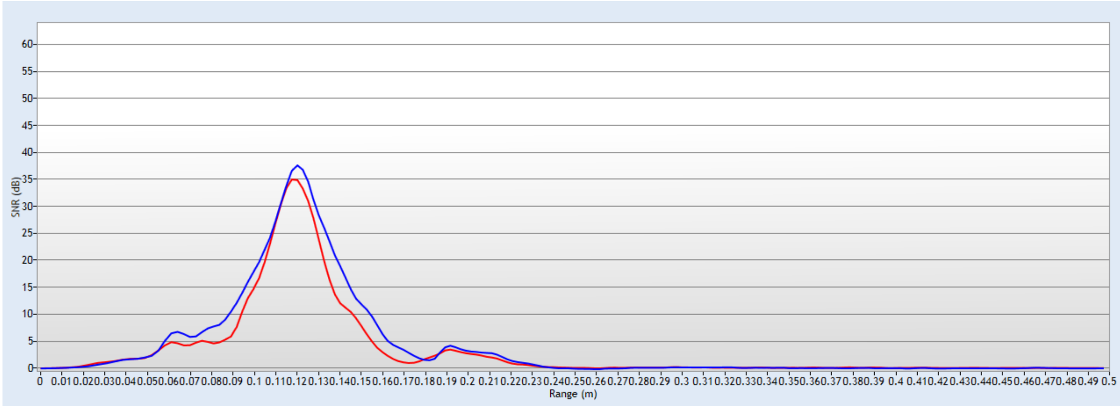


Figure 6:5 - Strong Scattering Strength

6.3.4.3 Boundary Detected within Beam Check

When a boundary is within 50cm from the FlowTracker2 transducer, the boundary will be detected by FlowTracker2 when performing a Beam Check (see Figure 6:6). The boundary was detected about 40cm away from the transducer

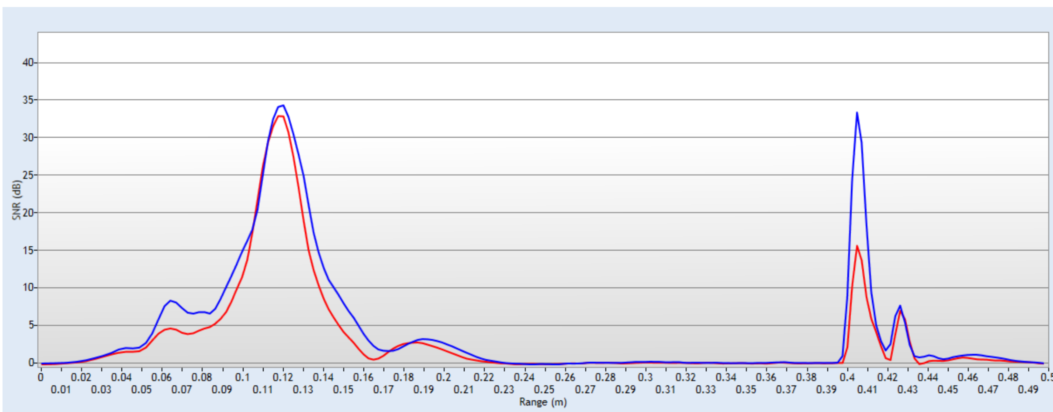


Figure 6:6 - Boundary Detected - 40cm

The Beam Check supplied in Figure 6:7 indicates that boundary was detected at 30cm away from the transducer.

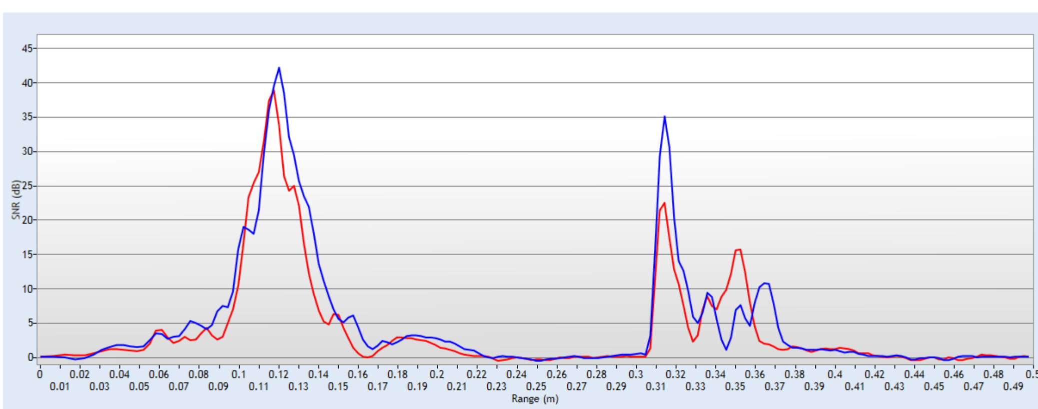


Figure 6:7 - Boundary Detected - 30cm

The Beam Check supplied in Figure 6:8 indicates that boundary was detected at 30cm away from the transducer.

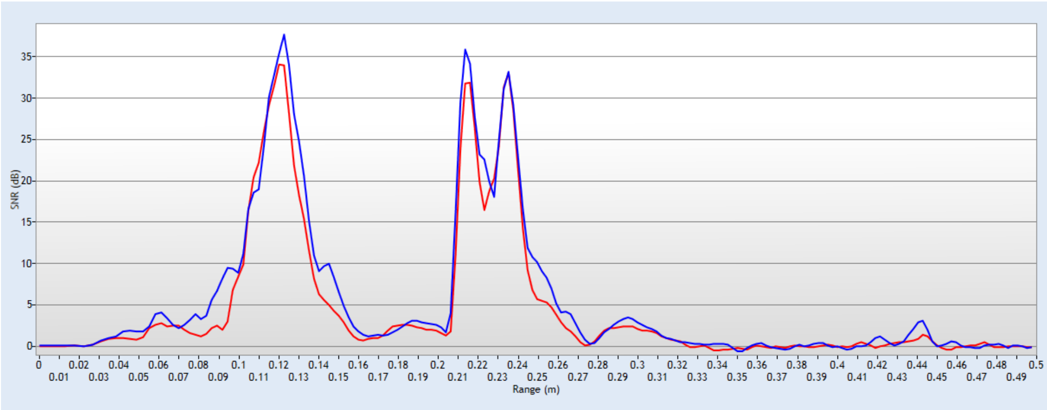


Figure 6:8 - Boundary Detected - 20cm

Boundary that is located within 27cm from the FlowTracker2 transducer can affect the accuracy and precision of velocity measurement. It is recommended when working close to boundaries to determine the location of the boundary in relation to the transducer and sampling volume. This can be achieved by performing a manual Beam Check or Automated Beam Check.

6.3.4.4 Boundary in Sampling Volume

Boundary in Sampling Volume occurs when the boundary is located at the same position from the transducer than the sampling volume. There are number of unique features shown in Figure 6:9 that can be used to identify if boundary is located within the sampling volume.

a) The SNR of the peak located at the sampling volume is two to three times higher than previous measurements performed.
b) Three peaks are displayed in the Beam Check, spaced at equal distances.
c) The SNR of each peak reduces as distance increase form the transducer.

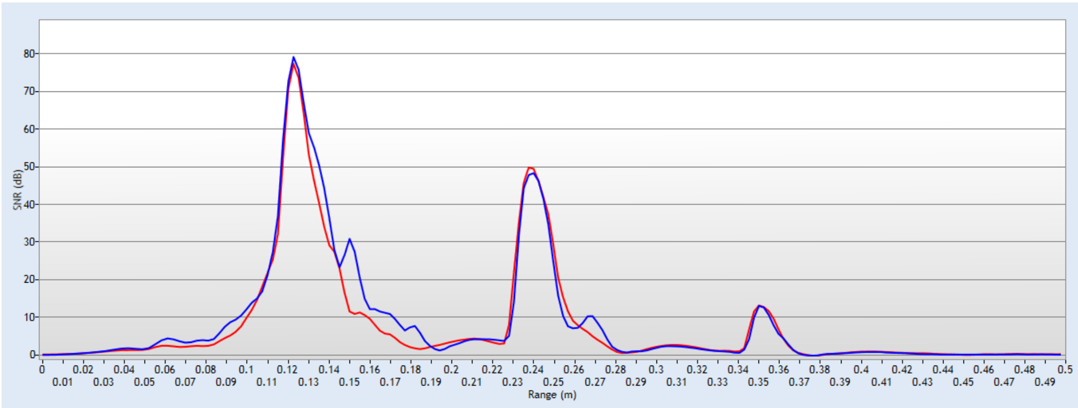


Figure 6:9 - Boundary within Sampling Volume

6.4. Automated Beam Check

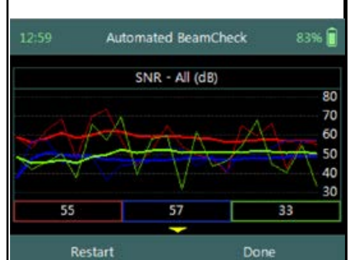
The **Automated Beam Check** function allows the user to perform a Beam Check in the region of the measurement section before data collection starts. The automated beam check perform a number of quality control checks on the data collected to determine if the flow conditions are suitable for discharge measurements. The data that is displayed graphically during the Automated BeamCheck is time series of the Quality Control parameters.

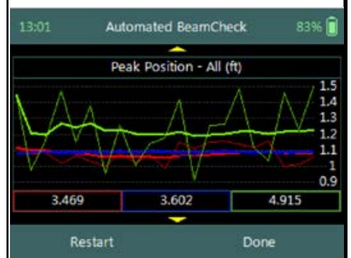
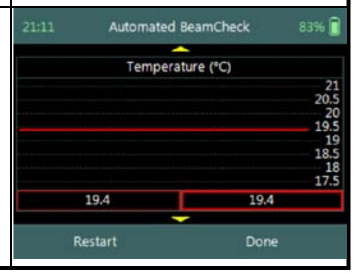
The **Automated BeamCheck** is an automated version of Beam Check function described in 6.3 Beam Check. In the Original FlowTracker, the Automated Beam Check was known as “Auto QC Test”.

a) Place the probe in moving water such that the probe is submerged and well away from any underwater obstacles,
   i). The FlowTracker2 collects data until It has 20 diagnostic samples (not time based),
   ii). The beam data are analyzed on several criteria outlined in Table 6:6.

b) The automated beam check quality control criteria used in the evaluation of the beam check data are listed in Table 6:6,

Table 6-6 - Automated Beam Check Quality Control Criteria

Quality Control	Criteria	QC Warning	Graphic Display
Noise Level	• Measured electronics noise level is compared to reference data. Any significant deviation causes a warning, • A large change in noise level may indicate damage to the probe. • Noise level supplied in Automated BeamCheck is given in Counts. Multiply with 0.43 to convert to dB.	Noise Level > QC	
SNR	• The SNR is checked as sufficient for reliable data collection, • Each beam SNR is compared to be sure all beams perform equally, • A warning is issued for low SNR < 4 dB, • A warning is issued for 4 dB < SNR <7dB, • Beam SNR values differ.	SNR	

Quality Control	Criteria	QC Warning	Graphic Display
Peak Level	• The shape of the sampling volume curve is compared to the expected shape. Any significant deviation causes a warning, • This criterion can only be checked with sufficient SNR (> 7 dB).	Peak Level > QC	
Peak Location	• The physical location of the sampling volume is compared to the expected location. Any significant deviation causes a warning. • This criterion can only be checked for sufficient SNR (> 7 dB).	Peak Location > QC	
Temperature	• No criteria defined for Temperature. • Temperature data included in Automated BeamCheck to allow user to analyze data before measurement.	None	

c) The graphical display of the Quality Control parameters supplied during the Automated BeamCheck is time series of each parameter. If there are any significant variation between the beams, spikes are present in the data or Quality Control warnings are issued we recommend the following steps,

i). Repeat the test at least once, after you verify that the probe and sampling volume are well away from any underwater obstacles.

ii). Perform BeamCheck, described in 6.3 Beam Check to evaluate FlowTracker2 performance in more detail,

d) The display options for individual or all beam check data are listed in Table 6:7. The shortcut key on the keypad determines which beam SNR will be displayed,

Table 6-7 - Automated Beam Check Display

Beam	Line Color	Keypad Key
Beam1	Red	1
Beam2	Blue	2
Beam3	Green	3
All Beams	All	4

*e) To **select** a Quality Control Criteria,*

i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to view quality control criteria.

Section 7. Measurement Process

The **Measurement Process** involved for performing field measurements using a FlowTracker2 instrument consists of number of components. It is important for both the novice and experienced user that each of the components is followed to ensure that the data collected during the measurement process is within acceptable standards and quality. The main components that is the basis of the overall measurement process are the following,

- Office Procedures,
- Measurement Site Information,
- Pre Measurement Diagnostics,
- Measurement Procedure,
- Post Measurement Requirements.

Components within the Measurement Process should not be neglected due to lack of operational experience, time or workload as this will compromise the data quality and accuracy.

7.1. Office Procedures

The **Office Procedures** lists the steps that need to be performed to confirm the condition and operation of the equipment and accessories before departure for field measurements.

The verification of instruments and accessories before leaving the office is normally neglected. It is highly recommended that instrumentation are inspected and tested before each field measurement exercise.

7.1.1 Equipment List

Equipment List is an essential part in the planning and preparation stages of a field measurement exercise. It is recommended that a comprehensive list is designed based on user and or organizational requirements as this will ensure that all equipment is prepared and packed before departing from the office. The equipment required for field measurements are categorized under FlowTracker2 Instrument and user defined measurement gear.

a) The FlowTracker2 Instrument and related accessories is detailed under FlowTracker2 Case section. A reference sheet of the contents is supplied within the FlowTracker2 carry case.
b) The user defined measurement gear is a list of items required in addition to the FlowTracker2 Instrument to perform a field measurement.

c) Recommended measurement equipment list containing FlowTracker2 instrument, measurement gear, safety gear and reference instruments are supplied in Appendix D.

The safety gear listed in Appendix D is only a recommendation. It is imperative that the user follow their respective organization and or local authority guidelines in the use of safety gear during field measurements.

7.1.2 Hardware Inspection

Hardware Inspection can identify any damage to the hardware components that occurred during previous application. It is recommended that the hardware checks listed in Table 7:1 are performed before departure from the office. Any instrument problems experienced as a result of the damage can be resolved by exchanging the hardware components or using a different FlowTracker2 instrument.

The FlowTracker2 probe or handheld can be exchanged with another instrument if required. The software registers the serial number of probe and handheld with each point velocity measurement.

Table 7-1 - Hardware Inspection

Component	Inspection
Handheld	• Inspect the handheld for any external damage to the housing, LCD screen and keypad, • Battery cap and O-ring, • Connectors of battery cartridge, • USB port.
Probe	• Mounting between receiver arms and probe body, • Scratched transducer face, • Dented or bent probe stem.
Probe Cable	• Kinks or dents in probe cable, • Damaged or bent pins on probe cable connector.
Top Setting Rod	• Bent top setting rod, • Bent S bracket or screw.

7.1.3 Office Diagnostic

Office Diagnostic is a basic verification process of the FlowTracker2 to confirm that the instrument is operational before departure from the office. The diagnostic tests consist of the evaluation of a number of functions to verify the internal operations and probe performance of the FlowTracker2.

a) The functions that are evaluated during diagnostic test process are located under the Utilities menu.
b) The diagnostic test process is mainly categorized under Internal Systems, Raw Data and Beam Check functions.

i). Internal System functions comprise of internal clock, recorder, battery and GPS data. These functions can be verified manually by evaluating the information displayed or using external reference if required.

ii). Raw data function includes Velocity, SNR, Temperature, Battery and Tilt data that is graphically displayed. These functions can be verified by manually interpreting the information displayed or against a reference instrument.

The velocity data displayed under Raw Data for the Office Diagnostic tests should be ignored as the data is not based on actual measurements conditions.

iii). Beam Check function is performed to verify the FlowTracker2 probe performance. The procedure for performing a Beam Check must be followed as stipulated in Beam Check Operation.

c) *To verify* the GPS Data functions place the FlowTracker2 handheld outside in an open area with a clear view of the sky. The accuracy of the GPS data is directly related to the number of satellites and HDOP value.

d) *To verify* the Raw Data and Beam Check functions place the FlowTracker2 probe in a bucket of water (see Beam Check Operation).

e) The variables that are evaluated during the diagnostic tests are listed in Table 7:2.

Table 7-2 - Office Diagnostics

Function	Variable	Verification
System Clock	• Date • Time • UTM Offset	• System Clock function show the current internal time of the FlowTracker2 instrument, • Verify if the internal system clock date and time is correctly set and adjust if required.
Recorder	• Memory Available	• The Recorder function indicates the percentage of available memory, • If the available memory is insufficient download all measurement files. Ensure that all measurement files downloaded are stored in a secure area, • Format Recorder or delete Data Files to increase available memory.
Battery Data	• Battery Type • Percentage Full	• Battery Data function display the type of battery, voltage and percentage full, • Make sure the correct battery type is selected.
GPS Data	• Latitude • Longitude • Altitude • Date • Time	• The GPS Data function displays the GPS information from the internal GPS, • Compare GPS data supplied with external reference such as Survey Bench Mark, handheld GPS or mobile device equipped with GPS.
Raw Data Display	• Velocity • SNR • Temperature • Tilt • Battery Indicator	• The Raw Data function display raw data for each variable, • Evaluate each variable data that are graphically displayed or compare against a reference instrument in the case of temperature measurements,
Automated	• Peak Level	• The Automated Beam Check and Beam Check

Function	Variable	Verification
Beam Check	• Peak Position • Peak Location	functions serve two purposes, verifying the probe performance and measurement conditions, • Evaluate the Quality Control reports supplied during the test.
Beam Check		

7.2. Measurement Site Information

Measurement Site Information, commonly referred to as *"Metadata"*, should be documented before any measurements are performed with the FlowTracker2 instrument. In most organizations, FlowTracker2 measurements are related to a measurement site and secondary data sets and it's essential that the information collected is accurate. The measurement site information that should be collected during a field measurement exercise is listed in Table 7:3.

Unique entry fields were developed in the FlowTracker2 software for the measurement site information defined in this section. The dedicated fields ensure that information is captured correctly and assigned to respective variables, which promote good data management practices.

Table 7-3 – Measure Site Information

Variable	Description	Unique Field
Site Number	Site number allocated to measurement site. Most organizations use a unique number system (e.g. associated with catchment).	File Properties
Site Name	Site name allocated for measuring site. Most organizations use a unique naming convention (e.g. combination of river and place name).	File Properties
Operator	Operator that performed the measurement	File Properties
Start Date and Time	Start date and time of measurement.	Internally recorded
End Date and Time	End date and time of measurement.	Internally Recorded
Start Staff Gauge Readings	Staff gauge reading taken before a FlowTracker2 measurement is performed.	Supplemental Data
End Staff Gauge Readings	Staff gauge reading taken after a FlowTracker2 measurement is completed.	Supplemental Data
GPS Position	GPS position of start and end location of measurement	Internally Recorded
Photographs	Photographs of the measurement section, upstream conditions and downstream conditions are essential for identifying possible influences on the field measurements.	None

Organizations that make use of hydrological databases, unique monitoring site identifiers and import routines, would find the Site Number very useful to automatically link the data to a specific monitoring site during the import process.

7.3. Pre Measurement Diagnostics

Pre Measurement Diagnostics is an essential step in the measurement process to ensure accurate and consistent measurement results. The functions evaluated in pre-measurement diagnostics are the same as discussed in *Office Diagnostics*.

a) The functions that are evaluated during diagnostic test process are located under the Utilities menu.
b) The functions that are of key importance during the pre-measurement diagnostic tests are System Clock, Velocity Data, SNR Data and Beam Check functions.
c) It is recommended that Pre Measurement Diagnostics should be performed before each measurement is started.
d) *To verify* the Internal System, Raw Data and Beam Check functions place the FlowTracker2 probe in moving water well away from any underwater obstacles in the region of the measurement section.
e) The variables that are evaluated during the diagnostic tests are listed in Table 7:4.

Table 7-4 - Pre Measurement Diagnostics

Function	Verification
System Clock	• Verify if the internal system clock date and time is correctly set and adjust if required. • All data sets recorded during a FlowTracker2 measurement receive a date and time stamp, • Date and Time is essential Metadata in the processing and application of measurement results.
Recorder	• Verify if the available memory is sufficient for performing a measurement, • Insufficient memory on the recorder could affect the measurement operation and or recording of measurement file.
Battery Data	• Evaluate the battery voltage and capacity based on the battery type selected, • Insufficient power supply could affect the measurement operation.
GPS Data	• Evaluate the GPS information received, with the focus on number of satellites, and HDOP values. This will indicate the level of accuracy of the GPS measurement.
Raw Data Display	• The raw data displayed of all variables is updated once per second. • **Velocity,** data should appear reasonable for the environment (short term variations are expected and are most likely real). • **SNR,** data should ideally be above 10 (units are dB), but measurements can be made as low as 3-4 dB. • **Temperature**, data should reasonable to the environment. Temperature data is used for sound speed calculations and can affect velocity data (see Principle of Operations).
Automated Beam Check	• Place the probe in moving water well away from any underwater obstacles; follow the on screen instructions for the test. Perform Beam Check measurement as described in Beam Check Operation. • **Automated Beam Check**, review of Automated Beam Check results see Automated Beam Check, • **Beam Check**, review of Beam Check results see Beam Check.
Beam Check	

7.4. Measurement Procedure

The basic outline of the **Measurement Procedure** required to perform a Discharge measurement with a FlowTracker2 instrument is supplied in the following section. The measurement procedure is based on wading principles, which is suited for low to medium flow conditions depending on water velocity and depth.

a) Collect and verify Measurement Site Information before discharge measurement commences as stipulated under Measurement Site Information.
b) Select the measurement site based on the criteria stipulated under Site Selection Requirements. Site and flow conditions does change over time and it is recommend that existing measurement site is evaluated during each field measurement exercise.
c) It is recommended for new measurement sites that the user perform spot checks across the section at certain locations to get an estimation of the velocity range, water depth and channel geometry.
d) Perform Pre Measurement Diagnostic tests in the region of the proposed measurement section. Place the probe in moving water well away from any underwater obstacles.
e) A graduated tagline or measuring tape should be spanned across the measurement section to determine the station location. The graduated tagline or measuring tape should be perpendicular to the main flow direction and channel orientation.
f) Staff gauge readings with time should be taken at the start the discharge measurement. If the discharge measurement is over extended period or at a measurement site with rapid changing stage, intermediate readings should be taken.
g) Enter Rated discharge (if applicable) of measurement site to calculate percentage flow of each panel.
h) Divide the measurement section into a minimum of 23 stations (for sections >5m). The number of stations required is dependent on the measurement section width (see ISO 748 – 2007, Hydrometry - Measurement of liquid flow in open channels using current meters or floats for recommendation of number of stations). The flow per panel should not exceed 10% of the total flow, with 5% as the ideal distribution.
i) The water depth at each station is measured using a top setting or universal rod. A staff gauge board can also be used to determine the water depth at the location of the station or sampling volume of the FlowTracker2.
j) The averaging time interval for data collection normally varies between 40 to 60 seconds for velocity measurements depending on flow conditions.

k) Determining Mean Station Velocity method for each station. The software suggests either a six-tenths or two-point method depending on the threshold in 0.6 Method Depth and the measured water depth. The minimum distance between the channel bed and water surface and instrument must be within the instrument specifications.
l) The FlowTracker2 must be perpendicular to the graduated tagline or measuring tape that was setup across the measurement section.

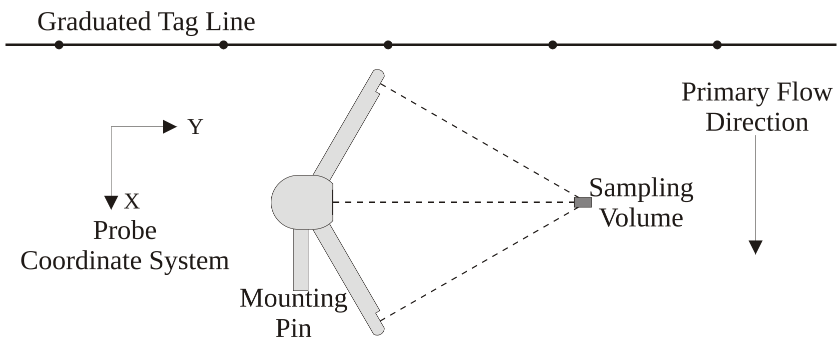


Figure 7:1 - FlowTracker2 Probe Orientation Relative to Stream Flow

m) Keep the FlowTracker2 probe free of plant material at all times as this can impact the velocity measurements significantly.
n) Continuously evaluate the measurement results with measurements performed at previous stations. The variation in measurement results should reflect the flow conditions at the measurement site.
o) Review the instrument configuration during the measurement, especially the quality control parameters and adjust if required.
p) Automated Beam Check can be performed during any stage of the measurement to verify the probe performance and measurement conditions.
q) Comments can be entered at each station or at the end of the discharge measurement to describe the flow conditions or any influences that may impact the measurement quality.
r) Staff gauge reading with time should be taken at the end of the discharge measurement.

7.5. Post Measurement Requirements

Post Measurement Requirements consist of number of tasks that need to be performed when a field measurement is completed. The tasks that form the framework of the post measurement requirements are grouped under the following main categories,

- Review of Measurement Site Information,
- Review Measurement Summary
- Data Management,

- Storage.

7.5.1 Review of Measurement Site Information

Review of Measurement Site Information before departing from the measurement site is important to ensure that all associated Metadata is accurate. It is recommended that the user verify each variable populated during the measurement process with the main focus on the measurement site reference.

It is not good data management practice to leave both measurement site references empty or with abbreviate terms. It is recommended that the user makes use of accurate site descriptions.

7.5.2 Review Measurement Summary

Review Measurement Summary is the evaluation of the measurement results and if the results are expected from the flow conditions present at the measurement site. There are a number of variables that can be evaluated after the measurement is completed and it is recommended that the following process is followed during the evaluation.

The evaluation of measurement results should be performed during the measurement and the review of measurement summary is just an overview of what was already identified during a measurement. It is recommended to repeat a point velocity or station measurement if any of the data collected during a measurement are not consistent with the flow conditions present.

a) Point velocity measurements with regard to mean velocity, standard error and quality control reports correspond within a station measurement and adjacent stations.
b) Station measurements with regard to location, depth, mean velocity and panel discharge correspond to adjacent stations and what is expected from the flow conditions.
c) The total width based on station locations does that correspond with the actual width of the measurement section.
d) The total discharge, area and mean velocity measured is within the expected flow conditions.
e) Review measurement results against historical measurements performed at the measurement site during similar flow conditions and or staff gauge readings (if available).
f) Review total discharge measured against discharge reading from developed Stage - Discharge Relationship (if available). Most organizations use a 5% error band to determine if the measurement results are within the required measurement standards.

database or other data formats to perform this process in the field.

7.5.3 Data Management

Data Management consists of the process involved in managing the information collected during field measurements. The steps required to ensure data continuity and safe keeping after field measurements are completed are the following.

a) Download measurement files after measurements are completed at the measurement site or by the end of the work day using the FlowTracker2 desktop software. The files types created during a measurement are dependent if a measurement and or Beam Check tests were performed. For more information on file types see Table 4:2.
b) Create a secondary backup of the measurement files at the end of each workday by copying the files to an external USB drive. The USB drive should be stored separately from the PC or Tablet.
c) Photographs taken with Camera or Phone during the field measurements should also be downloaded and stored on an external USB drive.

The internal recorder of the FlowTracker2 handheld should not be used as the main storage device for safe keeping of measurement files. It is good data management practice to download the measurement files at least once per day.

7.5.4 Storage

Storage guidelines of FlowTracker2 instrument and accessories are essential to ensure the safe keeping of the instrument during transport or storage at the office. The FlowTracker2 instrument is supplied in a pelican case with foam inserts, designed to house each individual component. The recommend guidelines for packing of instrument in the pelican case are the following,

a) Place each component of the FlowTracker2 and accessories in the designated foam inserts.
b) The probe cable must be disconnected form the handheld before it is placed in the foam inserts.
c) The probe cable should be coiled in such a manner that it fits into the designated insert. Care should be taken that the cable is not kinked or the pelican case lid is pressing on the cable.
d) Battery cartridge should be removed from the handheld by the end of each workday. In the case where the FlowTracker2 instrument is not used, it is recommended that the batteries are removed from the pelican case.

Batteries should not be left in the FlowTracker2 handheld for prolonged periods as damage can occur to the handheld if the batteries are leaking. It is recommended that batteries are removed from the handheld if the instrument is not used.

Section 8. Discharge Measurement

Discharge Measurement is the measurement technique involved in collecting data for discharge calculation based on the Discharge Mode (see Data Collection Modes). The data collection framework for discharge measurement is a well-designed workflow (see Software Flow Diagram) between setting up of measurements parameters, creating a measurement section, the collection of raw data and generating individual station and measurement section reports. The discharge data collection process consists of the following main components, with discussions of each component.

- Create Measurement,
- Automated Beam Check,
- Data Collection,
- Discharge Summary.

8.1. Create Measurement

Creating a new measurement consists of a number of steps before the data collection can be performed. The first step involved is to either select an existing Configuration Template or create a new template with user defined configuration parameters. The template then needs to be associated with a measurement file that is created by the user. When the measurement file is created, the software is ready for data collection.

8.1.1 Measurement

The **Measurement** function enables the user to create a new measurement in either Discharge or General mode. The Discharge mode used for the collection of discharge data during field measurements will be focused on in this section.

a) The Measurement function can be accessed from the Main Menu on the bottom banner,

*b) To **select** the Measurement function,*
i). Press the Right Soft Key.

c) *The software will Navigate to the New File Type or Mode screen.*

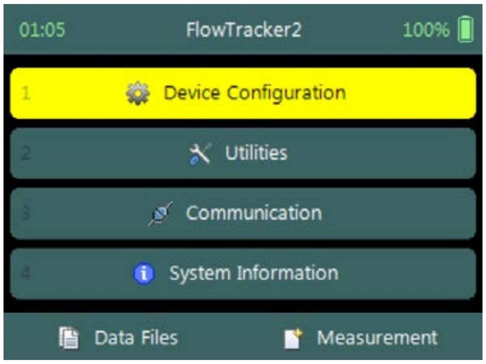


Figure 8:1 - Main Menu

8.1.2 New File Type

The **New File Type** function enables the user to determine if the new measurement file should be based on either Discharge or General mode.

The **New File Type** screen consists of the following options,

a) Discharge,

b) General,

c) *To **select** discharge mode,*

i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select Discharge and press enter key.

d) *The software will Navigate to the New File Template screen.*

e) *To **navigate** to Home menu,*

i). Press the Left Soft Key.

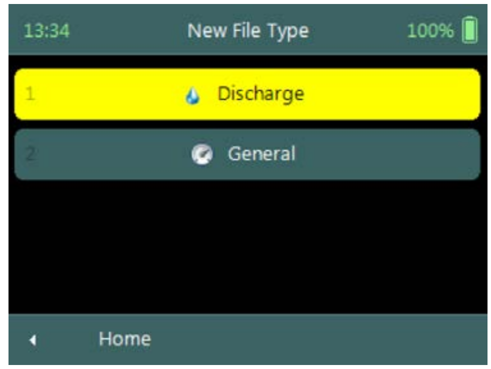


Figure 8:2 - New File Type

8.1.3 New File Template

New File Template function enables the user to create a new configuration template based on SonTek default settings or select an existing Configuration Template created by the user. The configuration template is based on user defined parameters that are dependent on measurement site details, flow conditions and organizational requirements. The configuration template selected will be assigned to the measurement file and the parameters defined in the template will be applied during the Discharge measurement.

The **New File Template** screen consists of the following options,

a) **(default)**, the template will be based on SonTek default settings.

b) Configuration Templates, created under "Device Configuration". A list of available templates created by the user will be displayed under the "(default)" option.

c) *To **select** a template,*

i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select template and press enter key.

d) *The software will navigate to the New Data File screen.*

e) *To **navigate** to File Type menu,*

i). Press the Left Soft Key.

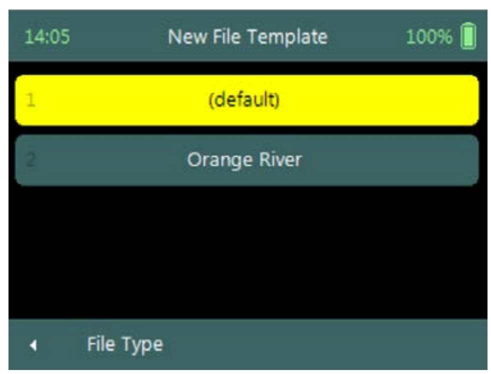


Figure 8:3 - New File Template

8.1.4 New Data File

New Data File function enables the user to populate the measurement site and operator details. The information entered for each parameter should be accurate as this information is recorded in each measurement file and used in both the File Naming and Folder Naming conventions.

- Existing templates created under "Device Configuration", parameters will be prepopulated from File Properties information that was captured,
- Templates based on SonTek default configuration will have no information populated and the user will need to enter the required details for each parameter.

It is not good data management practice for both measurement site references to be empty or with abbreviate terms. It is recommended that the user makes use of accurate site descriptions.

The **New Data File** screen consists of the following parameters,

a) Site Number,
b) Site Name,
c) Operator,
d) Comment.

*e) To **select** a parameter,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select a parameter.

*f) To **accept** the new data file configuration,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key,
   ii). The software will navigate to Automated Beam Check screen.

*g) To **CANCEL** new data file configuration,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key,
   ii). The software will return to New File Template.

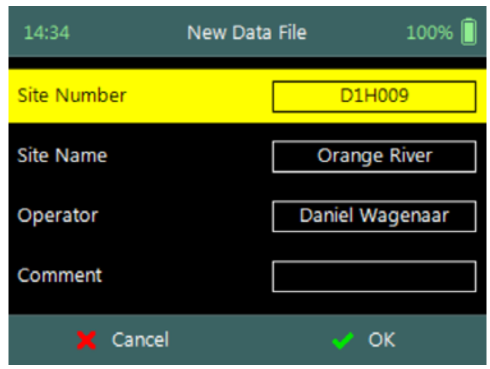


Figure 8:4 - New Data File

8.2. Automated Beam Check

Duplicate of 6.4 Automated Beam Check

The **Automated Beam Check** function allows the user to perform a Beam Check in the region of the measurement section before data collection starts. The automated beam check perform a number of quality control checks on the data collected to determine if the flow conditions are suitable for discharge measurements. The data that is displayed graphically during the Automated BeamCheck is time series of the Quality Control parameters.

Automated BeamCheck is an automated version of Beam Check function described in 6.3 Beam Check. In the Original FlowTracker, the Automated Beam Check was known as "Auto QC Test".

Automated Beam Check can be performed during any stage of the data collection process. The Automated Beam Check functions are available before data collection start and during velocity measurement from the “Data Collection Menu” (see Data Collection Screen).

8.2.1 Start Automated Beam Check

The FlowTracker2 probe should be placed in the region of the measurement section in moving water such that the probe is submerged and well away from any underwater obstacles. The FlowTracker2 collects data for about 20 seconds.

The **Automated Beam check** screen shows the steps involved in performing an automated beam check.

a) *To **start** the automated beam check,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

b) *To **CANCEL** automated beam check,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key,
   ii). The software will navigate to Data Collection window.

c) *To **accept** Automated Beam Check,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key,
   ii). The software will navigate to the Data Collection window.

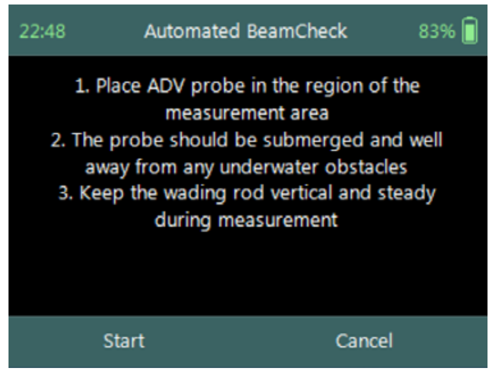
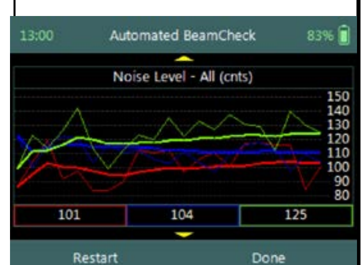


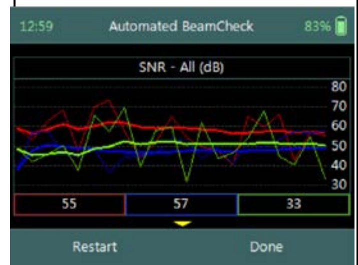
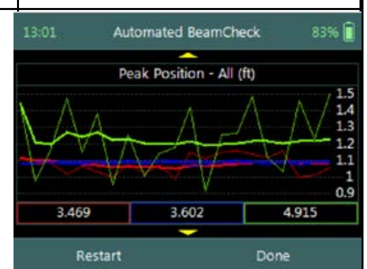
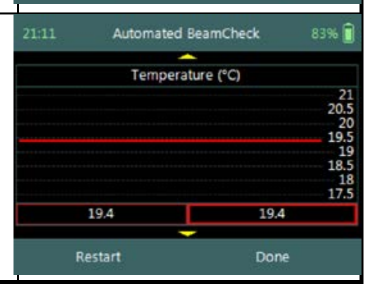
Figure 8:5 - Automated Beam Check

8.2.2 Evaluate Beam Check Results

The automated beam check quality control criteria used in the evaluation of the beam check data are listed in Table 8:1,

Table 8-1 - Automated Beam Check Quality Control Criteria

Quality Control	Criteria	QC Warning	Graphic Display
Noise Level	• Measured electronics noise level is compared to reference data. Any significant deviation causes a warning, • A large change in noise level may indicate damage to the probe. • Noise level supplied in Automated BeamCheck is given in Counts. Multiply with 0.43 to convert to dB.	Noise Level > QC	

Quality Control	Criteria	QC Warning	Graphic Display
SNR	• The SNR is checked as sufficient for reliable data collection, • Each beam SNR is compared to be sure all beams perform equally, • A warning is issued for low SNR < 4 dB, • A warning is issued for 4 dB < SNR <7dB, • Beam SNR values differ.	SNR	
Peak Level	• The shape of the sampling volume curve is compared to the expected shape. Any significant deviation causes a warning, • This criterion can only be checked with sufficient SNR (> 7 dB).	Peak Level > QC	
Peak Location	• The physical location of the sampling volume is compared to the expected location. Any significant deviation causes a warning. • This criterion can only be checked for sufficient SNR (> 7 dB).	Peak Location > QC	
Temperature	• No criteria defined for Temperature. • Temperature data included in Automated BeamCheck to allow user to analyze data before measurement.	None	

a) The graphical display of the Quality Control parameters supplied during the Automated BeamCheck is time series of each parameter. If there are any significant variation between the beams, spikes are present in the data or Quality Control warnings are issued we recommend the following steps,

i). Repeat the test at least once, after you verify that the probe and sampling volume are well away from any underwater obstacles.

ii). Perform BeamCheck, described in 6.3 Beam Check to evaluate FlowTracker2 performance in more detail,

b) The display options for individual or all beam check data are listed in Table 8:2. The shortcut key on the keypad determines which beam SNR will be displayed,

Table 8-2 - Automated Beam Check Display

Beam	Line Color	Keypad Key
Beam1	Red	1
Beam2	Blue	2
Beam3	Green	3
All Beams	All	4

c) *To **select** a Quality Control Criteria,*

i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to view quality control criteria.

8.3. Data Collection

Data Collection function for Discharge mode is the process involved in collecting data during a discharge measurement. The data collection process is a systematic workflow designed to follow the actual measurement process in the field. The process consist of the following main components that also describes each individual aspect of the field measurement,

- Data Collection Window,
- Station Types,
- Station Measurement,
- Data Collection Menu.

8.3.1 Data Collection Window

The **Data Collection Window** can be defined as the "*control center*" of the data collection process during a discharge measurement. All the software functions required to perform a discharge measurement is available from the data collection screen. The key features of the data collection window are explained in Figure 8:6.

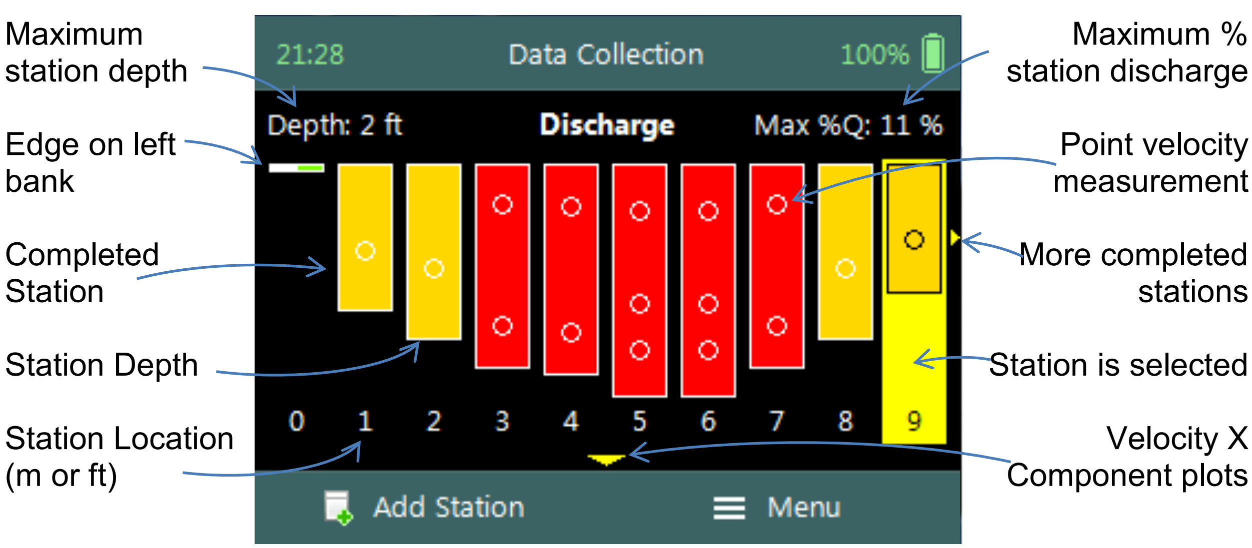


Figure 8:6 - Data Collection Window

The operations and functions available of the Data Collection Window will be discussed throughout this section with the main functions described in Figure 8:7.

Data Collection Window screen of the consists of the following,

a) Station Management area defined in rectangle,
b) Add Station,
c) Data Collection Menu *(Menu).*

*d) To **add** a station,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

*e) To **select** the data collection **menu**,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key,
   ii). The software will display a popup menu screen.

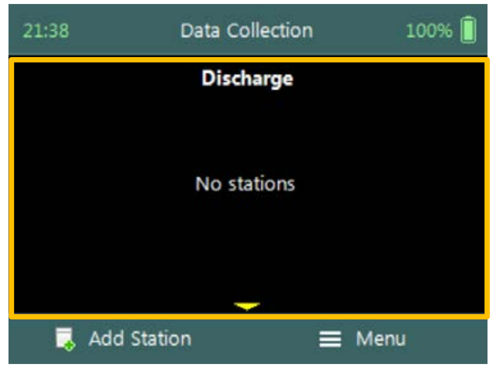


Figure 8:7 - Functions Data Collection Window

8.3.1.1 Add Station

The **Add Station** function allows the user to add a station to the measurement section based on the station types defined for Discharge Measurement technique. The parameters required for creating a station is defined by the station type as discussed under Station Types. There are several common parameters that are applicable to all station types of which are listed below.

Add Station screen consist of the following common parameters that are required for all station types,

a) Location,
b) Depth,
c) Station Type,
d) Correction Factor,
e) Comment.

The standard **functions** available for each station type are,

f) Add Gauge Height,
g) Record GPS Location (function availability, see GPS Station Tagging).

*h) To **add** a station or start velocity measurement,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

*i) To **CANCEL** add station,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

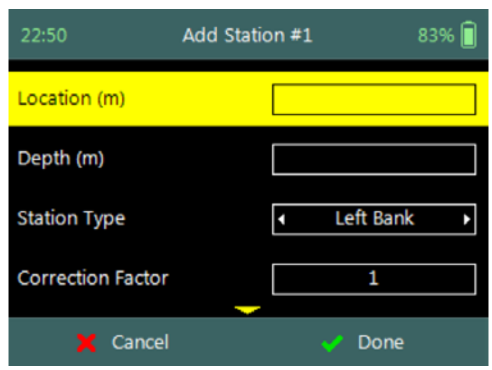


Figure 8:8 - Add Station

8.3.1.2 Delete Station

Deleting a station is performed from the **Data Collection Window** by selecting the station within the viewable window.

The station delete process is not reversible and the user must ensure that the correct station is selected. Selected station will be highlighted with a yellow background.

Delete Station is performed from the **Data Collection Window**. Up to ten completed stations will be displayed at any time,

a) *To **select** a station,*
   i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the completed stations,

b) *To **DELETE** a station,*
   i). Press the backspace key.
   ii). The software will navigate to the Confirmation screen.

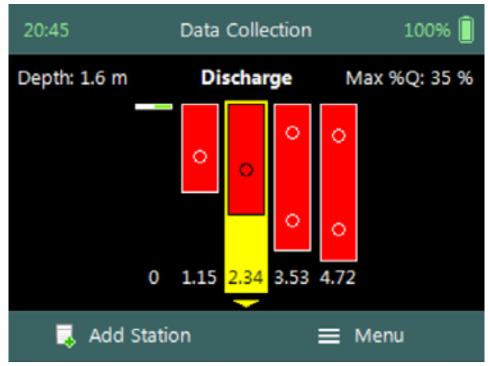


Figure 8:9 - Select Station

Confirmation screen requests confirmation of deleting the selected station by the FlowTracker2 handheld software.

a) *To **confirm** station delete,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key,

b) *To **CANCEL** station delete,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key,

c) *The software will navigate to the Data Collection Window.*

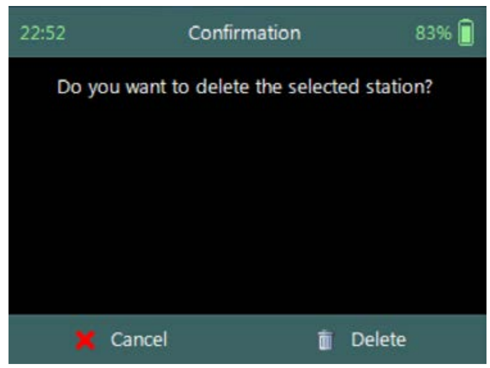


Figure 8:10 - Confirm Delete

8.3.1.3 Edit Station

Editing the station parameters can be performed from the **Data Collection Window** by selecting the station within the viewable window. The station editing process allows the user to change all the parameters original configured when the station was created from the "Add Station" screen.

Editing should not be performed on the **Velocity Method** after extended time has passed since the initial point velocity measurements were performed. The flow conditions could change during the lapsed time and additional point velocity measurements will not be representative. It's recommended that all the station measurements be repeated if additional measurements are required.

Step 1

Open Station is performed from the **Data Collection Window**. Up to ten completed stations will be displayed at any time,

a) *To **select** a station,*
   i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the completed stations,

b) *To **open** a station,*
   i). Press the enter key.

c) *The software will navigate to the Review Station screen.*

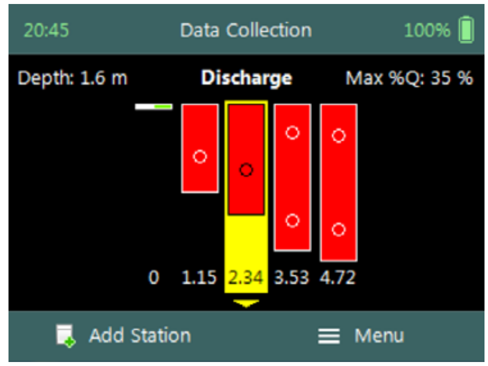


Figure 8:11 - Open Station

Step 2

Review Station screen display summary of the selected station. The review station allows the user to review the measurement results before editing is performed.

a) *To **EDIT** station,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

b) *To **close** review station or **CANCEL** edit station,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

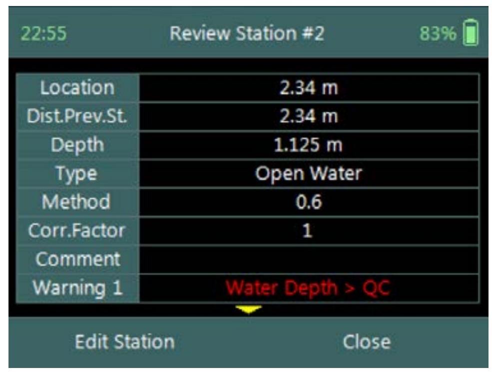


Figure 8:12 - Review Station

Step 3

Edit Station screen allows the user to change parameters during the original configuration. The *"Edit Station"* screen is similar to the *"Add Station"* screen.

a) *To **confirm** edit station,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

b) *To **CANCEL** edit station,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

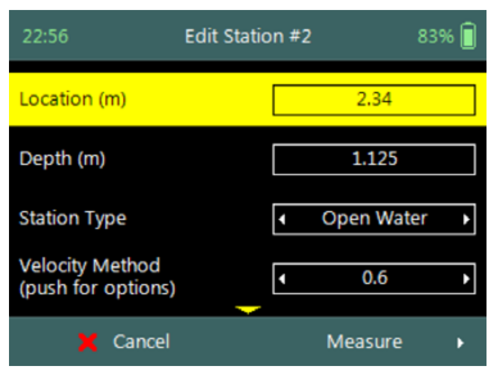


Figure 8:13 - Edit Station

Step 4

Confirmation screen request confirmation of discarding all incompatible point velocity measurements by the FlowTracker2 handheld software.

a) *To **confirm** discarding incompatible point velocity measurements,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

b) *The software will navigate to the Data Collection*

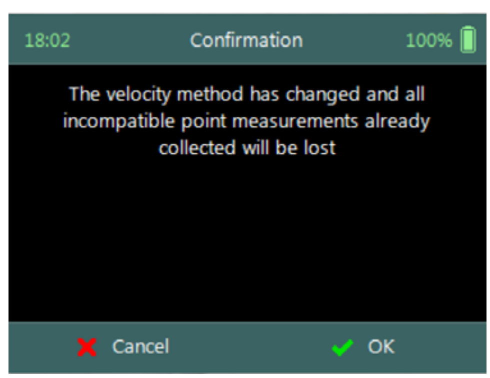


Figure 8:14 - Confirmation

Window.

c) *To* ***CANCEL*** *incompatible point velocity measurements delete,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

When changes are made to the Velocity Method and Station Type, existing point velocity measurements will be lost if the velocity method is incompatible with the proposed selection.

Some scenarios of velocity measurements that could be affected if changes are made to the Velocity Method and or Station Type are listed in Table 8:3.

Table 8-3 - Incompatible Velocity Methods and Station Types

Parameter	Configuration		Compatibility Result
	Initial	Proposed	
Velocity Method	0.6	0.2 / 0.8	0.6 Measurement will be discarded. The 0.2 / 0.8 measurements must be performed.
Velocity Method	0.6	0.2 / 0.6 / 0.8	0.6 Measurement will remain. The 0.2 / 0.8 measurements must be performed.
Velocity Method	0.2 / 0.8	0.6	0.2 / 0.8 Measurements will be discarded. The 0.6 measurement must be performed.
Station Type	Open water	Edge	All velocity measurements will be discarded. Edge station type is assigned a “none” velocity method.

The deleting of incompatible point velocity measurements is not reversible and the user must be certain of the decision in changing the Velocity Method and or Station Type.

8.3.2 Station Types

The **Station Types** developed for the Discharge Measurement technique provide practical solutions for the different measurement scenarios that exists during field measurements. There are several common parameters that are applicable to all station types. There are also specific parameters, unique to each station type, that will be discussed in this is section. The station types implemented for the discharge measurement are the following,

- Bank (left or right),
- Island Edge,
- Open Water,
- Ice.

8.3.2.1 Bank (left or right)

The **Bank** station type is used to create a station for both the left and right banks. The one noticeable difference between the Bank station type and other station types is the fact that no velocity measurement is performed. The Discharge Calculation Methods implements a zero velocity on the bank when the depth is zero or against a boundary in the case of vertical bank based on hydraulic principles.

Bank station type parameters available on the **Add Station** screen consists of the following,

a) Location,
b) Depth,
c) Station Type,
d) Correction Factor,
e) Comment.

f) To select a station type,
   i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the station types,

*g) To **add** bank station,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

*h) To **CANCEL** add bank station,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

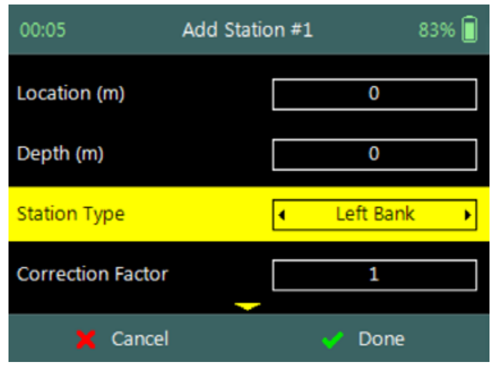


Figure 8:15 - Bank Station Type

Properties associated with the parameters for bank station type are defined in Table 8:4,

Table 8-4 - Bank Station Type - Properties

Parameter	Min	Max	Default	Decimals	Units	Required
Location	-1000	1000	empty	3	m or ft	Yes
Depth	0	100	empty	3	m or ft	Yes
Station Type			Left Bank			Yes
Correction Factor	-1	1	empty	2		Yes
Comment	0	250	empty			No

The Left Bank will always be displayed on the left side of the Data Collection Window independent on which bank the measurement was started. If the measurement was started on the left bank the data collection window will be populated from the left, if the measurement was started on the right bank, the window will be populated from the right.

8.3.2.2 Island Edge

The **Island Edge** station type is used to create a station for Island Edges. Similar to Bank station types, the one noticeable difference between Island Edge station type and other station types is the fact that no velocity measurement is performed. The Discharge

Calculation Methods assumes that the velocity on the bank is zero when the depth is zero or against a boundary in the case of vertical bank.

Island Edge station type parameters available on the **Add Station** screen consists of the following,

a) Location,
b) Depth,
c) Station Type,
d) Correction Factor,
e) Comment.

f) To ***select*** *a station type,*
   i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the station types,

g) To ***add*** *island edge station,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

h) To ***CANCEL*** *add island station,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

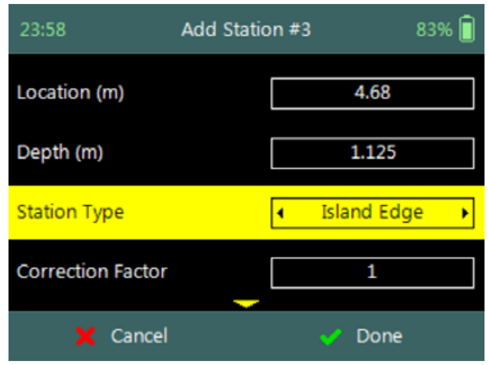


Figure 8:16 - Island Edge Station Type

Properties associated with the parameters for island edge station type are defined in Table 8:5,

Table 8-5 - Island Edge Station Type - Properties

Parameter	Min	Max	Default	Decimals	Units	Required
Location	-1000	1000	empty	3	m or ft	Yes
Depth	0	100	empty	3	m or ft	Yes
Station Type			Island Edge			Yes
Correction Factor	-1	1	empty	2		Yes
Comment	0	250	empty			No

The Island Edge station type is normally selected after “Open Water” or “Ice” station types. The station type after the first Island Edge is completed will be set to “Island Edge” by default. The station type after the second Island Edge is completed will be set to “Open Water” by default.

8.3.2.3 Open Water

The **Open Water** station type is used to create a station for open water conditions, performing velocity measurements within a vertical at a station. Open Water is the main station type that will be used during most discharge measurements and the number of stations required is 23 stations for measurement sections wider than 5m.

The number of stations recommended based on measurement section width are available in the following literature,

- ISO 748 – 2007, Hydrometry - Measurement of liquid flow in open channels using

current meters or floats,
- WMO-No. 1044, Volume I – Fieldwork, 2010.

Open Water station type parameters available on the **Add Station** screen consists of the following,

a) Location,
b) Depth,
c) Station Type,
d) Velocity Method,
e) Correction Factor,
f) Comment.

g) *To **select** a station type and or velocity method,*
   i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the station types and or velocity methods,

h) *To **add** open water station and continue to velocity measurement,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

i) *To **CANCEL** add open water station,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

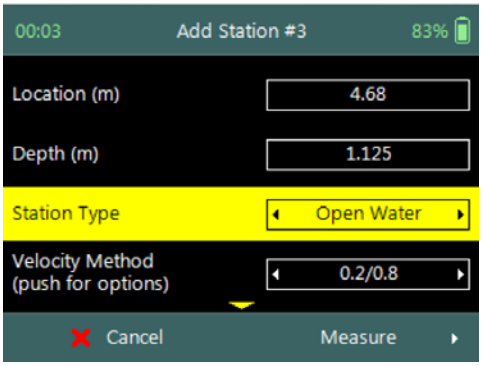


Figure 8:17 - Open Water Station Type

Properties associated with the parameters for open water station type are defined in Table 8:6,

Table 8-6 - Open Water Station Type - Properties

Parameter	Min	Max	Default	Decimals	Units	Required
Location	-1000	1000	empty	3	m or ft	Yes
Depth	0	100	empty	3	m or ft	Yes
Station Type			Open Water			Yes
Velocity Method						Yes
Correction Factor	-1	1	1	2		Yes
Comment	0	250	empty			No

The default velocity method selection is performed on two methods, the Six-Tenths and Two-Point methods. The default method selection is based on water depth with the following criteria,

- Six-Tenths method for water depths below user specified depth,
- Two-Point method for water depths above user specified depth.

The default velocity method is only recommendation and the user can change the method based on their requirements.

8.3.2.4 Ice

The **Ice** station type is used to create a station for under ice conditions, performing velocity measurements within a vertical at a station. Ice station type is used for discharge measurements where an ice layer covers the water surface. The Ice station type has specific parameters for incorporating parameters associated with the ice layer.

Ice station type parameters available on the **Add Station** screen consists of the following,

a) Location,
b) Depth,
c) Station Type,
d) Velocity Method,
e) Ice Thickness,
f) Water Surface to Bottom of Ice,
g) Water Surface to Bottom of Slush
h) Correction Factor,
i) Comment.

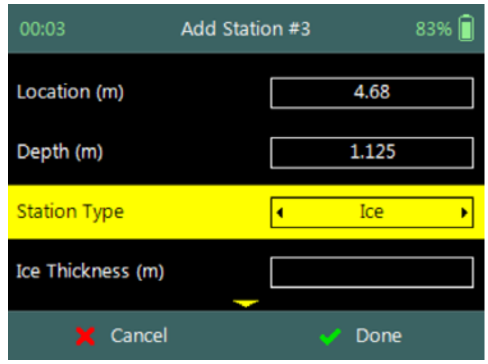


Figure 8:18 - Ice Station Type

*j) To **select** a station type and or velocity method,*
   i). Use the left or right arrow key to scroll through the station types and or velocity methods,

*k) To **add** ice station and continue to velocity measurement,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

*l) To **CANCEL** add ice station,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

Properties associated with the parameters for ice station type are defined in Table 8:7,

Table 8-7 - Ice Station Type - Properties

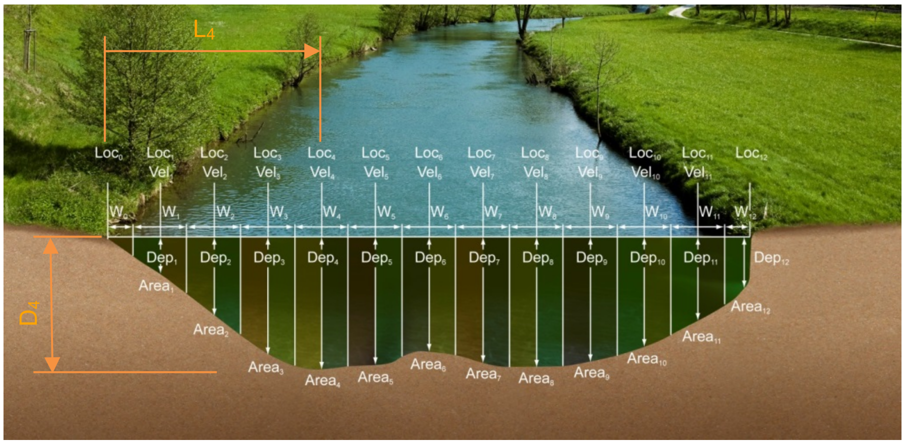
Parameter	Min	Max	Default	Decimals	Units	Required
Location	-1000	1000	empty	3	m or ft	Yes
Depth	0	100	empty	3	m or ft	Yes
Station Type			Ice			Yes
Velocity Method						Yes
Ice Thickness	0	100	empty	3	m or ft	Yes
Water Surface to Bottom of Ice	0	100	empty	3	m or ft	Yes
Water Surface to Bottom of Slush	0	100	empty	3	m or ft	No
Correction Factor	-1	1	0.88	2		Yes
Comment	0	250	empty			No

8.3.3 **Station Measurement (Wading Rod)**

Station Measurement is performed at each station that was created from the subdivision of the measurements section into number of stations. The station measurement consists of collecting a number of different parameters and variables required for the Discharge Calculation Methods. Each station is unique with respect to the selection of the location, width between adjacent stations, velocity method, averaging interval used for velocity measurements and quality control parameters.

8.3.3.1 Station Parameters

The **Station Parameters** that need to be determined before a decision is made on what velocity method will be used are the station location with respect to the starting point on the tag line or measuring tape and the total water depth.



L_4, is the distance from the start location on the tag line or measuring tape.

D_4, is the water depth measured from the water surface to the channel bed.

Figure 8:19 - Station Parameters

The value of the start location on the tagline or measuring tape is not required to be zero (0.000m). The station location can also be entered in negative direction, with the start location at a larger value (e.g. 7.956m) and the end location at a smaller value (e.g. 0.532m). This feature assist when a measurement is performed from the left bank to the right bank and then back using the same tag line setup.

Start location of measurement at 0.532m

0.532 1.23 2.23 3.23 3.23 4.23 5.23 6.23 7.23 7.956

Start location of measurement at 7.956m

8.3.3.2 Point Velocity Measurement

The **Velocity Method** (see Determining Mean Station Velocity) selected for a station is based on the water depth, hydraulic conditions and the flow distribution within the measurement section.

- The number of point velocity measurements required within a vertical is dependent on the type of velocity method selected.

- The point velocity measurements are performed at a defined fractional depth based on the velocity method selected.

Step 1

Station parameters defined for **Velocity Measurement,** e.g., parameters of station 2m defined for velocity measurements are the following,

a) Station location: 2m,
b) Water Depth: 1m,
c) Station Type: “Open Water”,
d) Velocity Method: Two Point.

e) To ***add*** *open water station and continue to velocity measurement,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

f) To ***CANCEL*** *a new station,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

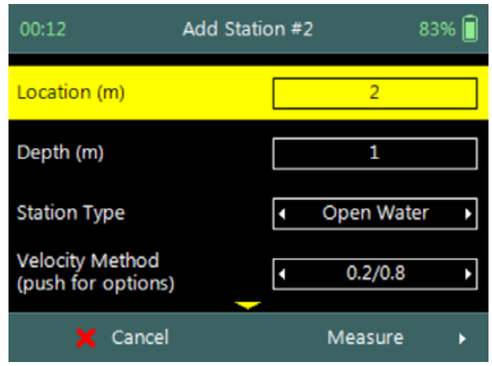


Figure 8:20 - Velocity Measurement

Step 2

Measurement screen display the point velocity measurements required at each fractional depth, e.g., the fractional depths for the two point method at station 2m with a water depth of 1m are the following,

- 0.2 x water depth, 0.2m
- 0.8 x water depth, 0.8m

a) To ***select*** *a fractional measurement depth,*
   i). Use the up or down arrow key to scroll through the measurement options,

b) To ***continue*** *to velocity measurement,*
   i). Press the enter key.

c) To ***open*** *data collection menu,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

d) To ***REVERT*** *to add station screen,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

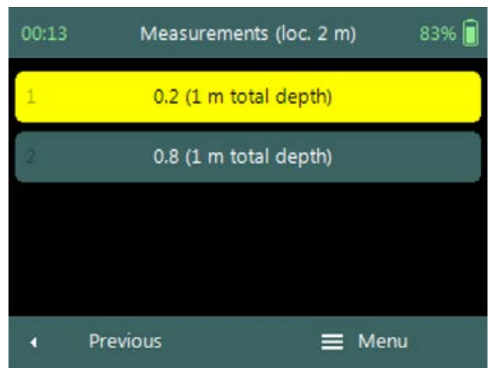
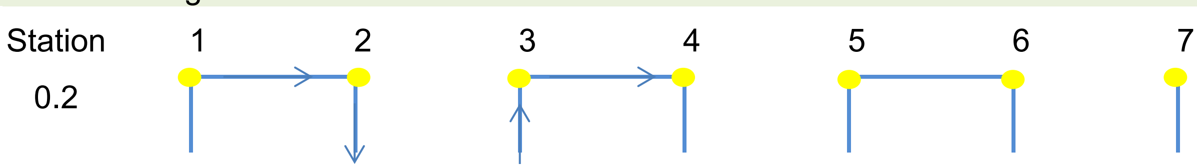
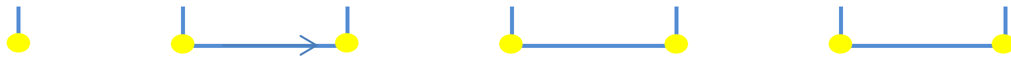


Figure 8:21 - Measurements

The order in how the point velocity measurements are performed at each fractional depth is not set and the user can perform the measurements in any order. The software highlights the same fractional depth that was measured at the previous station. This method reduces the number of key strokes and unnecessary adjustments on the wading rod.



0.8 

Selecting the same fractional depth that was measured at the previous station improves the overall efficiency of the measurement. The example that is shown above shows a measurement where two-point method is performed at each station, keeping the order of measurements synced between stations improves the workflow.

Step 3

Setting Fractional Depth screen allow the setting and placement of the wading rod before velocity measurement is started,

a) Wading rod setting,
b) Beam Check,
c) SNR,
d) Tilt,
e) Velocity angle.
f) *To **start** a velocity measurement,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.
g) *To **REVERT** to measurement screen,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

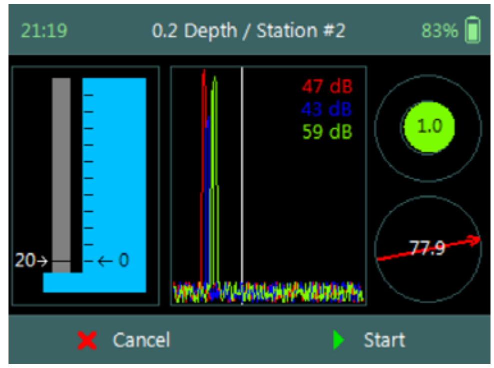


Figure 8:22 - Setting Fractional Depth

The key features of the **Setting Fractional Depth** are explained in Figure 8:23.

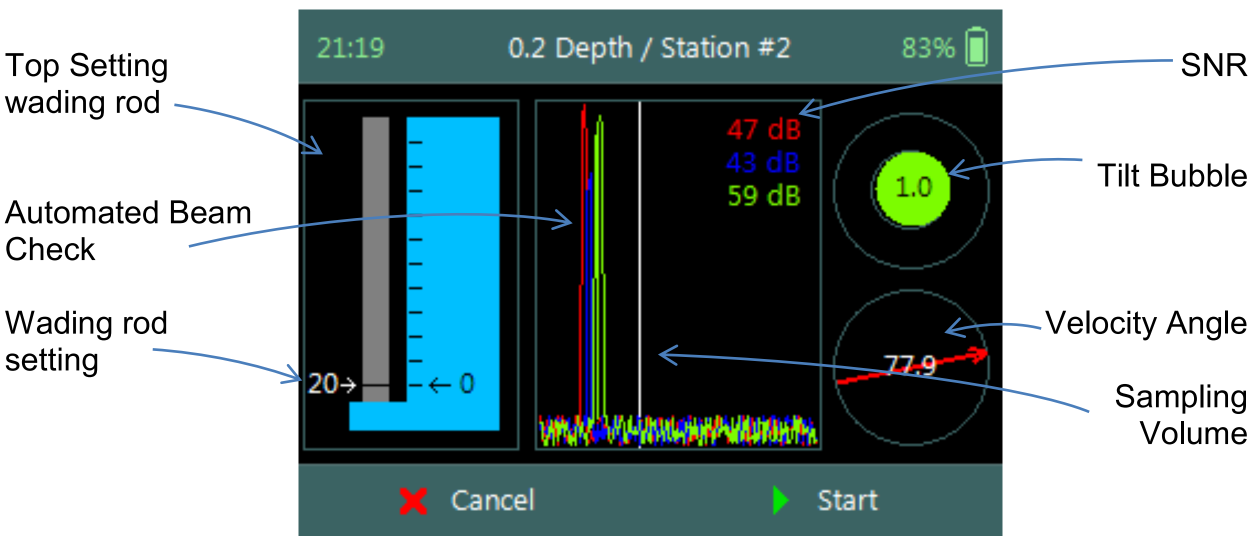


Figure 8:23 - Features of Setting Fractional Depth

The Sampling Volume of the instrument is defined by the white vertical line displayed on the Beam Profile plot in Figure 8:23. The location of the line is fixed and is based on the geometry of the beams. This is an excellent guide to indicate if the boundary is too close to the sampling volume.

Step 4

Fractional Depth Measurement screen displays graphical display of raw data of the following variables during a velocity measurement,

a) Velocity,
b) SNR,
c) Temperature,
d) Tilt,
e) Vel. Angle,
f) Battery.

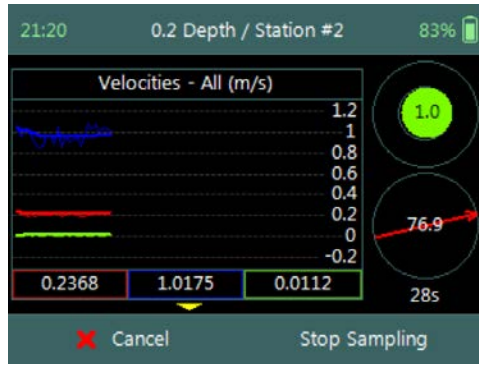


Figure 8:24 - Fractional Depth Measurement

Tilt and Velocity Angle indicators are situated on the right hand side of the screen.

g) Tilt,
h) Velocity Angle,
i) Averaging Time left.

*j) To **select** a variable graphical display,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to view a variable.

*k) To **stop sampling**,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

*l) To **CANCEL** velocity measurement,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

The conventions and graphic display features used for displaying Velocity and SNR raw data are defined under Raw Data Display.

8.3.3.3 Review Point Measurement

Review Point Measurement is a report supplied at the end of each point velocity measurement. The report consists of two components, tabular summary of numerical calculations performed on the raw data collected and graphical display of raw data.

Review Point Measurement screen consists of the following tabular summary and graphical displays,

Tabular Display

a) Review Point Measurement, Table 8:8

Graphical Display of raw data are based on the following variables,

b) Velocity,
c) SNR,
d) Temperature,
e) Tilt,
f) Velocity Angle,

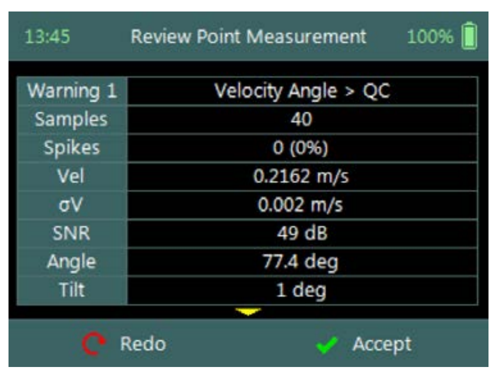


Figure 8:25 - Review Point Measurement

g) Battery.

h) *To **select** a variable,*

   i). Use the up or down arrow key to view a variable.

i) *To **accept** the velocity measurement,*

   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

j) *To **REDO** velocity measurement,*

   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

The conventions and graphic display features used for displaying Velocity and SNR raw data are defined under Raw Data Display.

Properties associated with the variable output from the numerical calculations performed on raw data collected is defined in Table 8:8,

Table 8-8 - Review Point Measurement

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Samples	Total number of samples received.	number	n/a
Spikes	Number of spikes removed from mean velocity.	number	n/a
Vel	Mean X velocity component of all samples. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction applied (if applicable).	m/s or ft/s	4
σV	Standard error of X velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
SNR	Mean signal to noise ratio. Average of beam 1 and 2 SNR during point measurement.	dB	3
Angle	Flow angle relative to X direction. Angle between the mean X velocity component and mean Y velocity component.	Degree	2
Tilt	Mean wading rod angle during point velocity measurement.	Degree	2
Temp	Mean temperature during point measurement.	°C or °F	2
Bnd	Boundary QC value.	n/a	n/a

8.3.3.4 Review Station Measurement

Review Station measurement screen consist of tabular report and velocity distribution plot supplied at the completion of all point velocity measurements at a station. The variables supplied in the report are dependent on the features activated on the handheld, velocity method selected and the discharge calculation method. The velocity distribution plot gives graphical presentation of the point velocity measurements against theoretical $1/6^{th}$ power law.

Review Station screen consists of tabular summary of all measurements performed at the station,

a) Review Station, Table 8:9.

b) Velocity Distribution Plot,

i). Point velocity measurements at station against theoretical 1/6th power law.

ii). Graphical presentation of how velocity profile compare to theoretical 1/6th power law.

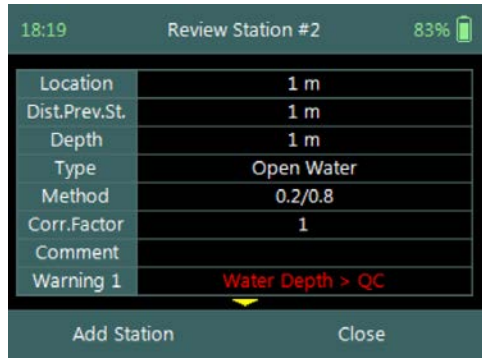


Figure 8:26 - Review Station

c) *To **close** the review station report,*

i). Press the Right Soft Key.

ii). The software will navigate to the Data Collection Window.

d) *To Add station,*

i). Press the Left Soft Key.

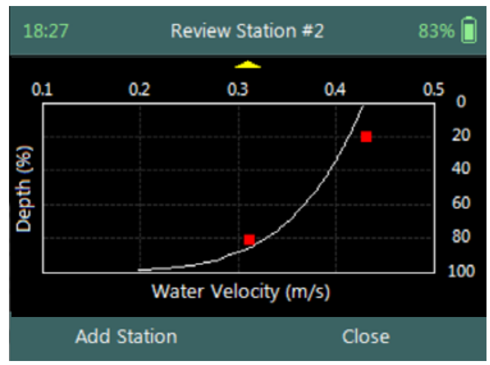


Figure 8:27 – Velocity Distribution

Properties associated with the variables and numerical calculations performed on the raw data collected at the station is defined in Table 8:9,

Table 8-9 - Review Station

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Location	Station location measured from the start location on tag line or measuring tape.	m or ft	3
Dist. Prev. St.	Distance between current and previous station.	m or ft	3
Depth	Measured water depth or effective depth (for Ice method).	m or ft	3
Type	Station type (see Station Types).	n/a	n/a
Method	Discharge measurement method or velocity method (see Determining Mean Station Velocity).	n/a	n/a
Ice	Ice Thickness (only for Ice method).	m or ft	3
WS to BI	Water surface to bottom of ice (only for Ice method).	m or ft	3
WS to BS	Water surface to bottom of slush ice (only for Ice method).	m or ft	3
Corr. Factor	Mean station velocity (mean velocity in vertical) correction factor.		2
Comment	Text entered in comment fields during	n/a	n/a

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
	measurement.		
%Q	Station discharge as a percent of the, • weighted rated discharge, of rated discharge entries in supplement data or, • measured discharge up to that station.	%	2
StnQ	Station or panel discharge, per discharge method.	m^3/s or ft^3/s	4
TotalQ	Total discharge is the sum of all completed station or panel discharges, per discharge method.	m^3/s or ft^3/s	4
PanelVel	Panel velocity calculated based on discharge calculation method.	m/s or ft/s	4
MeanStVel	Mean Station Velocity or **Mean Velocity in Vertical**, X velocity component computed per velocity method. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction applied (if applicable).	m/s or ft/s	4
σV	Mean standard error of X velocity component of all point measurements.	m/s or ft/s	4
SNR	Mean signal to noise ratio of beams 1, 2 of all point measurements.	dB	3
Samples	Total number of samples received.	number	n/a
Spikes	Total number of spikes removed from mean velocity.	number	n/a
Angle	Mean flow angle relative to X direction. Average the velocity angle from each point measurement.	Degree	2
Tilt	Mean wading rod angle of all point velocity measurements.	Degree	2
Temperature	Mean Temperature of all point measurements.	°C or °F	2
Bnd	Lowest Boundary QC value.	n/a	n/a
GPS - Latitude	GPS derived Latitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS	
GPS - Longitude	GPS derived Longitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS	

8.3.4 Station Measurement (Pressure Sensor)

Station Measurement is performed at each station that was created from the subdivision of the measurements section into number of stations. The station measurement consists of collecting a number of different parameters and variables required for the Discharge Calculation Methods. Each station is unique with respect to the selection of the location, width between adjacent stations, velocity method, averaging interval used for velocity measurements and quality control parameters.

8.3.4.1 Station Parameters

The **Station Parameters** that need to be determined before a decision is made on what velocity method will be used are the station location with respect to the starting point on the tag line or measuring tape and the total water depth.

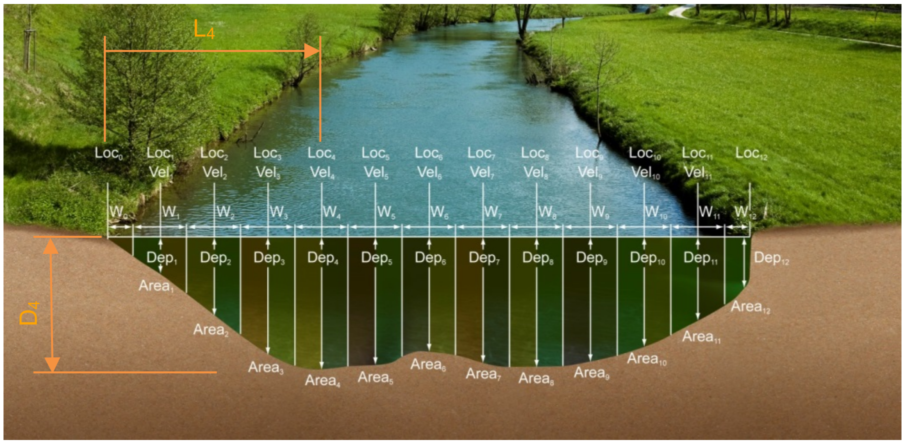


Figure 8:28 - Station Parameters

L_4, is the distance from the start location on the tag line or measuring tape.

D_4, is the water depth measured from the water surface to the channel bed.

The value of the start location on the tagline or measuring tape is not required to be zero (0.000m). The station location can also be entered in negative direction, with the start location at a larger value (e.g. 7.956m) and the end location at a smaller value (e.g. 0.532m). This feature assist when a measurement is performed from the left bank to the right bank and then back using the same tag line setup.

Start location of measurement at 0.532m

0.532 1.23 2.23 3.23 3.23 4.23 5.23 6.23 7.23 7.956

Start location of measurement at 7.956m

8.3.4.2 Point Velocity Measurement

The **Velocity Method** (see Determining Mean Station Velocity) selected for a station is based on the water depth, hydraulic conditions and the flow distribution within the measurement section.

- The number of point velocity measurements required within a vertical is dependent on the type of velocity method selected.
- The point velocity measurements are performed at a defined fractional depth based on the velocity method selected.

Step 1

Station parameters defined for **Velocity Measurement,** e.g., parameters of station 2m defined for velocity measurements are the following,

a) Station location: 2m,
b) Water Depth: 1m,
c) Station Type: "Open Water",
d) Velocity Method: Two Point.

*e) To **add** open water station and continue to velocity measurement,*
  i). Press the Right Soft Key.

*f) To **CANCEL** a new station,*
  i). Press the Left Soft Key.

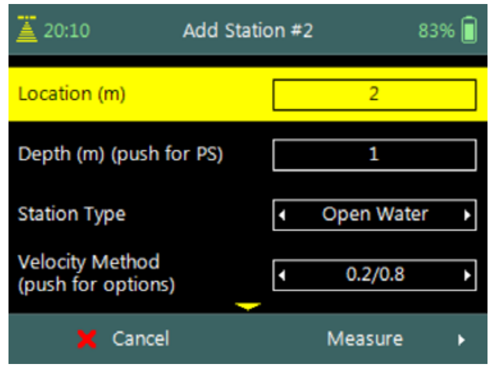


Figure 8:29 - Velocity Measurement

The water depth at each station can either be based on pressure sensor measurements or manually entered by the user. To perform pressure sensor measurement the Enter Key is pressed on the water depth parameter.

Step 2

Pressure Sensor (PS) Calibration allows the user to perform pressure sensor calibration. The screen is displayed before the first pressure sensor measurement is performed or when the **Air Pressure Cal. Period** expired.

a) To perform PS Calibration,
  i). Press the Right Soft Key.

*b) To **CANCEL** PS Calibration,*
  i). Press the Left Soft Key.

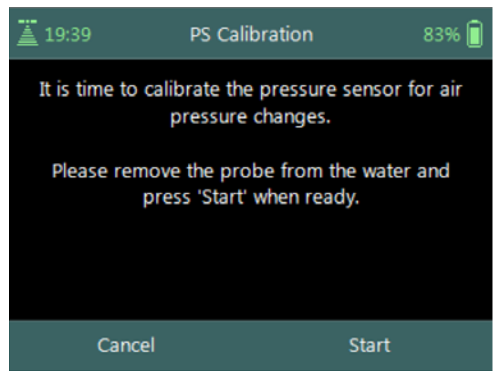


Figure 8:30 - PS Calibration

Step 3

Pressure Sensor (PS) Total Depth screen allows the user to perform depth measurement. The tilt sensor or bubble should be used to keep the instrument vertical.

a) To perform Depth Measurement,
  i). Press the Right Soft Key.

*b) To **CANCEL** Depth Measurement,*
  i). Press the Left Soft Key.

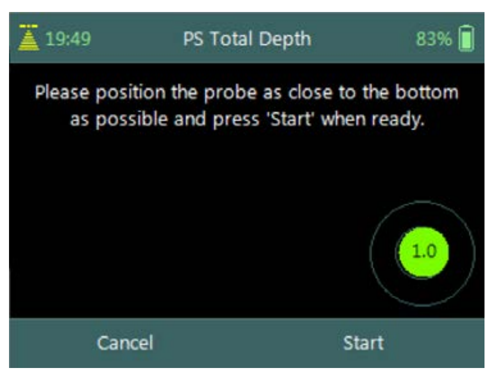


Figure 8:31 - PS Total Depth

The FlowTracker2 ADV Probe should be kept vertical during the pressure sensor measurements. Any angle on the probe will impact the pressure sensor measurements because the probe is off center of the wading rod.

Step 4

Measurement screen display the point velocity measurements required at each fractional depth, e.g., the fractional depths for the two point method at station 2m with a water depth of 1m are the following,

- 0.2 x water depth, 0.2m
- 0.8 x water depth, 0.8m

a) *To **select** a fractional measurement depth,*
   i). Use the up or down arrow key to scroll through the measurement options,

b) *To **continue** to velocity measurement,*
   i). Press the enter key.

c) *To **open** data collection menu,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

d) *To **REVERT** to add station screen,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

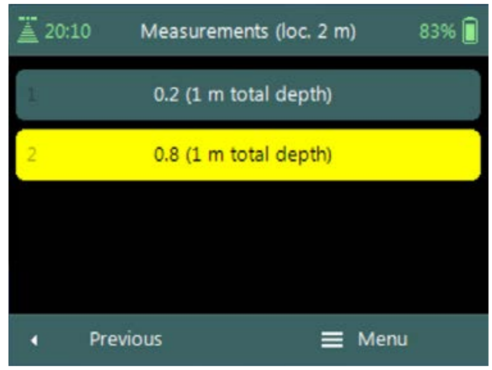
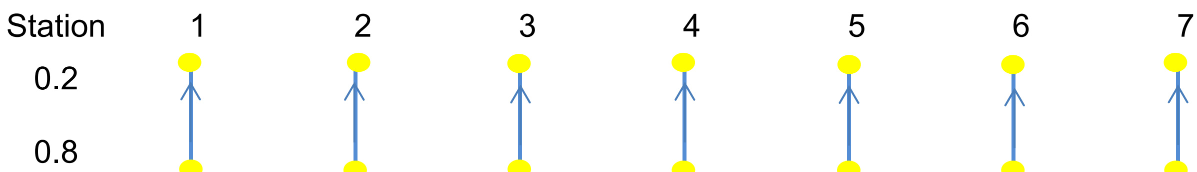


Figure 8:32 - Measurements

The order in how the point velocity measurements are performed at each fractional depth is not set and the user can perform the measurements in any order. The software will start at the bottom of each station for pressure sensor measurements.



Step 5

Setting Fractional Depth screen allow the setting and placement of the wading rod before velocity measurement is started,

a) Pressure Sensor Depth Guide,
b) Beam Check,
c) SNR,
d) Tilt,
e) Velocity angle.

f) *To **start** a velocity measurement,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

g) *To **REVERT** to measurement screen,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

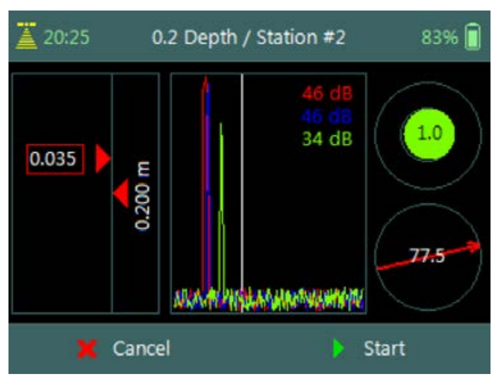


Figure 8:33 - Setting Fractional Depth

The key features of the **Setting Fractional Depth** are explained in Figure 8:34.

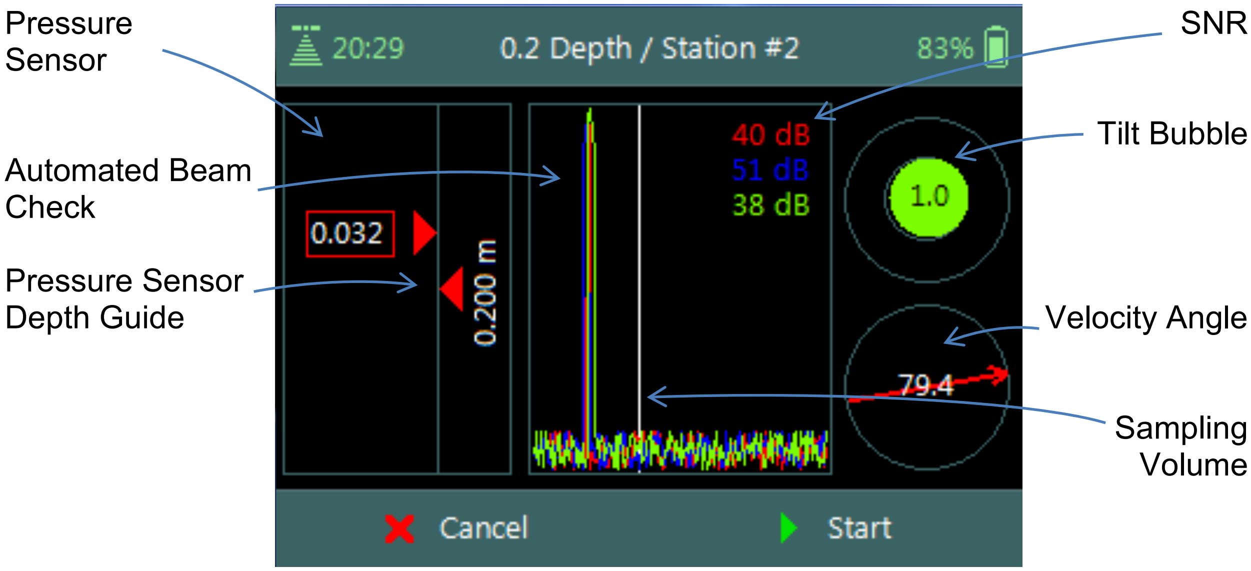


Figure 8:34 - Features of Setting Fractional Depth

The Sampling Volume of the instrument is defined by the white vertical line displayed on the Beam Profile plot in Figure 8:34. The location of the line is fixed and is based on the geometry of the beams. This is an excellent guide to indicate if the boundary is too close to the sampling volume.

Step 6

Fractional Depth Measurement screen displays graphical display of raw data of the following variables during a velocity measurement,

a) Velocity,
b) SNR,
c) Temperature,
d) Tilt,
e) Vel. Angle,
f) Probe Depth,
g) Battery,
h) Pressure.

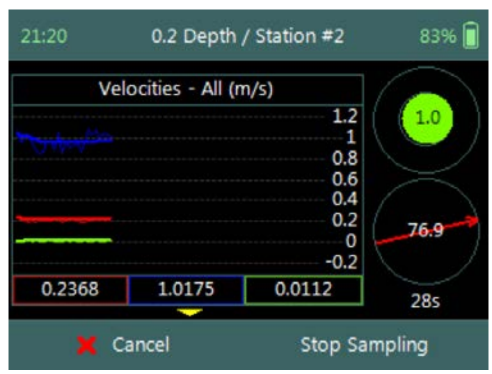


Figure 8:35 - Fractional Depth Measurement

Tilt and Velocity Angle indicators are situated on the right hand side of the screen.

i) Tilt,
j) Velocity Angle,
k) Averaging Time left.

*l) To **select** a variable graphical display,*

i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to view a variable.

*m) To **stop sampling**,*

i). Press the Right Soft Key.

*n) To **CANCEL** velocity measurement,*

i). Press the Left Soft Key.

The conventions and graphic display features used for displaying Velocity and SNR raw data are defined under Raw Data Display.

8.3.4.3 Review Point Measurement

Review Point Measurement is a report supplied at the end of each point velocity measurement. The report consists of two components, tabular summary of numerical calculations performed on the raw data collected and graphical display of raw data.

Review Point Measurement screen consists of the following tabular summary and graphical displays,

Tabular Display

a) Review Point Measurement, Table 8:10

Graphical Display of raw data are based on the following variables,

b) Velocity,
c) SNR,
d) Temperature,
e) Tilt,
f) Velocity Angle,
g) Probe Depth,
h) Battery,
i) Pressure.

*j) To **select** a variable,*

i). Use the up or down arrow key to view a variable.

*k) To **accept** the velocity measurement,*

ii). Press the Right Soft Key.

*l) To **REDO** velocity measurement,*

ii). Press the Left Soft Key.

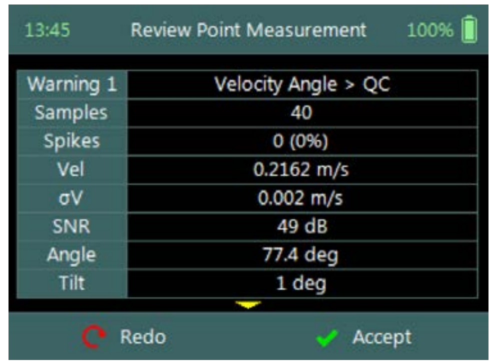


Figure 8:36 - Review Point Measurement

The conventions and graphic display features used for displaying Velocity and SNR raw data are defined under Raw Data Display.

Properties associated with the variable output from the numerical calculations performed on raw data collected is defined in Table 8:10,

Table 8-10 - Review Point Measurement

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Samples	Total number of samples received.	number	n/a
Spikes	Number of spikes removed from mean velocity.	number	n/a
Vel	Mean X velocity component of all samples. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction	m/s or ft/s	4

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
	applied (if applicable).		
σV	Standard error of X velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
SNR	Mean signal to noise ratio. Average of beam 1 and 2 SNR during point measurement.	dB	3
Angle	Flow angle relative to X direction. Angle between the mean X velocity component and mean Y velocity component.	Degree	2
Bnd	Boundary QC value.	n/a	n/a
Tilt	Mean wading rod angle during point velocity measurement.	Degree	2
Temp	Mean temperature during point measurement.	°C or °F	2
Depth	Mean water depth from water surface during point measurement	m or ft	3
Pressure	Mean water pressure during point measurement	dbar	3

8.3.4.4 Review Station Measurement

Review Station measurement screen consists of tabular report and velocity distribution plot supplied at the completion of all point velocity measurements at a station. The variables supplied in the report are dependent on the features activated on the handheld, velocity method selected and the discharge calculation method. The velocity distribution plot gives graphical presentation of the point velocity measurements against theoretical 1/6th power law.

Review Station screen consists of tabular summary of all measurements performed at the station,

a) Review Station, Table 8:11.

b) Velocity Distribution Plot,

   i). Point velocity measurements at station against theoretical 1/6th power law.

   ii). Graphical presentation of how velocity profile compare to theoretical 1/6th power law.

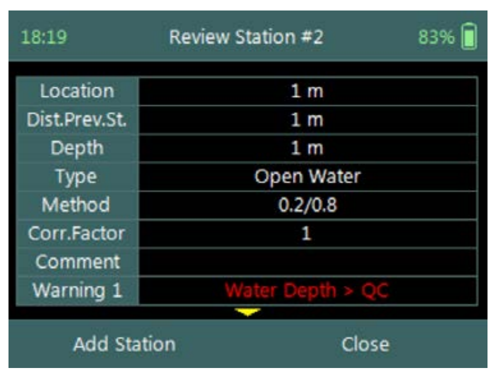


Figure 8:37 - Review Station

c) *To **close** the review station report,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.
   ii). The software will navigate to the Data Collection Window.

d) *To Add station,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

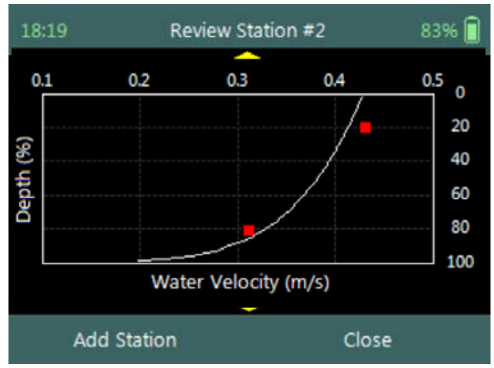


Figure 8:38 – Velocity Distribution

Properties associated with the variables and numerical calculations performed on the raw data collected at the station is defined in Table 8:11,

Table 8-11 - Review Station

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Location	Station location measured from the start location on tag line or measuring tape.	m or ft	3
Dist. Prev. St.	Distance between current and previous station.	m or ft	3
Depth	Measured water depth or effective depth (for Ice method).	m or ft	3
Type	Station type (see Station Types).	n/a	n/a
Method	Discharge measurement method or velocity method (see Determining Mean Station Velocity).	n/a	n/a
Ice	Ice Thickness (only for Ice method).	m or ft	3
WS to BI	Water surface to bottom of ice (only for Ice method).	m or ft	3
WS to BS	Water surface to bottom of slush ice (only for Ice method).	m or ft	3
Corr. Factor	Mean station velocity (mean velocity in vertical) correction factor.		2
Comment	Text entered in comment fields during measurement.	n/a	n/a
%Q	Station discharge as a percent of the, • weighted rated discharge, of rated discharge entries in supplement data or, • measured discharge up to that station.	%	2
StnQ	Station or panel discharge, per discharge method.	m^3/s or ft^3/s	4
TotalQ	Total discharge is the sum of all completed station or panel discharges, per discharge method.	m^3/s or ft^3/s	4
MeanStVel	Mean Station Velocity or **Mean Velocity in**	m/s or ft/s	4

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
	Vertical, X velocity component computed per velocity method. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction applied (if applicable).		
σV	Mean standard error of X velocity component of all point measurements.	m/s or ft/s	4
SNR	Mean signal to noise ratio of beams 1, 2 of all point measurements.	dB	3
Samples	Total number of samples received.	number	n/a
Spikes	Total number of spikes removed from mean velocity.	number	n/a
Angle	Mean flow angle relative to X direction. Average the velocity angle from each point measurement.	Degree	2
Tilt	Mean wading rod angle of all point velocity measurements.	Degree	2
Temperature	Mean Temperature of all point measurements.	°C or °F	2
Bnd	Lowest Boundary QC value.	n/a	n/a
GPS - Latitude	GPS derived Latitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS	
GPS - Longitude	GPS derived Longitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS	

8.3.5 Data Collection Menu

Data Collection Menu allows the user to adjust measurement settings, enter staff gauge readings and rated discharge data and view measurement summary. The data collection menu can be accessed in between point velocity measurements or stations and this ensures that the instrument is configured for current flow conditions present.

Data Collection Menu screen consists of the following functions that are available in Discharge Mode,

a) Complete Measurement,
b) Settings,
c) Supplemental Data,
d) Discharge Summary,
e) Stations Summary,
f) Automated Beam Check,
g) PS Calibration,
h) Discard Measurement,
i) Go to Home Screen.

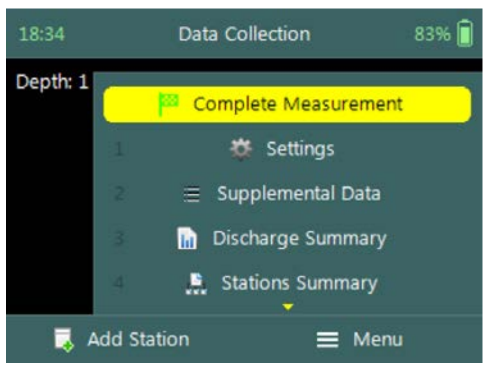


Figure 8:39 - Data Collection Menu

j) To ***select*** *a function,*

i). Use the up or down arrow key to scroll through the functions,

k) *To **open** or **CLOSE** the data collection menu,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

8.3.5.1 Settings

The **Settings** menu option gives the user access to the initial measurement settings that were configured during the configuration of the discharge template.

Settings screen consists of the following functions for configuring measurement settings,

a) File Properties,
b) Data Collection Settings,
c) Quality Control Settings
d) Discharge Settings.

e) *To **select** a function,*
   i). Use the up or down arrow key to scroll through the functions,

f) *To **CLOSE** the settings menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

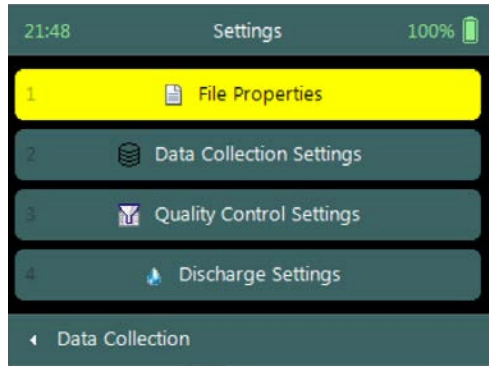


Figure 8:40 - Settings Menu

The measurement settings functions supplied in the Settings option in data collection menu are defined under Template Functions.

8.3.5.2 Supplemental Data

Supplemental Data function enables the user to enter staff gauge readings, rated discharge and other variables during the discharge measurement. The staff gauge readings and rated discharge are used to compute Weighted Gauge Height. The rated discharge is also used to determine percentage discharge at each station or panel during a discharge measurement.

Supplemental Data screen display the supplemental data entered and is sorted by the time the staff gauge readings were taken. The supplemental data can be entered during any stage of the measurement before the "Complete Measurement" function is selected.

a) *To **add** supplemental data,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key,

b) *To **CLOSE** supplemental data,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

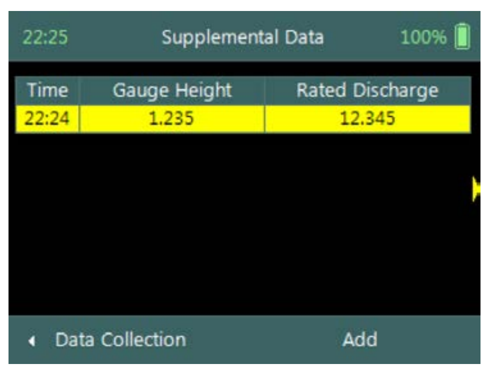


Figure 8:41 - Supplemental Data

The time and date entered for each supplemental dataset should be the time when the staff gauge reading was taken and not the time when the data was entered.

Add Gauge Height screen consists of the following variables required in supplemental data,

a) Date,
b) Time,
c) Gauge Height,
d) Rated Discharge,
e) Temperature,
f) Salinity,
g) Comment.

c) *To **accept** supplemental data,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key,

d) *To **CANCEL** supplemental data entry,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

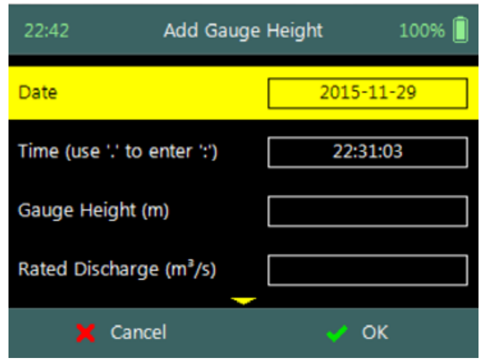


Figure 8:42 - Add Gauge Height

> The staff gauge readings, rated discharge and associated data captured in Supplemental Data should be accurate and complete. It is important that these variables are entered correctly for accurate calculation of weighted gauge height and or percentage discharge.

8.3.5.3 Discharge Summary

Discharge Summary from the data collection menu displays the discharge and other variables measured from all completed stations. Discharge summary requires at least one station with velocity measurements to populate the main variables in the table.

Discharge Summary screen consists of tabular summary of discharge and other variables measured up to specific point,

a) Discharge Summary, Table 8:12.

b) *To **close** the discharge summary report,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.
   ii). The software will navigate to the Data Collection Window.

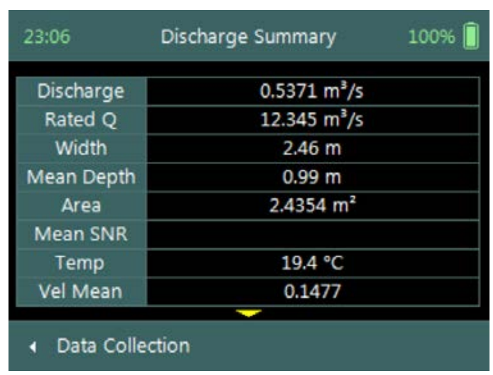


Figure 8:43 - Discharge Summary

Properties associated with the variables and numerical calculations performed on the raw data collected is defined in Table 8:12,

Table 8-12 - Discharge Summary

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Discharge	Total discharge is the sum of all station or panel discharges, per discharge method.	m^3/s or ft^3/s	4
RatedQ	Rated discharge entered in supplemental data.	m^3/s or ft^3/s	4
Width	Total width calculated from all stations and or	m or ft	3

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
	panels, per discharge method.		
Mean Depth	Average depth calculated from the total area and width.	m or ft	3
Area	Total area calculated from all stations or panels, per discharge method.	m^2 or ft^2	4
Mean SNR	Average SNR of all completed stations. Require at least 3 stations.	dB	n/a
Temp	Average temperature of all completed stations.	°C or °F	2
Vel Mean	Average station velocity, X velocity component	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel Min	Minimum station velocity, X velocity component	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel Max	Maximum station velocity, X velocity component	m/s or ft/s	4
Height, Start	Start staff gauge reading.	m or ft	3
Height, End	End staff gauge reading.	m or ft	3
Uncertainty	Uncertainty in discharge measurement.	%	2
Largest Uncertainty	Largest uncertainty in the discharge uncertainty calculation.	%	2
GPS - Latitude	GPS derived Latitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS	
GPS - Longitude	GPS derived Longitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS	

8.3.5.4 Station Summary

The **Station Summary** from the data collection menu displays the completed stations in table format. The station summary is a good reference when evaluating measurements performed at a station against adjacent stations.

Station Summary screen consists of tabular view of all completed stations,

a) Station Summary, Table 8:13.

*b) To **close** the discharge summary report,*

i). Press the Left Soft Key.

ii). The software will navigate to the Data Collection Window.

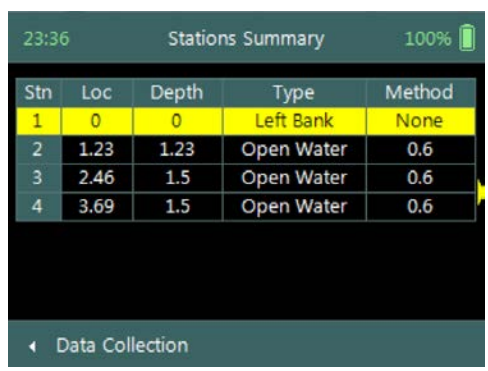


Figure 8:44 - Station Summary

Properties associated with the variables and numerical calculations performed on the raw data collected is defined in Table 8:13,

Table 8-13 - Station Summary

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Loc	Station location measured from the start location on tag line or measuring tape.	m or ft	3
Depth	Measured water depth or effective depth (for Ice method).	m or ft	3
Type	Station type (see Station Types).	n/a	n/a
Method	Discharge measurement method or velocity method (see Determining Mean Station Velocity).	n/a	n/a
Corr. Factor	Mean station velocity (mean velocity in vertical) correction factor.	None	3
Panel Vel	Panel velocity calculated based on discharge calculation method.	m/s or ft/s	4
MeanStVel	Mean Station Velocity or **Mean Velocity in Vertical**, X velocity component computed per velocity method. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction applied (if applicable).	m/s or ft/s	4
Width	Panel width, per discharge method.	m or ft	3
Area	Panel area, per discharge method.	m^2/s or ft^2/s	4
Flow	Panel discharge, per discharge method.	m^3/s or ft^3/s	4
%Q	Station discharge as a percent of the, • weighted rated discharge, of rated discharge entries in supplement data or, • measured discharge up to that station.	%	2
Angle	Mean flow angle relative to X direction. Average the velocity angle from each point measurement	Degree	2
Tilt	Mean wading rod angle of all point velocity measurements.	Degree	2
Temp	Mean Temperature of all point measurements.	°C or °F	2
GPS - Latitude	GPS derived Latitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS	
GPS - Longitude	GPS derived Longitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS	

8.3.5.5 Automated Beam Check

Automated Beam Check function in the data collection menu allows the user to perform beam check during any stage of the discharge measurement. The Automated Beam Check function operations, conventions and graphic display features are defined under Automated Beam Check.

Automated Beam Checks performed during the discharge measurement are stored in FlowTracker2 file (.ft) that was created for the measurement site.

8.3.5.6 PS Calibration (Pressure Sensor)

The **PS Calibration** function in the data collection menu allows the user to perform Pressure Sensor Calibration during any stage between point velocity measurements.

Frequent calibration of pressure sensor for atmospheric or air pressure changes during the measurement will improve the accuracy of pressure measurements. The variation in atmospheric or air pressure will impact the accuracy of pressure measurements.

Step 1

PS Calibration screen allows the user to perform pressure sensor calibration. The user is required to remove the probe from the water.

a) *To perform PS Calibration,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

b) *To **CANCEL** PS Calibration,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

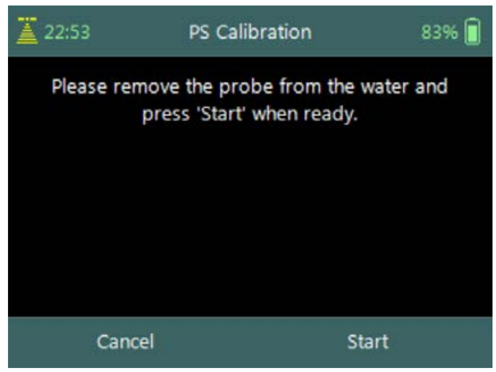


Figure 8:45 – PS calibration

Step2

PS Calibration screen with **Quality Control** warning messages based on quality control checks performed on measurement data.

a) *To **accept** quality control warning messages,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

b) *To **REDO** PS Calibration,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

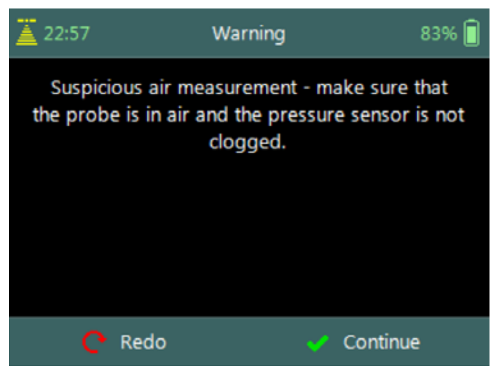


Figure 8:46 - Warning Messages

8.3.5.7 Complete Measurement

The **Complete Measurement** function closes the measurement file and the user will not be able to add additional stations and or make any changes to the data captured. The complete measurement function is a three-step process, firstly to determine if the user is satisfied with the discharge measurement, secondly to perform quality control checks against all measurement data and lastly to review discharge summary.

The Complete Measurement process allows the user to review the measurement data before the complete function is selected at Summary screen. The user will not be able to make any to changes to the measurement file from the handheld when this function is selected.

Step 1

Confirmation screen of **Complete Measurement** function confirms if the user wants to close the measurement file. User will not be able to add stations or make any changes to the data

c) *To **confirm** complete measurement operation,*
   ii). Press the Right Soft Key.

d) *To **CANCEL** complete measurement operation,*
   ii). Press the Left Soft Key.

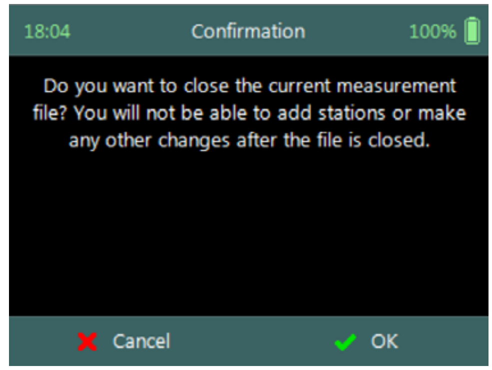


Figure 8:47 - Confirmation Complete Measurement

Step2

Confirmation screen with **Quality Control** warning messages based on quality control checks performed on measurement data.

c) *To **accept** quality control warning messages,*
   ii). Press the Right Soft Key.

d) *To **CANCEL** complete measurement operation,*
   ii). Press the Left Soft Key.

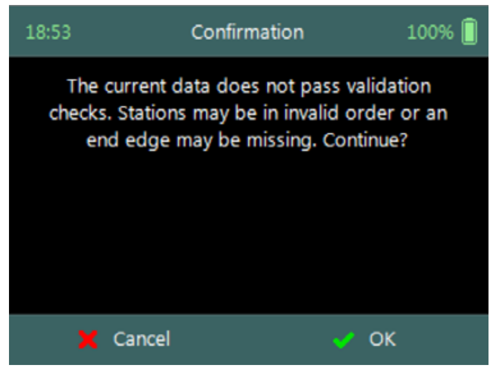


Figure 8:48 - Confirmation Quality Control Messages

Step3

Summary screen displays the discharge summary report before the measurement file is closed for further data entry and editing.

a) *To **confirm** complete measurement operation,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.
   ii). The software will navigate to the Main Menu.

b) *To **CANCEL** complete measurement operation,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

Figure 8:49 - Summary Discharge Measurement

8.3.5.8 Discard Measurement

The **Discard Measurement** function will discard all configuration settings, stations and other data related with the measurement.

Discarding a measurement will result in deleting all data of the measurement site that is related to the specific measurement file.

Warning screen of **Discard Measurement** function displays the warnings associated with discarding measurement file.

a) *To **DISCARD** measurement,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.
   ii). The software will navigate to the Main Menu.

b) *To **CANCEL** discard measurement operation,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

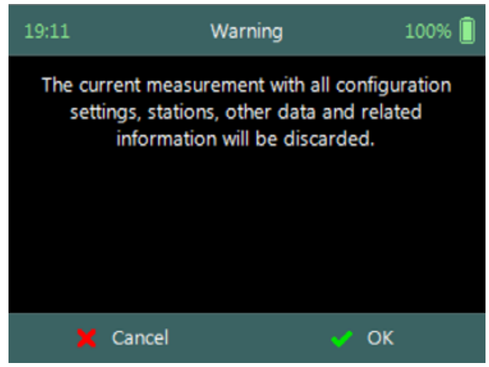


Figure 8:50 - Warning Discard Measurement

8.3.5.9 Go to Home Screen

The **Go to Home Screen** function will navigate the software to the main menu and the user will have the ability to access software functions that are not related to Discharge Mode function.

The discharge measurement can be accessed during any stage by selecting the "Data Collection" function with the Right Soft Key. The software will continue with the measurement at the exact stage when the user navigated away from the discharge mode.

8.4. Measurement Summary

Measurement Summary is supplied when the Complete Measurement function is selected and displays all the measurement results. The Measurement Summary is the last verification of the measurement results before the measurement file is closed for any further measurements or changes.

Measurement Summary screen consists of tabular summary of discharge measurement results,

a) Discharge Summary, Table 8:14.

b) *To **CANCEL** the discharge summary report,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.
   ii). The software will navigate to the Data Collection Window.

c) *To **COMPLETE** the discharge measurement,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.
   ii). The software will close the measurement file and navigate to the main menu.

Figure 8:51 - Measurement Summary

Properties associated with the variables and numerical calculations performed on the raw data collected is defined in Table 8:14,

Table 8-14 - Measurement Summary

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
File Type	File type based on discharge or general mode	n/a	n/a
Site Name	Site name populated by user	n/a	n/a
Site Number	Site number populated by user	n/a	n/a
Operator	Operator name populated by user	n/a	n/a
Started	Start date and time when measurement was created	yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm	
Completed	End data and time when measurement was completed	yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm	
Stations	Total number of stations within the measurement	n/a	n/a
Comment	General comment captured against measurement	n/a	n/a
Discharge	Total discharge calculated	m^3/s or ft^3/s	4
Rated Q	Rated discharge entered by user	m^3/s or ft^3/s	4
Width	Total width of the measurement section	m or ft	3
Mean Depth	The mean depth of the measurement section calculated from the total area and width.	m or ft	3
Area	Total area of the measurement section	m^2 or ft^2	4
Mean SNR	Average signal to noise ration	dB	
Temp	Average temperature measured	°C or °F	
Vel Mean	Average station velocity, X velocity component	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel Min	Minimum station velocity, X velocity component	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel Max	Maximum station velocity, X velocity component	m/s or ft/s	4
Height, Start	First staff gauge reading	m or ft	3
Height, End	Last staff gauge reading	m or ft	3
Uncertainty	Uncertainty in discharge measurement	%	2
Largest Uncertainty	Largest uncertainty in the discharge uncertainty calculation	%	2
GPS - Latitude	GPS derived Latitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS	
GPS - Longitude	GPS derived Longitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS	

Section 9. General Measurement

General Measurement is the measurement technique involved in collecting velocity data based on the General Mode (see Data Collection Modes). The data collection framework designed for collecting velocity data is detailed in Software Flow Diagram. Velocity data collection process consists of the following main components, with discussions of each component.

- Create Measurement,
- Automated Beam Check,
- Data Collection,
- Discharge Summary.

9.1. Create Measurement

Creating a new measurement consists of a number of steps before the data collection can be performed. The first step involved is to either select an existing Configuration Template or create a new template with user defined configuration parameters. The template then needs to be associated with a measurement file that is created by the user. When the measurement file is created, the software is ready for data collection.

9.1.1 **Measurement**

The **Measurement** function enables the user to create a new measurement in either Discharge or General mode. The General mode used for the collection of velocity data during field measurements will be focused on in this section.

a) The Measurement function can be accessed from the Main Menu on the bottom banner,

*b) To **select** the Measurement function,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

c) *The software will navigate to the New File Type or Mode screen.*

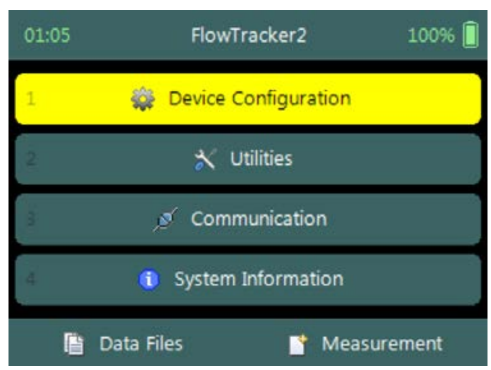


Figure 9:1 - Main Menu

9.1.2 **New File Type**

The **New File Type** function enables the user to determine if the new measurement file should be based on either Discharge or General mode.

The **New File Type** screen consists of the following options,

a) Discharge,

b) General,

c) *To **select** discharge mode,*

i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select Discharge and press enter key.

d) *The software will navigate to the New File Template screen.*

e) *To **navigate** to Home menu,*

i). Press the Left Soft Key.

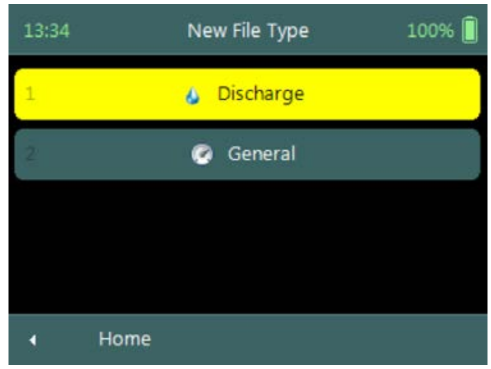


Figure 9:2 - New File Type

9.1.3 New File Template

New File Template function enables the user to create a new configuration template based on SonTek default settings or select an existing Configuration Template created by the user. The configuration template is based on user defined parameters that are dependent on measurement site details, flow conditions and organizational requirements. The configuration template selected will be assigned to the measurement file and the parameters defined in the template will be applied during the Velocity measurement.

The **New File Template** screen consists of the following options,

a) **(default)**, the template will be based on SonTek default settings.

b) Existing Templates, created under "Device Configuration". A list of available templates created by the user will be displayed under the "(default)" option.

c) *To **select** a template,*

i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select template and press enter key.

d) *The software will navigate to the New Data File screen.*

e) *To **navigate** to File Type menu,*

i). Press the Left Soft Key.

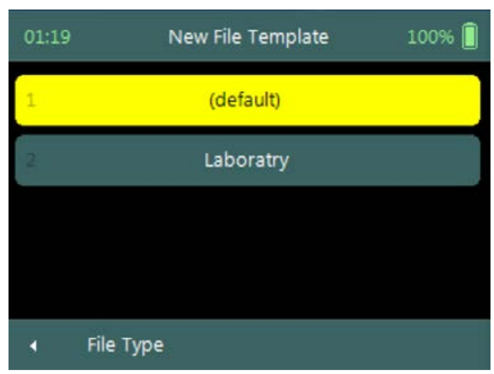


Figure 9:3 - New File Template

9.1.4 New Data File

New Data File function enables the user to populate the measurement site and operator details. The information entered for each parameter should be accurate as this information is recorded in each measurement file and used in both the File Naming and Folder Naming conventions.

- Existing templates created under “Device Configuration”, parameters will be prepopulated from File Properties information that was captured,
- Templates based on SonTek default configuration will have no information populated and the user will need to enter the required details for each parameter.

It is not good data management practice for both measurement site references to be empty or with abbreviate terms. It is recommended that the user makes use of accurate site descriptions.

The **New Data File** screen consists of the following parameters,

a) Site Number,
b) Site Name,
c) Operator,
d) Comment.

*e) To **select** a parameter,*
  i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to select a parameter.

*f) To **accept** the new data file configuration,*
  i). Press the Right Soft Key,
  ii). The software will navigate to Automated Beam Check screen.

*g) To **CANCEL** new data file configuration,*
  i). Press the Left Soft Key,
  ii). The software will return to New File Template.

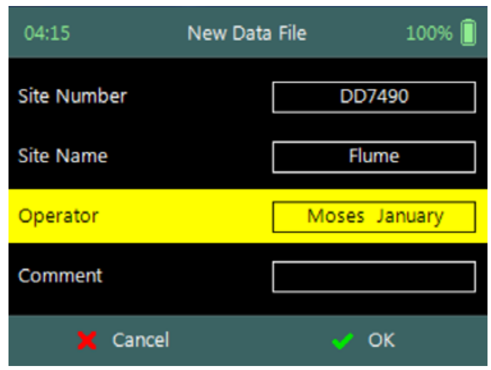


Figure 9:4 - New Data File

9.2. Automated Beam Check

Duplicate of 6.4 Automated Beam Check

The **Automated Beam Check** function allows the user to perform a Beam Check in the region of the measurement location before data collection starts. The automated beam check performs a number of quality control checks on the data collected to determine if the flow conditions are suitable for velocity measurements. The data displayed graphically during the Automated BeamCheck is a time series of the Quality Control parameters.

The **Automated BeamCheck** is an automated version of Beam Check function described in 6.3 Beam Check. In the Original FlowTracker, the Automated Beam Check was known as “Auto QC Test”.

Automated Beam Check can be performed during any stage of the data collection process. The Automated Beam Check functions are available before data collection start and during velocity measurement from the "Data Collection Menu" (see Data Collection Screen).

9.2.1 Start Automated Beam Check

The FlowTracker2 probe should be placed in the region of the measurement location in moving water such that the probe is submerged and well away from any underwater obstacles. The FlowTracker2 collects data for about 20 seconds.

The **Automated Beam check** screen shows the steps involved in performing an automated beam check.

a) *To **start** the automated beam check,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

b) *To **CANCEL** automated beam check,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key,
   ii). The software will navigate to Data Collection window.

c) *To **accept** Automated Beam Check,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key,
   ii). The software will navigate to the Data Collection window.

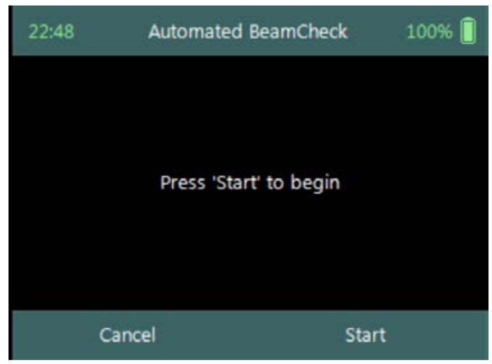
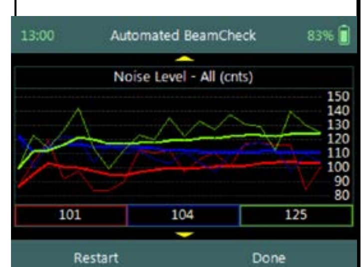


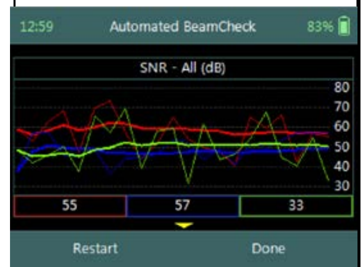
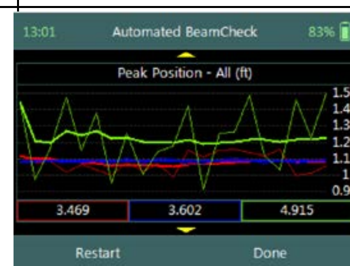
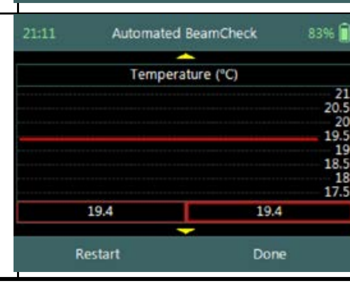
Figure 9:5 - Automated Beam Check

9.2.2 Evaluate Beam Check Results

The automated beam check quality control criteria used in the evaluation of the beam check data are listed in Table 9:1,

Table 9-1 - Automated Beam Check Quality Control Criteria

Quality Control	Criteria	QC Warning	Graphic Display
Noise Level	• Measured electronics noise level is compared to reference data. Any significant deviation causes a warning, • A large change in noise level may indicate damage to the probe. • Noise level supplied in Automated BeamCheck is given in Counts. Multiply with 0.43 to convert to dB.	Noise Level > QC	

Quality Control	Criteria	QC Warning	Graphic Display
SNR	• The SNR is checked as sufficient for reliable data collection, • Each beam SNR is compared to be sure all beams perform equally, • A warning is issued for low SNR < 4 dB, • A warning is issued for 4 dB < SNR <7dB, • Beam SNR values differ.	SNR	
Peak Level	• The shape of the sampling volume curve is compared to the expected shape. Any significant deviation causes a warning, • This criterion can only be checked with sufficient SNR (> 7 dB).	Peak Level > QC	
Peak Location	• The physical location of the sampling volume is compared to the expected location. Any significant deviation causes a warning. • This criterion can only be checked for sufficient SNR (> 7 dB).	Peak Location > QC	
Temperature	• No criteria defined for Temperature. • Temperature data included in Automated BeamCheck to allow user to analyze data before measurement.	None	

a) The graphical display of the Quality Control parameters supplied during the Automated BeamCheck is time series of each parameter. If there are any significant variation between the beams, spikes are present in the data or Quality Control warnings are issued we recommend the following steps,

i). Repeat the test at least once, after you verify that the probe and sampling volume are well away from any underwater obstacles.

ii). Perform BeamCheck, described in 6.3 Beam Check to evaluate FlowTracker2 performance in more detail.

b) The display options for individual or all beam check data are listed in Table 9:2. The shortcut key on the keypad determines which beam SNR will be displayed,

Table 9-2 - Automated Beam Check Display

Beam	Line Color	Keypad Key
Beam1	Red	1
Beam2	Blue	2
Beam3	Green	3
All Beams	All	4

c) *To **select** a Quality Control Criteria,*

i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys to view quality control criteria.

9.3. Data Collection

Data Collection function for General mode is the process involved in collecting velocity data. The data collection process is a systematic workflow designed to follow the actual measurement process in the field. The process consist of the following main components that also describes each individual aspect of the field measurement,

- Data Collection Window,
- Station Measurement,
- Data Collection Menu.

9.3.1 Data Collection Window

The **Data Collection Window** can be defined as the "*control center*" of the data collection process during velocity measurements. All the software functions required to perform velocity measurements is available from the data collection screen. The key features and some of the variables are explained in **Figure 9:6**.

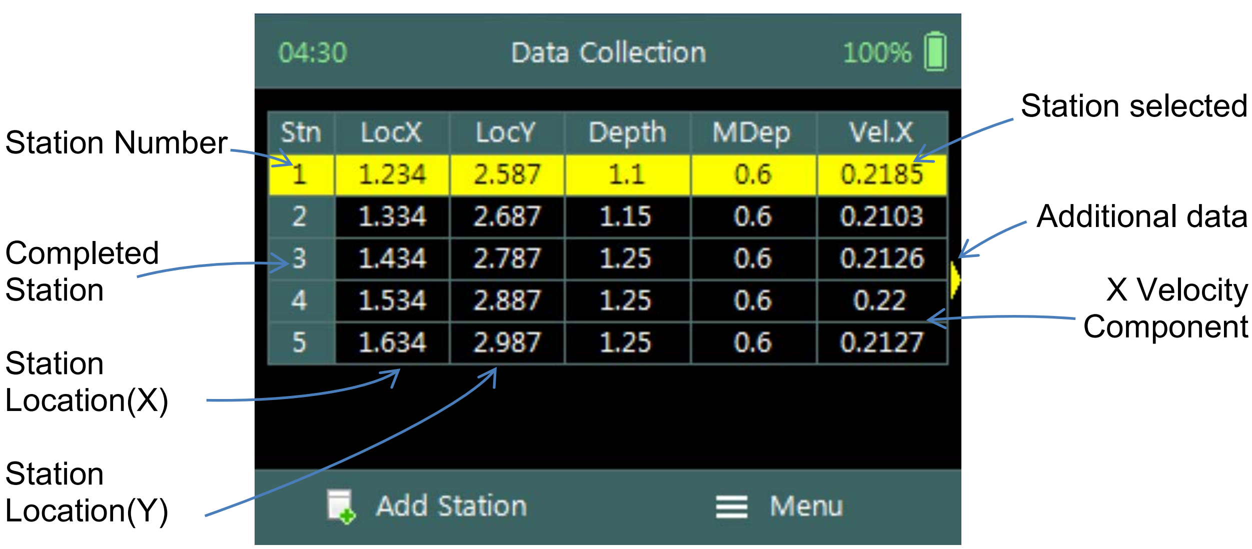


Figure 9:6 - Data Collection Window

The operations and functions available of the Data Collection Window will be discussed throughout this section with the main functions described in Figure 9:7.

Data Collection Window screen of the consists of the following,

a) Station Management area defined in rectangle,
b) Add Station,
c) Data Collection Menu *(Menu).*

*d) To **add** a station,*
 i). Press the Left Soft Key.

*e) To **select** the data collection **menu**,*
 i). Press the Right Soft Key,
 ii). The software will display a popup menu screen.

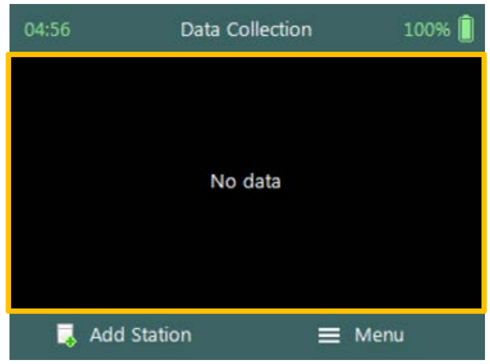


Figure 9:7 - Functions Data Collection Window

9.3.1.1 Add Station

Add Station function creates a station for each measurement location identified for velocity measurements. The process separates point velocity measurements with the same position and or different measurement locations.

Add Station screen consist of the following parameters that are required to create a station,

a) Location X,
b) Location Y,
c) Water Depth,
d) Measurement Depth,
e) Comment.

The standard **functions** available for each station type are,

f) Record GPS Location (function availability, see GPS Station Tagging).

*g) To **add** a station or start velocity measurement,*
 i). Press the Right Soft Key.

*h) To **CANCEL** add station,*
 i). Press the Left Soft Key.

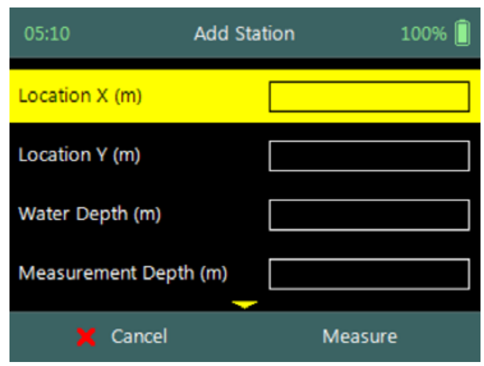


Figure 9:8 - Add Station

Unique station number is assigned to each point velocity measurement. This allows the user to perform multiple measurements at the same location without assigning a unique number or name to differentiate between the measurements.

Properties associated with the parameters for station are defined in Table 9:3,

Table 9-3 - Station - Properties

Parameter	Min	Max	Default	Decimals	Units	Required
Location X	-1000	1000	empty	3	m or ft	Yes
Location Y	-1000	1000	empty	3	m or ft	Yes
Water Depth	0	100	empty	3	m or ft	Yes

Parameter	Min	Max	Default	Decimals	Units	Required
Measurement Depth	0	100	empty	3	m or ft	Yes
Comment	0	250	empty			No

9.3.1.2 Delete Station

Deleting a station is performed from the **Data Collection Window** by selecting the station within the viewable window.

The station delete process is not reversible and the user must ensure that the correct station is selected. Selected station will be highlighted with a yellow background.

Delete Station is performed from the **Data Collection Window**. Up to ten completed stations will be displayed at any time,

a) *To **select** a station,*
   i). Use the up or down arrow key to scroll through the completed stations,

b) *To **DELETE** a station,*
   i). Press the backspace key.
   ii). The software will navigate to the Confirmation screen.

Figure 9:9 - Select Station

Confirmation screen requests confirmation of deleting the selected station.

a) *To **confirm** station delete,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key,

b) *To **CANCEL** station delete,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key,

c) *The software will navigate to the Data Collection Window.*

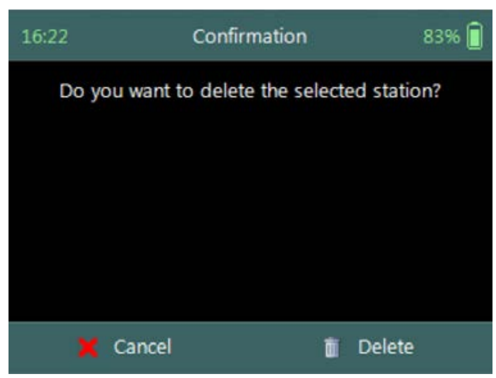


Figure 9:10 - Confirm Delete

9.3.2 **Station Measurement (Wading Rod)**

Station Measurement is performed at each Station based on measurement requirements. The measurement locations can either be structured such in laboratory environment where the position of the instrument is determined accurately or random where velocities on channel banks are investigated. The station measurements consist of collecting a number of different parameters and variables required by the General mode.

9.3.2.1 Point Velocity Measurement

Point Velocity Measurement in General mode is not bound to any measurement techniques and or guidelines as required in Discharge mode. The location of the station, number of point velocity measurements and depth of point velocity measurements is dependent on the user requirements.

If the velocity measurements are used to perform hydraulic analyzes of the flow conditions in a channel, either a laboratory or natural channel, it is recommended that ISO 748 – 2007 guidelines are used.

Step 1

Station parameters defined for **Velocity Measurement,** e.g., parameters of station defined for velocity measurement are the following,

a) Location X: 1.534m,
b) Location Y: 2.978m,
c) Water Depth: 1,125m,
d) Measurement Depth: 0.6m,
e) Velocity Method: Two Point,
f) Comment.
g) *To **add** station and continue velocity measurement,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.
h) *To **CANCEL** a new station,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

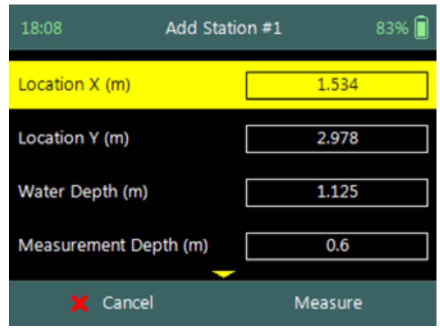


Figure 9:11 - Velocity Measurement

Step 2

Setting Measurement Depth screen allow the setting and placement of the wading rod before velocity measurement is started,

a) Wading rod setting,
b) Beam Check,
c) SNR,
d) Tilt,
e) Velocity angle.
f) *To **start** a velocity measurement,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.
g) *To **REVERT** to measurement screen,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

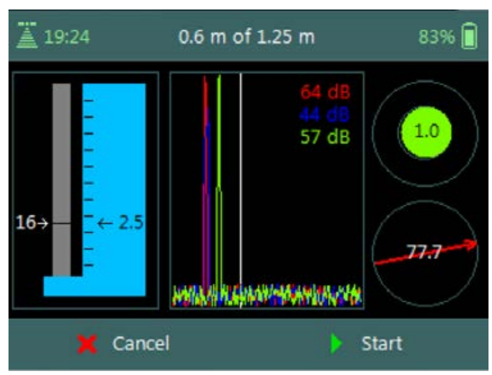


Figure 9:12 - Setting Measurement Depth

The key features of the **Setting Measurement Depth** are explained in Figure 9:13.

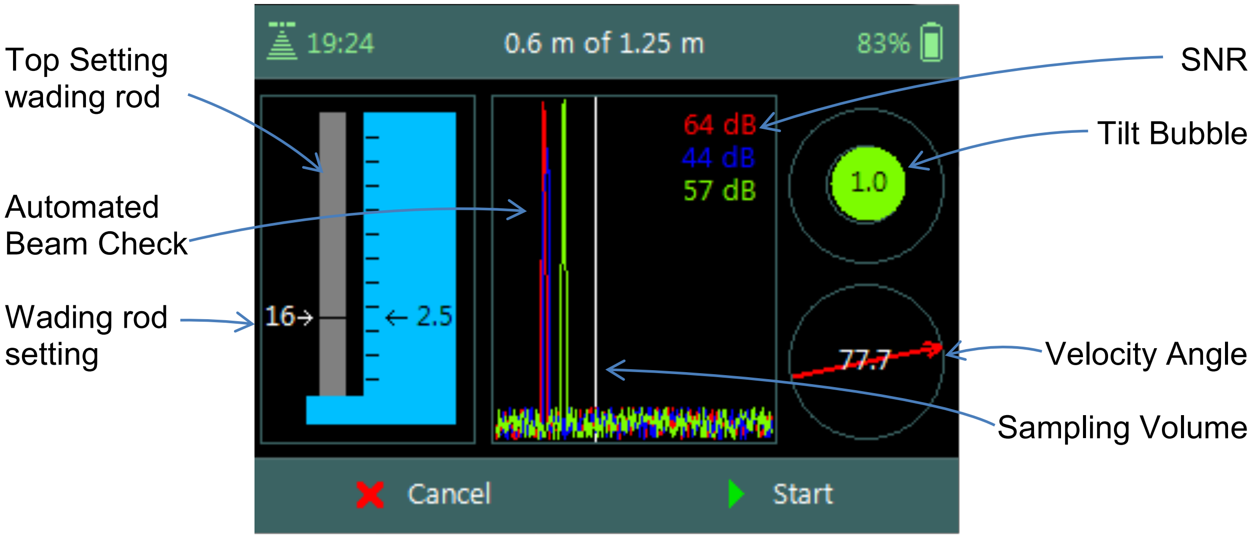


Figure 9:13 - Features of Setting Measurement Depth

The Sampling Volume of the instrument is defined by the white vertical line displayed on the Beam Profile plot in Figure 9:13. The location of the line is fixed and is based on the geometry of the beams. This is an excellent guide to indicate if the boundary is too close to the sampling volume.

Step 4

Velocity Measurement screen displays graphical display of raw data of the following variables during a velocity measurement,

a) Velocity,
b) SNR,
c) Temperature,
d) Battery,
e) Tilt,

Tilt and Velocity Angle indicators are situated on the right hand side of the screen.

f) Tilt,
g) Velocity Angle,
h) Averaging Time left.

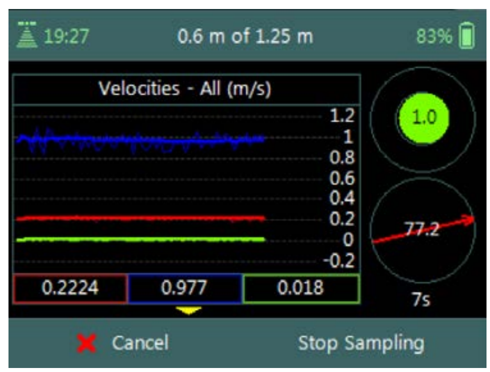


Figure 9:14 - Velocity Measurement

i) *To **select** a variable graphical display,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys.
j) *To **stop sampling**,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.
k) *To **CANCEL** velocity measurement,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

The conventions and graphic display features used for displaying Velocity and SNR raw data are defined under Raw Data Display.

9.3.2.2 Review Point Measurement

Review Point Measurement is a report supplied at the end of each point velocity measurement. The report consists of two components, tabular summary of numerical calculations performed on the raw data collected and graphical display of raw data.

Review Point Measurement screen consists of the following tabular summary and graphical displays,

Tabular Display

a) Review Point Measurement, Table 9:4

Graphical Display of raw data are based on the following variables,

b) Velocity,
c) SNR,
d) Temperature,
e) Tilt,
f) Velocity Angle,
g) Battery.

*h) To **select** a variable,*

i). Use the up or down arrow key to view a variable,

*i) To **accept** the velocity measurement,*

i). Press the Right Soft Key.

*j) To **REDO** velocity measurement,*

i). Press the Left Soft Key.

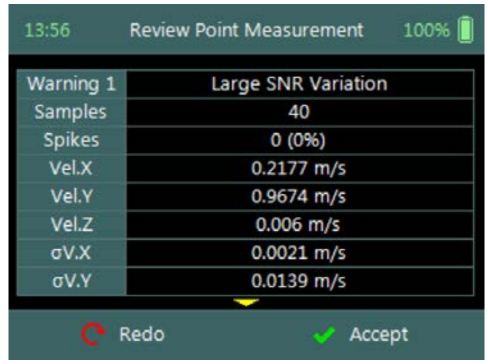


Figure 9:15 - Review Point Measurement

The conventions and graphic display features used for displaying Velocity and SNR raw data are defined under Raw Data Display.

Properties associated with the variable output from the numerical calculations performed on raw data collected is defined in Table 9:4,

Table 9-4 - Review Point Measurement

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Warning	Warning supplied based on quality control criteria	n/a	n/a
Samples	Total number of sample received	number	n/a
Spikes	Number of spikes removed from mean velocity	number	n/a
Vel. X	Mean X velocity component of all samples. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction applied (if applicable).	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Y	Mean Y velocity component of all samples. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction applied (if applicable).	m/s or ft/s	4

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Vel. Z	Mean Z velocity component of all samples. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction applied (if applicable).	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. X	Standard error of X velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. Y	Standard error of Y velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. Z	Standard error of Z velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
SNR. 1	Signal to noise ratio of Beam 1	dB	3
SNR. 2	Signal to noise ratio of Beam 2	dB	3
SNR. 3	Signal to noise ratio of Beam 3	dB	3
Angle	Flow angle relative to X direction	Degree	2
Bnd	Boundary QC value	n/a	n/a
Tilt	Mean wading rod angle during point velocity measurement	Degree	2
Temp	Mean temperature during measurement	°C or °F	2

9.3.2.3 Review Station Measurement

Review Station measurement is a tabular report that is available from the data collection window at the completion of point velocity measurement of a station.

Review Station screen consists of tabular summary of measurements performed at the station,

a) Review Station, Table 9:5.

*b) To **access** review station report,*

i). Select the station in the data collection window,

ii). Press the enter key.

*c) To **EXIT** review station report,*

i). Press the Left Soft Key.

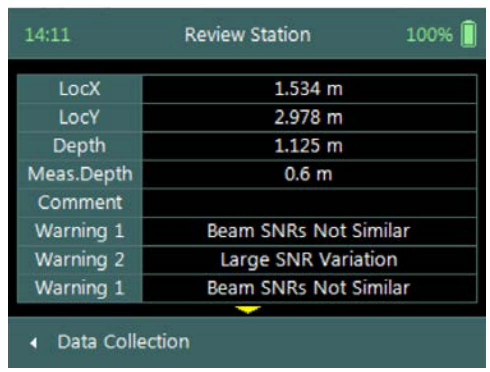


Figure 9:16 - Review Station

Properties associated with the variables and numerical calculations performed on the raw data collected at the station is defined in Table 9:5,

Table 9-5 - Review Station

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Loc X	Location X coordinate	m or ft	3
Loc Y	Location Y coordinate	m or ft	3
Depth	Measured water depth	m or ft	3
Meas. Depth	Velocity measurement depth	m or ft	3
Comment	Comment supplied before the measurement	n/a	n/a
Warning	Warning supplied based on quality control criteria	n/a	n/a
Samples	Total number of sample received	number	n/a
Spikes	Number of spikes removed from mean velocity	number	n/a

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Vel. X	Mean X velocity component of all samples. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction applied (if applicable).	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Y	Mean Y velocity component of all samples. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction applied (if applicable).	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Z	Mean Z velocity component of all samples. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction applied (if applicable).	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. X	Standard error of X velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. Y	Standard error of Y velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. Z	Standard error of Z velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
SNR. 1	Signal to noise ratio of Beam 1	dB	3
SNR. 2	Signal to noise ratio of Beam 2	dB	3
SNR. 3	Signal to noise ratio of Beam 3	dB	3
Angle	Flow angle relative to X direction	Degree	2
Bnd	Boundary QC value	n/a	n/a
Tilt	Mean wading rod angle during velocity measurement	Degree	2
Temp	Mean temperature during measurement	°C or °F	2
GPS - Latitude	GPS derived Latitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS	
GPS - Longitude	GPS derived Longitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS	

9.3.3 Station Measurement (Pressure Sensor)

Station Measurement is performed at each Station based on measurement requirements. The measurement locations can either be structured such in laboratory environment where the position of the instrument is determined accurately or random where velocities on channel banks are investigated. The station measurements consist of collecting a number of different parameters and variables required by the General mode.

9.3.3.1 Point Velocity Measurement

Point Velocity Measurement in General mode is not bound to any measurement techniques and or guidelines as required in Discharge mode. The location of the station, number of point velocity measurements and depth of point velocity measurements is dependent on the user requirements.

If the velocity measurements are used to perform hydraulic analyzes of the flow conditions in a channel, either a laboratory or natural channel, it is recommended that ISO 748 – 2007 guidelines are used.

Step 1

Station parameters defined for **Velocity Measurement,** e.g., parameters of station defined for velocity measurement are the following,

a) Location X: 1.534m,
b) Location Y: 2.978m,
c) Water Depth: 1,125m,
d) Measurement Depth: 0.6m,
e) Velocity Method: Two Point,
f) Comment.
g) *To **add** station and continue velocity measurement,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.
h) *To **CANCEL** a new station,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

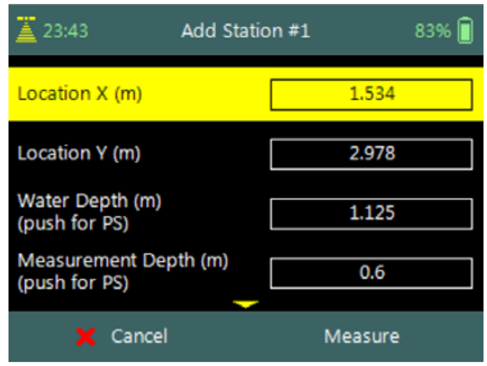


Figure 9:17 - Velocity Measurement

The water depth at each station can either be based on pressure sensor measurements or manually entered by the user. To perform pressure sensor measurement the Enter Key is pressed on the Water Depth and Measurement Depth parameter.

Step 2

Pressure Sensor (PS) Calibration allows the user to perform pressure sensor calibration. The screen is displayed before the first pressure sensor measurement is performed or when the **Air Pressure Cal. Period** expired.

a) *To perform PS Calibration,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.
b) *To **CANCEL** PS Calibration,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

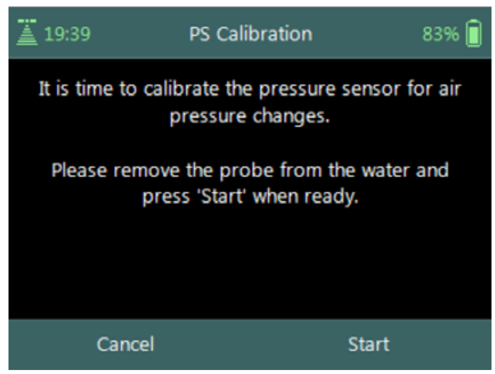


Figure 9:18 - PS Calibration

Step 3

Pressure Sensor (PS) Total Depth screen allows the user to perform depth measurement. The tilt sensor or bubble should be used to keep the instrument vertical.

a) *To perform Depth Measurement,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.
b) *To **CANCEL** PS Calibration,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

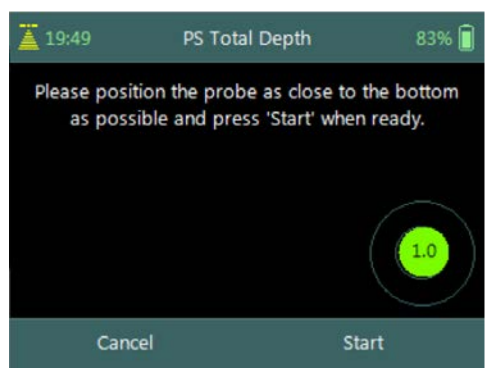


Figure 9:19 - PS Total Depth

The FlowTracker2 ADV Probe should be kept vertical during the pressure sensor measurements. Any angle on the probe will impact the pressure sensor measurements because the probe is off center of the wading rod.

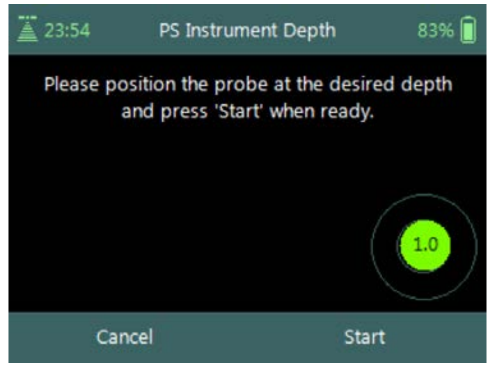


Figure 9:20 - PS Instrument Depth

Step 4

Pressure Sensor (PS) Instrument Depth screen allows the user to perform instrument depth measurement. The tilt sensor or bubble should be used to keep the instrument vertical.

a) *To perform Instrument Depth Measurement,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

b) *To* ***CANCEL*** *Instrument Depth Measurement,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

Figure 9:21 - Setting Measurement Depth

Step 5

Setting Measurement Depth screen allow the adjustment of the pressure sensor before velocity measurement is started,

a) Pressure Sensor Depth Guide,
b) Beam Check,
c) SNR,
d) Tilt,
e) Velocity angle.
f) *To* ***start*** *a velocity measurement,*
   ii). Press the Right Soft Key.
g) *To* ***REVERT*** *to measurement screen,*
   ii). Press the Left Soft Key.

The key features of the **Setting Measurement Depth** are explained in **Figure 9:22.**

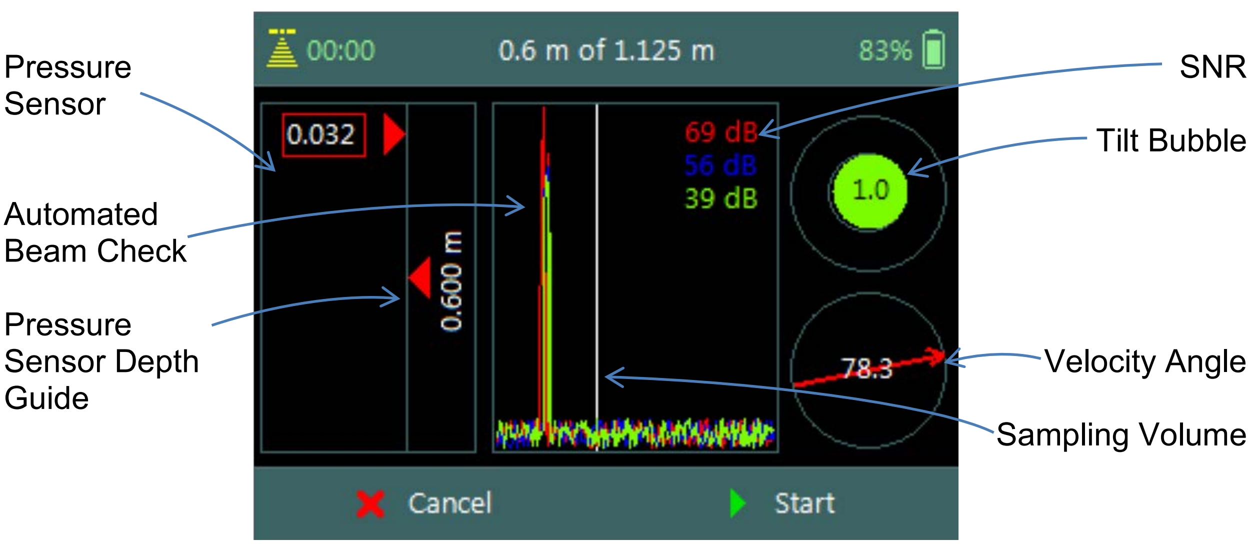


Figure 9:22 - Features of Setting Measurement Depth

The Sampling Volume of the instrument is defined by the white vertical line displayed on the Beam Profile plot in Figure 9:22. The location of the line is fixed and is based on the geometry of the beams. This is an excellent guide to indicate if the boundary is too close to the sampling volume.

Step 4

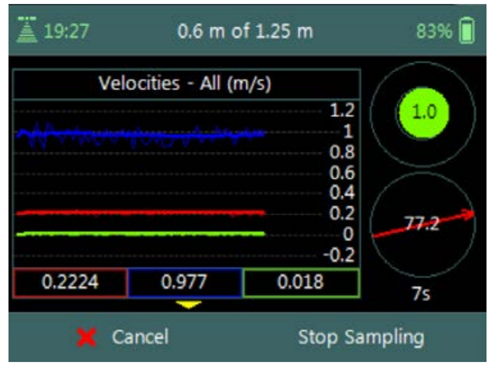


Figure 9:23 - Velocity Measurement

Velocity Measurement screen displays graphical display of raw data of the following variables during a velocity measurement,

a) Velocity,
b) SNR,
c) Temperature,
d) Tilt,
e) Vel. Angle,
f) Probe Depth,
g) Battery,
h) Pressure.

Tilt and Velocity Angle indicators are situated on the right hand side of the screen.

i) Tilt,
j) Velocity Angle,
k) Averaging Time left.

*l) To **select** a variable graphical display,*
   i). Use up or down scroll arrows keys.

*m) To **stop sampling**,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

*n) To **CANCEL** velocity measurement,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

The conventions and graphic display features used for displaying Velocity and SNR raw data are defined under Raw Data Display.

9.3.3.2 Review Point Measurement

Review Point Measurement is a report supplied at the end of each point velocity measurement. The report consists of two components, tabular summary of numerical calculations performed on the raw data collected and graphical display of raw data.

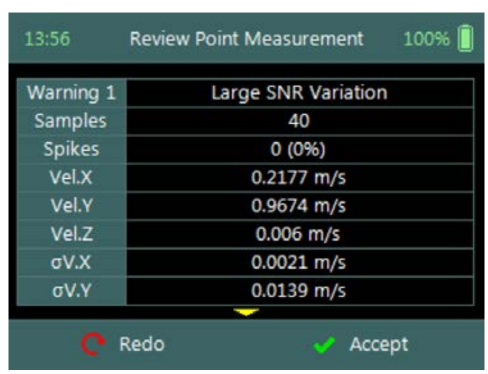


Figure 9:24 - Review Point

Review Point Measurement screen consists of the following tabular summary and graphical displays,

Tabular Display

a) Review Point Measurement, Table 9:6

Graphical Display of raw data are based on the following variables,

b) Velocity,
c) SNR,
d) Temperature,

e) Tilt,
f) Velocity Angle,
g) Probe Depth,
h) Battery,
i) Pressure.

*j) To **select** a variable,*
   i). Use the up or down arrow key to view a variable,

*k) To **accept** the velocity measurement,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

*l) To **REDO** velocity measurement,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

The conventions and graphic display features used for displaying Velocity and SNR raw data are defined under Raw Data Display.

Properties associated with the variable output from the numerical calculations performed on raw data collected is defined in Table 9:6,

Table 9-6 - Review Point Measurement

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Warning	Warning supplied based on quality control criteria	n/a	n/a
Samples	Total number of sample received	number	n/a
Spikes	Number of spikes removed from mean velocity	number	n/a
Vel. X	Mean X velocity component of all samples. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction applied (if applicable).	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Y	Mean Y velocity component of all samples. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction applied (if applicable).	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Z	Mean Z velocity component of all samples. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction applied (if applicable).	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. X	Standard error of X velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. Y	Standard error of Y velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. Z	Standard error of Z velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
SNR. 1	Signal to noise ratio of Beam 1	dB	3
SNR. 2	Signal to noise ratio of Beam 2	dB	3
SNR. 3	Signal to noise ratio of Beam 3	dB	3
Angle	Flow angle relative to X direction	Degree	2
Bnd	Boundary QC value	n/a	n/a
Tilt	Mean wading rod angle during point velocity measurement	Degree	2

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Temp	Mean temperature during measurement	°C or °F	2
Depth	Mean water depth from water surface during point measurement	m or ft	3
Pressure	Mean water pressure during point measurement	dbar	3

9.3.3.3 Review Station Measurement

Review Station measurement is a tabular report that is available from the data collection window at the completion of point velocity measurement of a station.

Review Station screen consists of tabular summary of measurements performed at the station,

a) Review Station, Table 9:7.

b) *To **access** review station report,*
   i). Select the station in the data collection window,
   ii). Press the enter key.

c) *To **EXIT** review station report,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

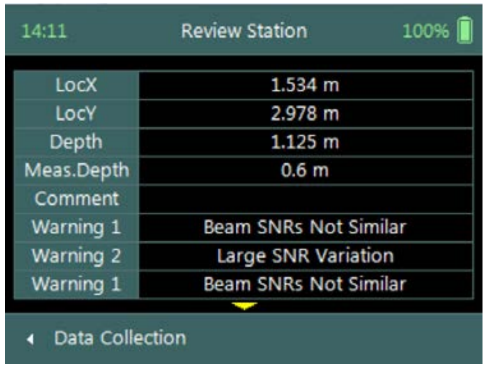


Figure 9:25 - Review Station

Properties associated with the variables and numerical calculations performed on the raw data collected at the station is defined in Table 9:7,

Table 9-7 - Review Station

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Loc X	Location X coordinate	m or ft	3
Loc Y	Location Y coordinate	m or ft	3
Depth	Measured water depth	m or ft	3
Meas. Depth	Velocity measurement depth	m or ft	3
Comment	Comment supplied before the measurement	n/a	n/a
Warning	Warning supplied based on quality control criteria	n/a	n/a
Samples	Total number of sample received	number	n/a
Spikes	Number of spikes removed from mean velocity	number	n/a
Vel. X	Mean X velocity component of all samples. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction applied (if applicable).	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Y	Mean Y velocity component of all samples. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction applied (if applicable).	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Z	Mean Z velocity component of all samples. Velocity is despiked and mounting correction applied (if applicable).	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. X	Standard error of X velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
σV. Y	Standard error of Y velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. Z	Standard error of Z velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
SNR. 1	Signal to noise ratio of Beam 1	dB	3
SNR. 2	Signal to noise ratio of Beam 2	dB	3
SNR. 3	Signal to noise ratio of Beam 3	dB	3
Angle	Flow angle relative to X direction	Degree	2
Bnd	Boundary QC value	n/a	n/a
Tilt	Mean wading rod angle during velocity measurement	Degree	2
Temp	Mean temperature during measurement	°C or °F	2
Depth	Mean water depth from water surface during point measurement	m or ft	3
Pressure	Mean water pressure during point measurement	dbar	3
GPS - Latitude	GPS derived Latitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS	
GPS - Longitude	GPS derived Longitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS	

9.3.4 Data Collection Menu

Data Collection Menu allows the user to adjust measurement settings, view measurement summary, perform automated beam check and complete the measurement. The data collection menu can be accessed between station measurements and this ensures that the instrument is configured for current flow conditions present.

Data Collection Menu screen consists of the following functions that are available in General Mode,

a) Settings,
b) Summary,
c) Automated Beam Check,
d) PS Calibration,
e) Complete Measurement,
f) Discard Measurement,
g) Go to Home Screen.

*h) To **select** a function,*

i). Use the up or down arrow key to scroll through the functions,

*i) To **open** or **CLOSE** the data collection menu,*

i). Press the Right Soft Key.

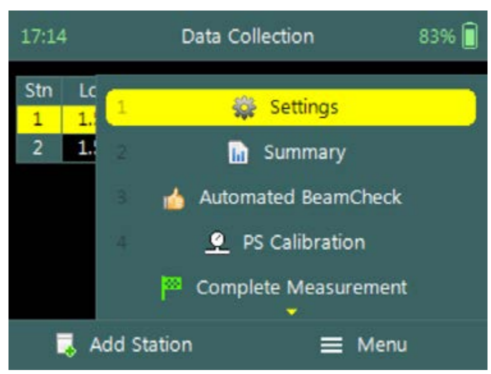


Figure 9:26 - Data Collection Menu

9.3.4.1 Settings

The **Settings** menu option gives the user access to the initial measurement settings that were configured during the configuration of the general template.

Settings screen consists of the following functions for configuring measurement settings,

a) File Properties,
b) Data Collection Settings,
c) Quality Control Settings.
d) *To select a function,*
   i). Use the up or down arrow key to scroll through the functions,
e) *To CLOSE the settings menu,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

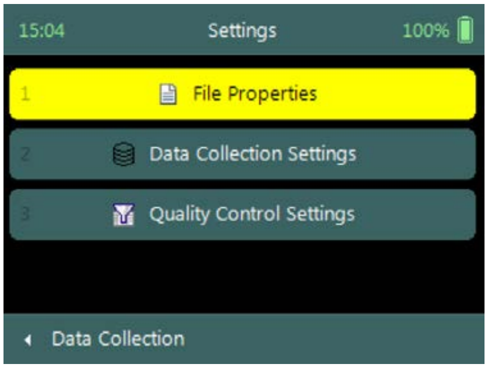


Figure 9:27 - Settings Menu

The measurement settings functions supplied in the Settings option in data collection menu are defined under Template Functions.

9.3.4.2 Velocity Summary

Velocity Summary from the data collection menu displays the mean velocity and other variables measured from all completed stations. The velocity summary requires at least one station with velocity measurements to populate the main variables in the table.

Velocity Summary screen consists of tabular summary of velocity and other variables measured up to specific point,

a) Velocity Summary, Table 9:8.
b) *To **close** the velocity summary report,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key,
   ii). The software will navigate to the Data Collection Window.

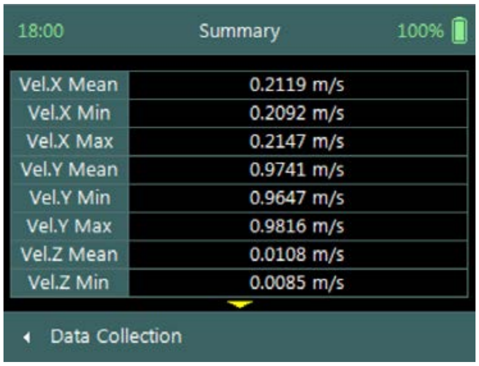


Figure 9:28 - Velocity Summary

Properties associated with the variables and numerical calculations performed on the raw data collected is defined in Table 9:8,

Table 9-8 - Velocity Summary

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Vel. X Mean	Average station velocity, X velocity component of all stations.	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. X Min	Minimum station velocity, X velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. X Max	Maximum station velocity, X velocity	m/s or ft/s	4

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
	component.		
Vel. Y Mean	Average station velocity, Y velocity component of all stations.	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Y Min	Minimum station velocity, Y velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Y Max	Maximum station velocity, Y velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Z Mean	Average station velocity, Z velocity component of all stations.	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Z Min	Minimum station velocity, Z velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Z Max	Maximum station velocity, Z velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. Mean	Average standard error, X velocity component of all stations.	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. Min	Minimum standard error, X velocity component of all stations.	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. Max	Maximum standard error, X velocity component of all stations.	m/s or ft/s	4
SNR Mean	Average SNR of all stations.	dB	2

9.3.4.3 Automated Beam Check

Automated Beam Check function in the data collection menu allows the user to perform beam check during any stage of the velocity measurement. The Automated Beam Check function operations, conventions and graphic display features are defined under Automated Beam Check.

Automated Beam Checks performed during the discharge measurement are stored in FlowTracker2 file (.ft) that was created for the measurement site.

9.3.4.4 PS Calibration (Pressure Sensor)

The **PS Calibration** function in the data collection menu allows the user to perform Pressure Sensor Calibration during any stage between point velocity measurements.

Frequent calibration of pressure sensor for atmospheric or air pressure changes during the measurement will improve the accuracy of pressure measurements. The variation in atmospheric or air pressure will impact the accuracy of pressure measurements.

Step 1

PS Calibration screen allows the user to perform pressure sensor calibration. The user is required to remove the probe from the water.

a) To perform PS Calibration,
i). Press the Right Soft Key.

b) To ***CANCEL*** *PS Calibration,*
i). Press the Left Soft Key.

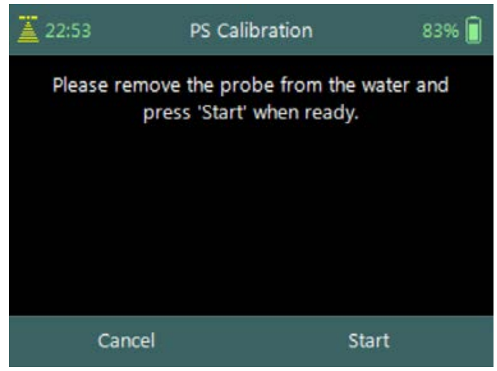


Figure 8:29 – PS calibration

Step2

PS Calibration screen with **Quality Control** warning messages based on quality control checks performed on measurement data.

a) To ***accept*** *quality control warning messages,*
i). Press the Right Soft Key.

b) To ***REDO*** *PS Calibration,*
i). Press the Left Soft Key.

Figure 8:30 - Warning Messages

9.3.4.5 Complete Measurement

The **Complete Measurement** function closes the measurement file and the user will not be able to add additional stations and or make any changes to the data captured. The complete measurement function is a three-step process, firstly to determine if the user is satisfied with the velocity measurements, secondly to perform quality control checks against all measurement data and lastly to review measurement summary.

The Complete Measurement process allows the user to review the measurement data before the complete function is selected at Summary screen. The user will not be able to make any to changes to the measurement file from the handheld when this function is selected.

Step 1

Confirmation screen of **Complete Measurement** function confirms if the user wants to close the measurement file. User will not be able to add stations or make any changes to the data

a) To ***confirm*** *complete measurement operation,*
i). Press the Right Soft Key.

b) To ***CANCEL*** *complete measurement operation,*
i). Press the Left Soft Key.

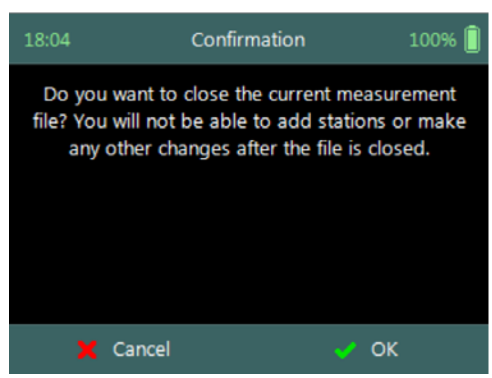


Figure 9:31 - Confirmation

Complete Measurement

Step2

Confirmation screen with **Quality Control** warning messages based on quality control checks performed on measurement data.

a) *To **accept** quality control warning messages,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.

b) *To **CANCEL** complete measurement operation,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

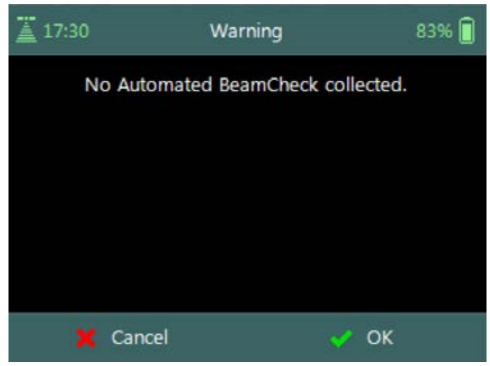


Figure 9:32 - Confirmation Quality Control Messages

Step3

Summary screen displays the velocity summary report before the measurement file is closed for further data entry and editing.

a) *To **confirm** complete measurement operation,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key,
   ii). The software will navigate to the Main Menu.

b) *To **CANCEL** complete measurement operation,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

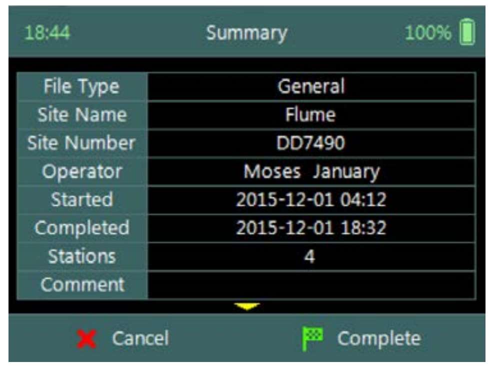


Figure 9:33 - Summary Discharge Measurement

9.3.4.6 Discard Measurement

The **Discard Measurement** function will discard all configuration settings, stations and other data related with the measurement.

Discarding a measurement will result in deleting all data of the measurement site that is related to the specific measurement file.

Warning screen of **Discard Measurement** function displays the warnings associated with discarding measurement file.

a) *To **DISCARD** measurement,*
   i). Press the Right Soft Key.
   ii). The software will navigate to the Main Menu.

b) *To **CANCEL** discard measurement operation,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

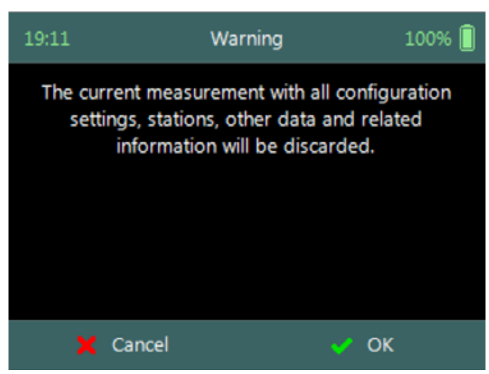


Figure 9:34 - Warning Discard Measurement

9.3.4.7 Go to Home Screen

The **Go to Home Screen** function will navigate the software to the main menu and the user will have the ability to access software functions that are not related to General Mode function.

The velocity measurements can be accessed during any stage by selecting the "Data Collection" function with the Right Soft Key. The software will continue with the measurement at the exact stage when the user navigated away from the general mode.

9.4. Measurement Summary

Measurement Summary is supplied when the Complete Measurement function is selected and displays all the measurement results. The Measurement Summary is the last verification of the measurement results before the measurement file is closed for any further measurements or changes.

Measurement Summary screen consists of tabular summary of velocity measurement results,

a) Velocity Summary, Table 9:9.

b) To ***CANCEL*** *the general summary report,*

i). Press the Left Soft Key.

ii). The software will navigate to the Data Collection Window.

c) To ***COMPLETE*** *the general measurement,*

i). Press the Right Soft Key.

ii). The software will close the measurement file and navigate to the main menu.

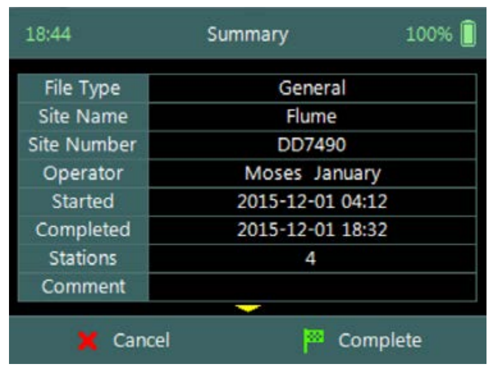


Figure 9:35 - Measurement Summary

Properties associated with the variables and numerical calculations performed on the raw data collected is defined in Table 9:9,

Table 9-9 - Measurement Summary

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
File Type	File type based on discharge or general mode	n/a	n/a
Site Name	Site name populated by user	n/a	n/a
Site Number	Site number populated by user	n/a	n/a
Operator	Operator name populated by user	n/a	n/a
Started	Start date and time when measurement was created	yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm	
Completed	End data and time when measurement was completed	yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm	
Stations	Total number of stations within the measurement	n/a	n/a

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Comment	General comment captured against measurement	n/a	n/a
Vel. X Mean	Average station velocity, X velocity component of all stations.	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. X Min	Minimum station velocity, X velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. X Max	Maximum station velocity, X velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Y Mean	Average station velocity, Y velocity component of all stations.	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Y Min	Minimum station velocity, Y velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Y Max	Maximum station velocity, Y velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Z Mean	Average station velocity, Z velocity component of all stations.	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Z Min	Minimum station velocity, Z velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
Vel. Z Max	Maximum station velocity, Z velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. Mean	Average standard error, X velocity component of all stations.	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. Min	Minimum standard error, X velocity component of all stations.	m/s or ft/s	4
σV. Max	Maximum standard error, X velocity component of all stations.	m/s or ft/s	4
SNR Mean	Average SNR of all stations.	dB	2
GPS - Latitude	GPS derived Latitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS	
GPS - Longitude	GPS derived Longitude	DDD° MM' SS.SS	

Section 10. FlowTracker2 Hardware

10.1. ADV Probe

The FlowTracker2 ADV Probe and internal sensors that were implemented specifications are listed in Table 10:1,

Table 10-1- ADV Probe Specifications

<table>
<tr><th colspan="3">Hardware</th><th colspan="2">Specification</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Velocity Range</td><td colspan="2">±0.001 to 4.0m/s (0.003 to 13ft/s)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Velocity Resolution</td><td colspan="2">0.0001m/s (0.0003ft/s)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Velocity Accuracy</td><td colspan="2">±1% of measured velocity, 0.25 cm/s</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Acoustic Frequency</td><td colspan="2">10.0MHz</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Sampling Volume Location</td><td colspan="2">10cm (3.93in) from the center transducer</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Minimum Depth</td><td colspan="2">0.02m (0.79in)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Depth Measurement Range</td><td colspan="2">0 to 10m (0 to 32.81ft)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Depth Measurement Resolution</td><td colspan="2">0.001m (0.003ft)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Depth Sensor Accuracy</td><td colspan="2">i). +/- 0.1% of FS (temperature compensated over full operating range),
ii). +/- 0.05% Static (steady-state at 25C),
iii). Additionally compensated for real-time water velocity, temperature, salinity, and altitude.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Temperature Sensor</td><td colspan="2">Resolution: 0.01°C, Accuracy: 0.1°C</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Tilt Sensor</td><td colspan="2">Accuracy: 1.0°</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Communication Protocol</td><td colspan="2">RS-232</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Temperature</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">Operating</td><td>Alkaline</td><td>-20° to 45°C (-4°F to 113°F)</td></tr>
<tr><td>NiMH</td><td>-20° to 50°C (-4°F to 122°F)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Storage</td><td colspan="2">-30° to 70°C (-22°F to 158°F)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Remove batteries from FlowTracker2 handheld if storage temperatures exceed the operating temperature of Alkaline and NiMH batteries as stipulated above.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">Physical Specifications</td><td rowspan="2">Probe Head Dimensions</td><td>No Pressure Sensor</td><td colspan="2">(L)13.3cm (5.22in); (W) 6.1cm (2.39in); (H) 2.3cm (0.90in)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pressure Sensor</td><td colspan="2">(L) 13.3cm (5.22in); (W)6.9cm (2.72in); (H)2.3cm (0.90in)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Standard Cable Length</td><td colspan="2">1.500m (4.92ft)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Weight in Air</td><td colspan="2">0.90kg (1.98lbs)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Weight in Water</td><td colspan="2">0.30kg (0.66lbs)</td></tr>
</table>

10.2. Handheld

The FlowTracker2 Handheld and internal sensors implemented specifications are listed in Table 10:2,

Table 10-2- Handheld Specifications

Hardware			Specification
Battery Power	Input Battery Voltage		8 - 12 VDC
	Power Supply	Alkaline	8 x size AA/LR6 Alkaline batteries
		NiMH	8 x size AA, Panasonic, Type BK200AAB, 1.2Vdc, 1900mAh
	⚠	The use of NiMH Rechargeable Batteries is only CE certified per IEC 62133 for FlowTracker2 part number FT2-HH-2 and above.	
	⚠	Only this type of NiMH rechargeable batteries with IEC 62133 approvals can be used, or else safety protection will be void.	
	Battery Life	8 x size AA	15 hours continuous use, typical settings*
		*Defined as power on with screen on at 100% brightness, ADV sensor pinging 50% of the time, GPS off, and no sleep periods. Actual battery life will vary depending on FT2 settings, manner of use and brand of battery.	
	Power Consumption		1 W (Average)
Direct Power (ADV Lab Probe only)	Power Supply		POWER SUPPLY ASSY, 12V, 20W, 1.67A
Coin cell	Type		*Coin Cell type is ML2020 Manganese Lithium*
GPS	Horizontal Position Accuracy		<2.5m (8.2ft)
	Frequency		L1 (1.575 MHz), SBAS compensation (WAAS, EGNOS, MSAS, GAGAN)
LCD	Resolution		320 X 240 TFT Trans missive
	LED Backlight Luminance		450 cd / m2
Probe Interface	Battery Power to Probe		8 - 12 VDC
	Direct Power to Probe		12 VDC
	Data Transfer		RS-232
	Data Storage		16 GB. Up to 10k discharge measurements. Up to 10 million velocity samples
Physical Specifications	Waterproof Rating		IP-67 (1m submersible)
	Handheld Dimensions		(L)10.4cm (4.1in); (W) 6.4cm (2.5in); (H) 23.7cm (9.3in)
	Weight in Air		0.75kg (1.65lbs)
	Weight in Water		-0.25kg (-0.55lbs)
Operating Altitude	Maximum operating altitude is 2000m		

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Hardware</th><th colspan="2">Specification</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Temperature</td><td rowspan="2">Operating</td><td>Alkaline</td><td>-20° to 45°C (-4°F to 113°F)</td></tr>
<tr><td>NiMH</td><td>-20° to 50°C (-4°F to 122°F)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Storage</td><td colspan="2">-30° to 70°C (-22°F to 158°F)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Remove batteries from FlowTracker2 handheld if storage temperatures exceed the operating temperature of Alkaline and NiMH batteries as stipulated above.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Bluetooth</td><td>Class</td><td colspan="2">Class 2, Range = 10m (32.8ft) nominal</td></tr>
<tr><td>FCC</td><td colspan="2">Intentional radiator (FCC Part 15.247 Subpart C; ANSI C-63.4-2003 RSS-210 and ISSUE No. :8 Date :2010)
a. FCC IDENTIFIER: S7AIW03
b. Labeling requirements (FCC ID on product & text in manual)
c. Drop in, use as intended from OEM – use OEM’s FCC ID (eg, FlowTracker 2 Bluetooth)
d. Modify use or signal/output – Analytics Site applies for FCC ID
• Takes 3-4 weeks through Nemko
e. Operate at specific frequency w/o interference
• Will require FCC license to operate</td></tr>
<tr><td>USB</td><td colspan="3">Micro USB, IP-67</td></tr>
</table>

10.3. Cables and Connectors

The FlowTracker2 cable and connector specifications are listed in Table 10:3,

Table 10-3- Cable and Connector Specifications

Hardware	Specification
Connector type	MCIL-8-MP wet-mate able
Standard length	1.500m (4.92ft)
Extension cable lengths	1.500m (4.920ft), 3.500m (11.5ft), 8.500m (27.9ft)
Maximum operating length	10m (32.8ft)

10.4. Certifications

The FlowTracker2 and all related hardware components comply with the following certification.

- For P/N FT2-HH-1

    - CE (per IEC/EN 61010-1:2010 3rd ed, EMC directive 2004/108/EC EN61326-1) for AA Alkaline batteries, FCC, IP-67

- For P/N FT2-HH-2
    - CE (per IEC/EN 61010-1:2010 3rd ed, EMC directive 2004/108/EC EN61326-1) for AA Alkaline batteries, FCC, IP-67
    - CE (per IEC/EN 61010-1:2010 3rd ed, EMC directive 2004/108/EC EN61326-1) for NiMH rechargeable batteries that are certified to IEC 62133*, FCC, IP-67

For further questions on certification standards, contact support@sontek.com. Approved batteries are discussed further in Section 4.3.1.

10.5. PC System Requirements

The PC System Requirements for operating FlowTracker2 desktop software are summarized under the following criteria,

- Microsoft Windows 7 or newer
- 1GHz processor or better (2 GHz recommended)
- 2GB memory (4GB recommended)
- 500 MB available disk space (1GB recommended)
- Monitor capable of 1024x768 resolution, or better

Section 11. Operational Considerations

The procedures outlined for operating of the FlowTracker2 instrument and the maintenance requirements should be followed to ensure that the instrumentation is in a working condition.

The user should follow operating instructions as outlined in this manual, failure to do so can void manufacturer's warranty.

11.1. Software Upgrade

The FlowTracker2 handheld and ADV are operating on unique software and firmware respectively developed specifically for the FlowTracker2 instrument. Periodic updates will be supplied by SonTek to users that are normally associated with either improvement on existing or new features. The periodic update will consist of FlowTracker2 installation file that includes the Desktop Software, Handheld Software and ADV Firmware files. The FlowTracker2 installation file will be available from the SonTek website (http://www.sontek.com) or by contacting SonTek Technical Support.

11.1.1 Upgrading Handheld Software

The upgrading of handheld software and or ADV firmware is performed by uploading a single firmware file with .ft_firmware extension onto the handheld from the FlowTracker2 desktop software. The handheld upgrade is a three-step process, firstly activate handheld communication function, secondly connect desktop software with handheld using either bluetooth or USB and lastly upgrade the handheld.

Step 1 - Handheld

Activate **Communication** function on handheld to allow the user to connect to FlowTracker2 desktop software using either bluetooth or USB.

a) *To select communication function,*
   i). Use the up or down arrow key to scroll through the functions,
   ii). Press the enter key to activate the communication function.

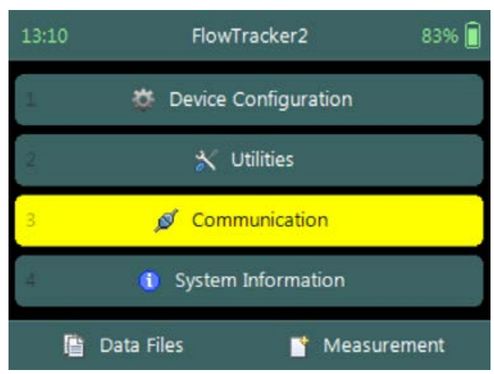


Figure 11:1 - Communication Function

The communication window displays the following instructions to enable connection between the handheld and FlowTracker2 desktop software,

a) Open FlowTracker2 desktop software,
b) Select "Device" menu option,
c) Is USB cable connected or Bluetooth enabled,
d) Select communication medium.

e) *To* ***CLOSE*** *the communication function,*
   i). Press the Left Soft Key.

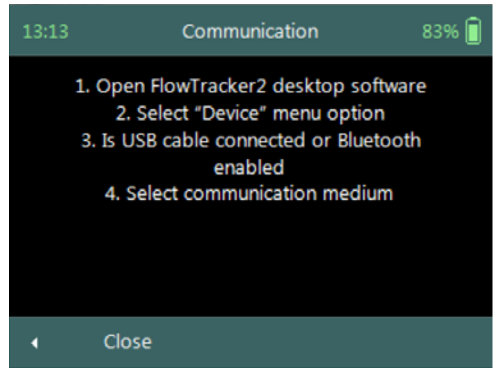


Figure 11:2 - Communication Window

Step2 – Desktop Software

Connect FlowTracker2 desktop software with handheld using either USB or Bluetooth communication.

a) ***Connect*** *to FlowTracker2 handheld Device,*
   i). Select "Device" menu option on main menu banner,
   ii). Connection window will appear on software window with USB and Bluetooth communication options.

b) ***Select*** *communication medium,*
   i). USB - Make sure USB cable is connected before USB option is selected,
   ii). Bluetooth – Select handheld serial number from dropdown list and select the "Connect" function.

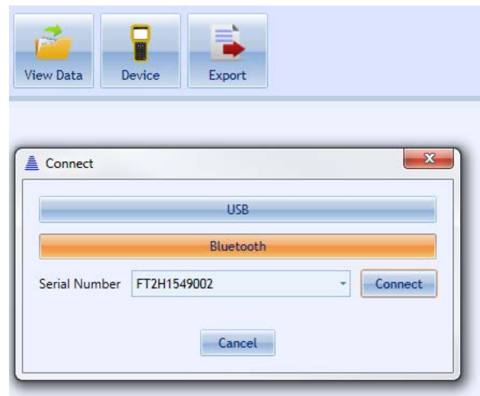


Figure 11:3 - Device Communication Window

If the handheld serial number is not listed, select the content in the box using mouse and start typing the serial number. When the serial number is entered, select "Connect" function. The desktop software will connect to the handheld using bluetooth and the serial number will be stored for future use.

Step3 – Desktop Software

Perform **Upgrade** of handheld software and or ADV firmware by selecting the upgrade function on the FlowTracker2 desktop software.

a) *Perform* ***Upgrade*** *of FlowTracker2 device,*
   i). Select "Upgrade" menu option,
   ii). Open file window will appear with the available firmware file.
   iii). Select the firmware file within the "Open File" window and select "Open" function.

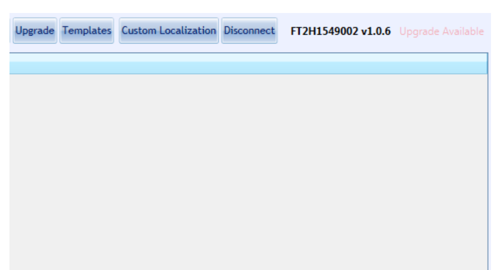


Figure 11:4 - Upgrade Function

b) *Upgrade progress* ***Status***
   i). The FlowTracker2 desktop software gives progress status in percentage of the upgrade.

11.1.2 **Upgrading ADV Firmware**

The ADV firmware upgrade is performed separately from the FlowTracker2 handheld software upgrade. The user is required to either request system information or initiate data collection from the ADV to activate the firmware upgrade process.

Requesting the **Probe System Information** under System Information (Main Menu)on the handheld is the most efficient way of activating the ADV to initiate the ADV firmware upgrade process.

11.2. Mounting and Installation

The FlowTracker2 is commonly mounted on a top-setting wading rod. The probe and handheld mounting have been designed with wading rod use in mind, but the design is flexible enough to allow a variety of mounting arrangements. Top-setting wading rods are available from SonTek.

11.2.1 **FlowTracker2 Handheld**

The handheld should be secured during operation and it is recommended that the handheld is mounted to the wading rod during measurements. If the FlowTracker2 is not in use, the handheld should be stored in the carry case supplied.

The protective yellow jacket that is supplied with the FlowTracker2 handheld should stay on during operation. The jacket supply protection to the handheld casing, battery cap, USB port and LCD screen.

11.2.2 **Handheld Mounting Bracket**

Top Setting Rod mounting bracket to connect the handheld to the top of top setting wading rod.

a) A mounting bracket compatible with the mounting pin on a top-setting wading rod is available from SonTek.
b) The handheld includes one threaded insert on the back, which secures the SonTek-supplied mounting brackets.
c) The handheld mounting simplifies the measurement process and allow the user to focus on the measurement and orientation of the probe.

Figure 11:5 - Top Setting Rod

Handheld Mounting

Universal Rod mounting bracket to connect the handheld to the universal wading rod.

d) A mounting bracket compatible with a 20mm universal-style wading rod is available from SonTek.

e) Neck/shoulder strap for the handheld which fits the threaded insert is available from SonTek.

Figure 11:6 - Universal Rod Handheld Mounting

The threaded insert can also be used to secure a user-supplied mounting bracket. The size of the threaded insert is ¼-20. User-supplied mounting brackets should avoid direct contact with the keypad and screen.

11.2.3 Probe Mounting Bracket

Top Setting Rod J-Bracket to connect the 2D or 2D/3D Flowtraker2 probe to the top setting wading rod.

a) The J-Bracket is available for mounting the probe from a top-setting wading rod. Both the bracket and complete wading rods are available from SonTek.

b) The J-Bracket offsets the probe to one side of the wading rod, placing the sampling volume closer to the wading rod, approximately 5 cm (2 in) to one side.

c) The bracket allows the wading rod to be used in its standard “forward” orientation.

Figure 11:7 - Top Setting Rod J-Bracket

Universal Rod J-Bracket to connect the 2D or 2D/3D Flowtraker2 probe to the universal wading rod.

d) A J-Bracket compatible with a 20mm universal-style wading rod is available from SonTek.

Figure 11:8 – Universal Rod J-Bracket

11.3. Routine Maintenance

11.3.1 **Battery Power Supply**

Batteries should be checked on a routine basis and it is recommend that the following tasks are performed during routine maintenance and or completion of measurement exercise,

a) The battery voltage level should be verified by using the battery raw data graphics displayed in Battery Indicator.

Batteries should not be left in the FlowTracker2 handheld for prolonged periods as damage can occur to the handheld if the batteries are leaking. It is recommended that batteries are removed from the handheld if the instrument is not used.

b) The use-by date should be recorded and referenced during routine maintenance and it is recommended that expired batteries should not be used in FlowTracker2.

Battery manufacturer guidelines must be followed during normal use, long term storage and charging requirements. The disposal of batteries must be done with care and it is recommended that local authority guidelines be used.

11.3.2 **Cleaning Instrument**

11.3.2.1 Handheld

The handheld will require some cleaning after use as the accumulation of dirt on the handheld can damage the component such as the LCD screen, USB port, probe cable connector and keypad. It is recommended that a cloth is used to wipe the handheld or soft brush.

In the case where the handheld was submerged under water or where it is covered in mud and need to be rinsed, the following guidelines should be followed,

a) Do not remove the probe cable or battery cap while the handheld is under water or drenched.
b) Use a dry cloth and remove excess moisture on the outside of the handheld.
c) Remove the “yellow Jacket” from the handheld casing and apply a dry cloth to the handheld casing.
d) Remove the probe cable and inspect if the connector pins are dry. This can indicate if there was water ingress into the connector.
e) Remove the battery cap and battery cartridge. Inspect both the battery cap and cartridge for moisture as this can indicate water ingress.
f) Remove batteries from battery cartridge and inspect for moisture.
g) Place handheld, battery cartridge, batteries and yellow jacket on a dry place (not in direct sunlight) and allow to dry.

If water ingress was identified during inspection in the battery compartment or probe cable connector contact SonTek. It is not recommended to use the instrument if there is moisture in the battery compartment.

11.3.2.2 Transducers

Biological growth on the transducers does not affect velocity measurements, but can decrease acoustic signal strength and potentially increase noise in velocity data in clear water.

a) Periodic cleaning of the FlowTracker2 transducers may be needed to maintain optimal performance in areas of high biological activity,
b) FlowTracker2 transducers are encapsulated in an epoxy that is impervious to damage from barnacles or other types of growth,
c) To remove growth, simply clean with a cloth or stiff (non-metallic) brush. The transducer epoxy is very durable and cannot be easily damaged except by direct impact.

11.3.3 **Cable Maintenance**

The FlowTracker2 probe cable is often the most vulnerable part of the system.

a) The cable uses a durable polyurethane jacket that provides excellent long-term wear and abrasion resistance,
b) Any cable is susceptible to damage and reasonable precautions should be taken,
c) Inspect the cable and all connectors on a regular basis,
d) This cable is highly noise-sensitive and should not be modified by the user.

11.3.4 **O-rings**

The FlowTracker2 handheld makes use of two O-ring seals and it is important that the following guidelines are followed.

11.3.4.1 Housing

a) The handheld is designed to withstand temporary submersion, but is not intended for underwater operation.

b) We do not recommend opening the handheld housing without specific instructions from SonTek.

11.3.4.2 Battery Cap

a) The O-ring located on the battery cap prevents moisture entering the battery compartment.

b) Inspection of the O-ring should be during Hardware Inspection for any cracks or defects that may exist on the O-ring.

c) The batter cap, O-ring and battery compartment must be inspected for any moisture, dirt or material that can damage the O-ring, battery or battery connectors.

11.3.5 **Condensation in FlowTracker2 Housing**

Moisture in the air can potentially damage FlowTracker2 electronics if allowed to condense inside the handheld housing.

a) The handheld is shipped with a desiccant pack inside to absorb moisture,

b) We do not recommend opening the handheld housing without specific instructions from SonTek. If the housing has not been opened, the desiccant should not need to be replaced.

11.3.6 **Zinc Anodes for Corrosion Protection**

When using the FlowTracker2 in salt water, additional precautions must be taken to prevent corrosion.

a) A sacrificial zinc anode should be installed on the probe (attached to the metal portion of the probe stem),

b) Anode condition should be inspected regularly, and the anode should be replaced when necessary. Zinc anodes are available from SonTek,

c) To check anode condition, try to chip away part of the anode with a screwdriver. If large portions of the anode easily fall away, the anode should be replaced,

d) The probe and cable should be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water after each use.

11.4. Seeding

11.4.1 Scattering Material

If FlowTracker2 velocity data appears “noisy”, the most common cause is a lack of scattering material in the water.

a) Acoustic Doppler Velocimeters require scattering material for velocity measurements (see Principle of Operations),

b) A lack of scattering material can increase noise in velocity data. If insufficient scattering material is present, the FlowTracker2 will not be able to accurately measure velocity,

c) In most field applications, there is sufficient scattering material naturally present,

d) Large, quiet laboratory tanks often have insufficient natural scattering material,

e) To evaluate seeding requirements, use the raw data display from the handheld interface,

   i). For ideal operating conditions, the SNR should be above 10 dB,

   ii). The FlowTracker2 can operate reliably with SNR as low as 3-4 dB.

f) A lack of scattering material can be remedied by adding seeding.

11.4.2 Field Applications

For field applications, seeding can be introduced by stirring the bottom (e.g., walking across the river upstream of the measurement location). In some situations, seeding material will need to be introduced. An ideal seeding material should have the following qualities.

- Neutrally buoyant (to remain in suspension for a long period),
- Mean particle diameter of 10-20 µm (for peak sensitivity of the acoustic signal),
- Inexpensive, readily available, with no adverse effects on the operating environment.

The best seeding material we have found (from an acoustics point of view) are hollow glass spheres with a mean diameter about 10 µm and a mean density close to that of water.

- Small quantities of this material are available from SonTek,
- Larger quantities can be purchased from the manufacturer at the address below,

Potters Industries
Valley Forge PA USA
Phone: +1-610-651-4700
Internet: www.pottersbeads.com
Part name: Potters Sphericel

For most applications, a more practical seeding material is lime or pulverized limestone (the chalk commonly used on athletic fields).

- Large bags are inexpensive and readily available from most hardware stores,
- While not perfect, the acoustic performance is sufficient for most applications,
- A variety of distribution arrangements can be arranged to seed even very large tanks,
- A note of caution: repeated addition will gradually increase the pH in a tank (in addition to creating a layer of lime/limestone on the bottom of the tank).

11.5. Troubleshooting

This section provides suggestions for diagnosing problems with the FlowTracker2. If you have trouble finding the source of a problem, please contact SonTek.

11.5.1 **Cannot Turn System On**

FlowTracker power-up problems are usually related to the power supply.

a) Check or replace the existing batteries.
b) Verify that all batteries are correctly oriented as shown on the battery holder.
c) Ensure the battery cap is threaded correctly and securely screwed-down.
d) Press the On/Off power button for at least one second.
e) Try to establish direct communication using USB cable.

11.5.2 **Cannot Communicate with the FlowTracker2**

If you are unable to establish external communications with the FlowTracker2 using the FlowTracker2 desktop software, the following may be helpful in identifying the cause.

11.5.2.1 Handheld

a) Verify the power supply of the FlowTracker2 handheld by reviewing the battery indicator in the top banner or Battery Data under Utilities menu.
b) The Communication function on the main menu must be selected.

11.5.2.2 Communication

a) If using USB connection,
   i). Inspect the cable and connectors for any defects,
   ii). Verify both cable connectors between the FlowTracker2 and PC are securely connected.
   iii). Verify the PC's USB port is functioning correctly by communicating with a different USB device.
   iv). If the communication is still unsuccessful use a different USB cable and or PC.

b) If using Bluetooth connection,

   i). Verify the PC's Bluetooth function is turned on and enabled.
   ii). In the FlowTracker2 software, ensure the instrument serial number is typed in correctly, in the "Connect" dialog box.
   iii). Ensure the FlowTracker2 and PC is within nominal range of each other (10m or 32.8 ft). If possible, decrease the distance between the FlowTracker2 and PC.
   iv). Verify the PC's Bluetooth is functioning correctly by communicating with a different Bluetooth device.
   v). If communication is still unsuccessful use a different PC.

11.5.3 **Cannot Retrieve Data from Internal Recorder**

- Verify through the FlowTracker2 handheld screen that the data files are present on the recorder.
- Ensure you are waiting an adequate amount of time for the download to complete. Download times can vary with computer hardware.

11.5.4 **Velocity Data Appears Noisy or Unreasonable**

If the velocity data from the FlowTracker2 do not seem reasonable, the following list may help establish the cause.

a) Lack of scattering material in the water is the most common problem (particularly in large laboratory tanks). See the FlowTracker2 Principles of Operation for details about seeding requirements.

b) Run Beam Check as described in Beam Check. This can address all aspects of FlowTracker2 operation, in particular, signal strength (scattering/seeding issues) and probe operation.

c) Inspect the FlowTracker2 to be sure debris is not fouling the probe.

d) Verify the FlowTracker2 mounting is stable and that instrument motion is not causing noise in the velocity data.

e) Consider any possible environmental influences, particularly flow interference from underwater structures or obstacles.

f) Consider the measurement environment. Highly turbulent or highly aerated water will greatly affect FlowTracker2 operation. In highly aerated water, the FlowTracker2 may not be able to operate reliably.

g) Consider the orientation of the probe with respect to the flow direction to be sure the probe is not causing flow interference in the sampling volume.

11.5.5 **Recovery Mode**

The FlowTracker2 handheld software has a "recovery" feature that is used in case the software becomes non-operational. Several precautions have been taken during the design process of the software to minimize the possibility of this occurring. The recovery mode process are described under the following steps,

a) Power the device ON,
b) Hold the '5' button,
c) Recovery mode will load (you need to keep holding '5' until it loads),
d) Recovery mode is only in English (not translated),
e) Enabled functions:
    i). Communication - use Desktop software to download files or upgrade handheld software and or probe firmware,
    ii). Reset to factory defaults - will format the SD card and return to factory state (all files will be deleted, the upgraded handheld software and or probe firmware will be erased as well).

11.6. Health and Safety

Safety in the work environment is a key requirement in most organizations and this also applies to the application of FlowTracker2 instrument. The following aspects need to be considered when planning to perform discharge measurements using FlowTracker2 instrument.

It is imperative that the user follow their respective organization and or local authority guidelines in Health and Safety requirements in the work environment.

11.6.1 Planning Field Work

Planning and developing a field trip itinerary is the first step of the discharge measurement process. The following components should be included in the field trip itinerary,

a) Contact number (mobile or satellite phone),
b) Personnel included in field trip,
c) Vehicle description (make, model, registration),
d) Departure and Return date from field trip,
e) Date of visiting measurement site and or group of sites,
f) Measurement Site Location and or Hydrographic Site Numbers,
g) Work to be performed at each measurement site,
h) Contact details of accommodation (if overnight destination is required)

11.6.2 **Communication**

Field communication is essential for operational purposes and it improves the Health and Safety process. It is suggested that the following criteria be followed where feasible,

a) Contact office before and after measurement is completed. Normally this is only required during flood events to inform the office that the measurements were completed and all personnel is safely off the water,

b) Contact office at scheduled times when staying overnight, e.g., 8am and or 4pm every day. This allows the field personnel to give feedback on fieldwork and or measurements, discussing additional work that need to be performed and verify health and safety aspects,

c) Property owners such as farmers, local authority, etc. require persons to acquire approval in advance before accessing their property. In certain cases it is also required to contact the property owner when departing and this need to be verified with the owner.

11.6.3 **Measurement Site Conditions**

Measurement site conditions encapsulate a number of hydraulic and physical factors that determines if it is feasible to perform a discharge measurement. The application of the FlowTracker2 instrument using the “wading” method is directly related to these conditions. The following are some aspects that need to be taken into account before a measurement is undertaken,

a) Total water depth,

b) Maximum water velocity,

c) Surface waves present,

d) Moving bed present(sediment or rocks)

e) Debris on water surface

f) Wild life (Alligators, Crocodiles, etc.)

If measurement site conditions are such that it is unsafe to perform a wading measurement with a FlowTracker2 instrument it is suggested that a different approach is taken in determining the discharge.

SonTek manufactures RiverSurveyor S5 and M9 instruments that are based on the Acoustic Doppler Current Profiler principle. These instruments can be used from multiple platforms such hydroboards, manned boats or remote control boats in the following discharge measurement methods,

Figure 11:9 – RiverSurveyor M9 – Moving Boat Method

i). Moving Boat Measurement,

ii). Stationary Measurement.

Section 12. FlowTracker2 File Format

12.1. FlowTracker2 JSON File

The FlowTracker2 measurement file was developed on the JSON format. The handheld and desktop software uses the FlowTracker2 measurement files structure (see Table 4:2) as the primary format for the storage of system information, configuration, raw data, calculations and post processing. The measurement files with .ft extension created from the FlowTracker2 handheld can be directly imported into the FlowTracker2 desktop software for evaluation and post processing if required.

The FlowTracker2 measurement file with .ft extension is essentially a ZIP file that combines the different JSON files created during the measurement.

Changing the extension from .ft to .zip should not be performed on the original FlowTracker2 measurement file. It is recommended that if this action is required a duplicate copy of the measurement file is created. It is expected that this action is only required by advanced users to extract the data in either a database or 3rd party evaluation software.

The FlowTracker2 measurement file consists of three different file types given below. The Beam Check and Point measurement files are placed in sub folders to separate from the main Data File.

a) Beam Check,

b) Point Measurements

c) Data File

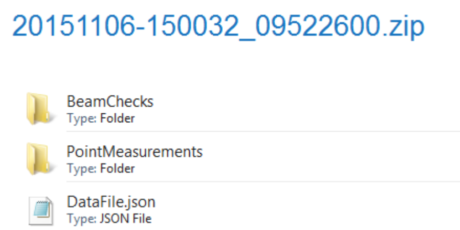


Figure 12:1 - FlowTracker2 Measurement File

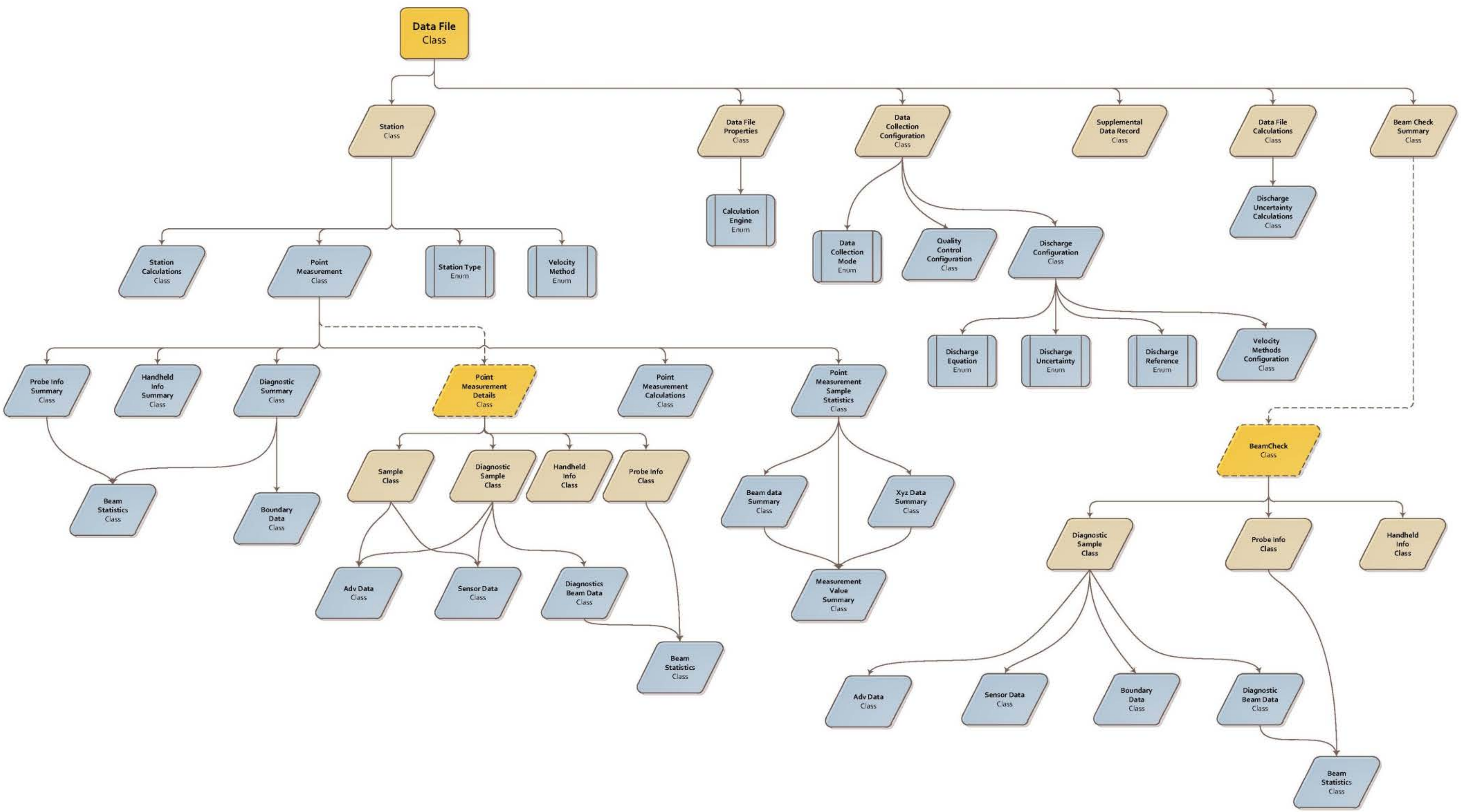
JSON file is created for each Beam Check and Point Measurement performed during the FlowTracker2 measurement and stored in respective sub folders. The number of point measurement files can be significant depending on the number of point velocity measurement performed in Discharge or General Mode.

KISTERS developed an import script for the FlowTracker2 measurement file (JSON) for both Hydstra and WISKI Time Series Data Management Systems. SonTek involved KISTERS from the initial development stage of the measurement file structure to ensure that the import of FlowTracker2 data is seaming less.

Further information on the JSON format can be accessed from the JSON website (www.json.org/).

12.1.1 **Measurement File Framework**

FlowTracker2 Measurement File Framework



12.1.2 Measurement File Structure

DataFile Main Tier	1st Tier	2nd Tier	3rd Tier	4th Tier	5th Tier	Base Type	Description
Properties: DataFileProperties	StartTime					DateTime	
	EndTime					DateTime	
	SiteNumber					String	
	SiteName					String	
	Operator					String	
	Comment					String	
	LocalTimeUtcOffset					TimeSpan	
	CalculationsEngine					CalculationsEngine	
Configuration: DataCollectionConfiguration	DataCollectionMode					DataCollectionMode	
	AveragingTime					TimeSpan	
	SamplingRate					Double	
	Salinity					Double	
	Temperature					Double	
	SoundSpeed					Double	
	MountingCorrection					Double	
	QualityControl: QualityControlConfiguration	SnrThreshold				Double	
		StdErrorThreshold				Double	
		SpikeThreshold				Double	
		VelocityAngleForWarning				Double	
		TiltAngleForWarning				Double	
	Discharge: DischargeConfiguration (optional)	DischargeEquation				DischargeEquation	
		DischargeUncertainty				DischargeUncertainty	
		DischargeReference				DischargeReference	
		MaxStationDischargeForCaution				Double	
		MaxStationDischargeForWarning				Double	
		MaxDepthChangeForWarning				Double	
		MaxSpacingChangeForWarning				Double	
		SixTenthsMethodDepth				Double	
		VelocityMethods: VelocityMethodsConfiguration	TwoTenthsSixTenthsEightTenths			Boolean	
			Kreps			Boolean	
			FivePoint			Boolean	
			SixPoint			Boolean	
			VerticalVelocityCurve			Boolean	
HandheldInfo: HandheldInfo							
Stations: List<Station>	Id					Guid	
	CreationTime					DateTime	
	Gps					GpsRecord (optional)	
	Location					Double	
	LocationY					Double (optional)	
	Depth					Double	
	Depth2					Double (optional)	

DataFile						**Base Type**	**Description**
Main Tier	**1st Tier**	**2nd Tier**	**3rd Tier**	**4th Tier**	**5th Tier**		
	StationType					StationType	
	VelocityMethod					VelocityMethod	
	ManualVelocity					Double (optional)	
	IceThickness					Double (optional)	
	WaterSurfaceToBottomOfIce					Double (optional)	
	WaterSurfaceToBottomOfSlush					Double (optional)	
	CorrectionFactor					Double	
	Comment					String	
	PointMeasurements: List<PointMeasurement>(optional)	Id				Guid	
		FractionalDepth				Double	
		DistanceFromBottom				Double	
		StartTime				DateTime	
		EndTime				DateTime	
		SampleStatistics: PointMeasurementSampleStatistics	OriginalVelocity: XyzDataSummary	X: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	
					Max	Double	
					Average	Double	
					StandardDeviation	Double	
					Count	Int32	
				Y: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	
					Max	Double	
					Average	Double	
					StandardDeviation	Double	
					Count	Int32	
				Z: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	
					Max	Double	
					Average	Double	
					StandardDeviation	Double	
					Count	Int32	
			DespikedVelocity: XyzDataSummary	X: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	
					Max	Double	
					Average	Double	
					StandardDeviation	Double	
					Count	Int32	
				Y: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	
					Max	Double	
					Average	Double	
					StandardDeviation	Double	
					Count	Int32	
				Z: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	
					Max	Double	
					Average	Double	
					StandardDeviation	Double	
					Count	Int32	
			Temperature:	Min		Double	

DataFile							
Main Tier	1st Tier	2nd Tier	3rd Tier	4th Tier	5th Tier	Base Type	Description
			MeasurementValueSummary	Max		Double	
				Average		Double	
				StandardDeviation		Double	
				Count		Int32	
			Pressure: MeasurementValueSummary	Min		Double	
				Max		Double	
				Average		Double	
				StandardDeviation		Double	
				Count		Int32	
			BatteryVoltage: MeasurementValueSummary	Min		Double	
				Max		Double	
				Average		Double	
				StandardDeviation		Double	
				Count		Int32	
			Tilt: MeasurementValueSummary	Min		Double	
				Max		Double	
				Average		Double	
				StandardDeviation		Double	
				Count		Int32	
			Pressure: MeasurementValueSummary	Min		Double	
				Max		Double	
				Average		Double	
				StandardDeviation		Double	
				Count		Int32	
			ProbeDepth: MeasurementValueSummary	Min		Double	
				Max		Double	
				Average		Double	
				StandardDeviation		Double	
				Count		Int32	
			Snr: BeamDataSummary	Beam0: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	
					Max	Double	
					Average	Double	
					StandardDeviation	Double	
					Count	Int32	
				Beam1: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	
					Max	Double	
					Average	Double	
					StandardDeviation	Double	
					Count	Int32	
				Beam2: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	
					Max	Double	
					Average	Double	
					StandardDeviation	Double	
					Count	Int32	

DataFile						Base Type	Description
Main Tier	**1st Tier**	**2nd Tier**	**3rd Tier**	**4th Tier**	**5th Tier**		
		Calculations: PointMeasurementCalculations	Warnings			QualityControlWarnings	
			Velocity			XyzData	
			VelocityStandardError			XyzData	
			FlowAngle			Double	
			Snr			BeamData	
			SnrStandardDeviation			BeamData	
			Samples			Int32	
			Spikes			Int32	
			Tilt			Double	
			BoundaryAvoidance			BoundaryAvoidanceStatus	
		Diagnostics: DiagnosticsSummary	Boundary: BoundaryData	BoundaryRange		Double	
				VelocityAmbiguity		Double	
				VelocityResolution		Double	
			Beams: ReadOnlyCollection<BeamStatistics>	NoiseLevel		Double	
				PeakLocation		Double	
				PeakLevel		Double	
		HandheldInfo: HandheldInfoSummary	SoftwareVersion:			String	
			WadingRod			WadingRod	
			Units			UnitType	
		ProbeInfo: ProbeInfoSummary	SerialNumber			String	
			FirmwareVersion			String	
			NumberOfBeams			Int32	
			NominalBeamStatistics: ReadOnlyCollection<BeamStatistics>	NoiseLevel		Double	
				PeakLocation		Double	
				PeakLevel		Double	
	Calculations: StationCalculations	Warnings				QualityControlWarnings	
		MeanVelocityInVertical				XyzData	
		MeanPanelVelocity				XyzData	
		Width				Double	
		Area				Double	
		Discharge				Double	
		FractionOfTotalDischarge				Double	
		Snr				BeamData	
		Temperature				Double	
		VelocityAngle				Double	
		BoundaryAvoidance				BoundaryAvoidanceStatus	
		Samples				Int32	
		Spikes				Int32	
		Tilt				Double	
		VelocityStandardError				XyzData	
SupplementalDataRecord: List<SupplementalDataRecord	Time					DateTime	
	GaugeHeight					Double	

DataFile						Base Type	Description
Main Tier	1st Tier	2nd Tier	3rd Tier	4th Tier	5th Tier		
> (optional)	RatedDischarge					Double	
	Temperature					Double	
	Salinity					Double	
	Comment					String	
Calculations: DataFileCalculations	Warnings					QualityControlWarnings	
	Area					Double	
	Discharge					Double	
	Width					Double	
	Velocity					XyzData	
	VelocityStandardError					XyzData	
	Depth					Double	
	Snr					Double	
	Temperature					Double	
	RatedDischarge					Double	
	GaugeHeight					Double	
	UncertaintyIso: DischargeUncertaintyCalculations	Accuracy				Double	
		Depth				Double	
		Velocity				Double	
		Width				Double	
		Method				Double	
		NumberOfStations				Double	
		Overall				Double	
	UncertaintyIve: DischargeUncertaintyCalculations	Accuracy				Double	
		Depth				Double	
		Velocity				Double	
		Width				Double	
		Method				Double	
		NumberOfStations				Double	
		Overall				Double	
BeamChecks: List<BeamCheckSummary>	Id					Guid	
	Time					DateTime	
	NumberofSamples					Int32	
	AutoQualityControlWarnings					QualityControlWarnings	
AirPressureMeasurements:List <PressureReading>	Time					DateTime	
	Pressure					Double	

Point Measurement Details					Base Type	Description
Main Tier	1st Tier	2nd Tier	3rd Tier	4th Tier		
Id					Guid	
SamplingRate					Double	
Samples: ReadOnlyCollection<Sample>	Time				DateTime	
	Adv: AdvData	Velocity			XyzData	
		Snr			Double	
	Sensors: SensorData	Temperature			Double	
		SoundSpeed			Double	
		Pressure			Double	
		Voltage			Double	
		Accelerometer			XyzData	
Diagnostics: DiagnosticsSample	Time				DateTime	
	Adv: AdvData	Velocity			XyzData	
		Snr			Double	
	Sensors: SensorData	Temperature			Double	
		SoundSpeed			Double	
		Pressure			Double	
		Voltage			Double	
		Accelerometer			XyzData	
	Boundary				BoundaryData	
	ProfileRange: ReadOnlyCollection				Double	
	Beams: ReadOnlyCollection<DiagnosticsBeamData>	Statistics: BeamStatistics	NoiseLevel		Double	
			PeakPosition		Double	
			PeakLevel		Double	
		Profile: ReadOnlyCollection			Double	
DataCollectionConfiguration: DataCollectionConfiguration (optional)						
HandheldInfo: HandheldInfo	SerialNumber				String	
	SoftwareVersion				String	
	BoardsInfo				String	
	CpuSerialNumber				String	
	OperatingSystem				String	
	Settings				Object (optional)	
ProbeInfo: ProbeInfo	InstrumentType				String	
	SerialNumber				String	
	FirmwareVersion				String	
	NumberOfBeams				Int32	
	IsPressureSensorPresent				Boolean	
	PressureSensorLocation				XyzData	
	ProbeBottomZ				Double	
	NominalBeamStatistics: ReadOnlyCollection<BeamStatistics>	NoiseLevel			Double	
		PeakPosition			Double	
		PeakLevel			Double	
	RawConfiguration				Object (optional)	
Spikes: ReadOnlyCollection					Int32	
AirPressure					Double	
SiteLocation: GpsRecord					Object (optional)	

Point Measurement Details					Base Type	Description
Main Tier	1st Tier	2nd Tier	3rd Tier	4th Tier		
ProbeDepths: ReadOnlyCollection					Double	

Beam Check

Main Tier	1st Tier	2nd Tier	3rd Tier	4th Tier	Base Type	Description
Id					Guid	
HandheldInfo: HandheldInfo	SerialNumber				String	
	SoftwareVersion				String	
	BoardsInfo				String	
	CpuSerialNumber				String	
	OperatingSystem				String	
	Settings				Object (optional)	
ProbeInfo: ProbeInfo	InstrumentType				String	
	SerialNumber				String	
	FirmwareVersion				String	
	NumberOfBeams				Int32	
	NominalBeamStatistics: ReadOnlyCollection<BeamStatistics>	NoiseLevel			Double	
		PeakPosition			Double	
		PeakLevel			Double	
	RawConfiguration				Object (optional)	
Samples: ReadOnlyCollection<DiagnosticSample>	Time				DateTime	
	Adv: AdvData	Velocity			XyzData	
		Snr			Double	
	Sensors: SensorData	Temperature			Double	
		SoundSpeed			Double	
		Pressure			Double	
		Voltage			Double	
		Accelerometer			XyzData	
	Boundary: BoundaryData	BoundaryRange			Double	
		VelocityAmbiguity			Double	
		MaxPingPrecision			Double	
	ProfileRange: ReadOnlyCollection				Double	
	Beams: ReadOnlyCollection<DiagnosticsBeamData>	Statistics: BeamStatistics	NoiseLevel		Double	
			PeakPosition		Double	
			PeakLevel		Double	
		Profile: ReadOnlyCollection			Double	
AutoQualityControlWarnings					QualityControlWarnings	

XyzData Main Tier	1st Tier	2nd Tier	3rd Tier	4th Tier	Base Type	Description
X					Double	
Y					Double	
Z					Double	

BeamData Main Tier	1st Tier	2nd Tier	3rd Tier	4th Tier	Base Type	Description
Beam0					Double	
Beam1					Double	
Beam2					Double	

GpsRecord Main Tier	1st Tier	2nd Tier	3rd Tier	4th Tier	Base Type	Description
DeviceTime					DateTime	
SatelliteTime					TimeSpan	
Latitude					Double	
Longitude					Double	
FixQuality					Int32	
NumberOfSatellites					Int32	
Hdop					Double	
Altitude					Double	
GeoidalSeparation					Double	

12.2. FlowTracker2 CSV Output

Comma Separated Values (CSV) file format is a basic output designed for easy access and interpretation of the data with the most common variables of FlowTracker2 incorporated.

The variables included in the CSV format are similar to Original FlowTracker2 ASCII exports and existing users will be familiar with the layout and content.

12.2.1 **CSV File Structure**

The **Comma Separated Values** files created during the export process consists of four CSV files, defined by unique file name that summarizes the content of the file as described in Table 12:1.

Table 12-1 - CSV File Types

File	Name	Description	Data Layout
ctl	Control	System configuration data	Rows
dat	Raw Data	Raw, one-second velocity and SNR data	Columns
dis	Discharge	Final data results in a self-explanatory form that is easy to integrate with database utilities	Rows, Columns
sum	Summary	Velocity and quality control data from all measurements	Columns

The layout of the data in each of the CSV files is organized based on Rows, Columns or a combination of both. The data descriptions for the Row or Column layout are defined in Table 12:2.

The Desktop Software Build Version is written in the first row of each CSV file independent if the file layout is based on Row or Columns. The units included for each variable in the CSV files are separated from the file name and data.

Table 12-2 - CSV Row and Column

Type	Number	Description
Row \ Column	1st	Row contain Desktop Software Build version
Column	2nd	Row contain the variable \ parameter name
	3rd	Row contain the units
	4th	Row contain the first data line
Row	2nd	Column contain variable \ parameter name
	3rd	Column contain the units
	4th	Column contain X component or Beam 1
	5th	Column contain Y component or Beam 2

12.2.2 **CSV Variables**

The **Variables** that are exported in each of the Comma Separated Values files are defined in the following tables with the variable name, description and applicability to either the Discharge or General Modes.

The **Control** file consists of all the system information for both the handheld and probe and the quality control parameter settings based on either default or user configuration. The variables exported in the control file are given in Table 12:3.

Table 12-3 - Control File Variables

Variable	Mode	Description
Desktop_Software_Build_Version	D, G	Version of desktop software
Number_Of_Stations	D, G	Station number
Start_Time	D, G	Start time of measurement
End_Time	D, G	End time of measurement
Local_Time_UTC_Offset_Hours	D, G	Local time offset for UTC in hours
Handheld_Serial_Number	D, G	Handheld serial number
Handheld_CPU_Serial_Number	D, G	Handheld CPU serial number
Handheld_Boards_Info	D, G	Handheld boards info
Handheld_Software_Version	D, G	Handheld software version
Handheld_Operating_System	D, G	Handheld operating system
Wading Rod	D	Type of wading rod
ADV_System_Frequency	D, G	ADV system frequency
ADV_Serial_Number	D, G	ADV serial number
ADV_Firmware_Version	D, G	ADV firmware version
ADV_Number_Of_Beams	D, G	ADV number of beams
ADV_Noise_Level	D, G	ADV noise level
ADV_Peak_Position	D, G	ADV peak position
ADV_Peak_Level	D, G	ADV peak level
Configuration_Data_Collection_Mode	D, G	Data collection mode
Configuration_Averaging_Time	D, G	Averaging time
Configuration_Sampling_Rate	D, G	Sampling rate
Configuration_Salinity	D, G	Salinity measured using external sensor
Configuration_Temperature	D, G	Temperature internal or external measured
Configuration_Sound_Speed	D, G	Sound Speed calculated or external measured
Configuration_Mounting_Correction	D, G	Mounting Correction in percentage
Configuration_Quality_Control_SNR_Threshold	D, G	SNR Threshold for quality control process
Configuration_Quality_Control_Std_Error_Threshold	D, G	Std Error Threshold for quality control process
Configuration_Quality_Control_Spike_Threshold	D, G	Spike Threshold for quality control process
Configuration_Quality_Control_Velocity_Angle_For_Warning	D, G	Velocity Angle for quality control process
Configuration_Quality_Control_Tilt_Angle_For_Warning	D, G	Tilt Angle for quality control process

Variable	Mode	Description
Configuration_Discharge_Equation	D	Discharge equation used for discharge calculation in measurement section
Configuration_Discharge_Reference	D	Specify type of external discharge used to reference discharge measurement
Configuration_Discharge_Quality_Control_Max_Station_Discharge_For_Warning	D	Max station discharge for quality control process
Configuration_Discharge_Quality_Control_Max_Depth_Change_For_Warning	D	Max depth change for quality control process
Configuration_Discharge_Quality_Control_Max_Spacing_Change_For_Warning	D	Max spacing change for quality control process
Configuration_Discharge_Velocity_Methods	D	Discharge velocity methods used in determining mean velocity

The **Raw Data** file consists of the one second velocity, SNR and acceleration data with date and time stamp. The variables exported in the raw data file are given in Table 12:4.

Table 12-4 - Raw Data File Variables

Variable	Mode	Description
#	D, G	Burst or measurements number
Year	D, G	Year
Month	D, G	Month
Day	D, G	Day
Hour	D, G	Hour
Minute	D, G	Minute
Second	D, G	Second
VelX	D, G	Raw 1 second X velocity
VelY	D, G	Raw 1 second Y velocity
VelZ	D, G	Raw 1 second Z velocity
SNR1	D, G	Signal-to-Noise Ratio beam 1
SNR2	D, G	Signal-to-Noise Ratio beam 2
SNR3	D, G	Signal-to-Noise Ratio beam 3
AccX	D, G	Raw 1 second X acceleration
AccY	D, G	Raw 1 second Y acceleration
AccZ	D, G	Raw 1 second Z acceleration

The **Discharge** file consists of system information, site details, quality control checks, Beam Checks, uncertainty calculations, supplemental data and all station data related to discharge measurement. The variables exported in the discharge file are given in Table 12:5.

Table 12-5 - Discharge File Variables

Variable	Mode	Description
Desktop_Software_Build_Version	D, G	Version of desktop software
Site_Name	D, G	Name of measurement site

Variable	Mode	Description
Site_Number	D, G	Number of measurement site
Local_Start_Time	D, G	Local start time of measurement
Local_End_Time	D, G	Local end time of measurement
Local_Time_UTC_Offset_Hours	D, G	Local time offset for UTC in hours
Operator	D, G	Operator
Handheld_Serial_Number	D, G	Serial number of handheld
Handheld_Software_Version	D, G	Software version of handheld
Wading Rod	D	Type of wading rod
Handheld_Units_System	D, G	Metric or English
Number_Of_Probes	D, G	Number of ADV used during measurement. Software allows user to interchange ADV during measurement
ADV_Serial_Number	D, G	Serial number of ADV
ADV_Firmware_Version	D, G	Firmware version of ADV
ADV_Number_Of_Beams	D, G	Number of beams
Comment	D, G	Comment entry field
Calculations_Engine	D, G	Calculation engine
Number_Of_Stations	D, G	Number of stations in a measurement
Discharge_Equation	D	Discharge equation used for calculation
Rated_Discharge	D	Rated flow based on measuring site stage discharge relationship
Rated_Height	D	Gauge Height taken for water level reference
Minimum_Boundary_Status	D, G	Undefined or lowest of boundary conditions found
Total_Width	D	Total width of measurement section
Total_Area	D	Total area of measurement section
Total_Discharge	D	Total discharge of measurement
Mean_Depth	D, G	Average depth of the section
Mean_Velocity_Vx	D	The area-weighted panel velocity averaged over the entire section for X velocity
	G	Mean Vx is the mean of the X velocity of all point velocity measurements.
Mean_Velocity_Vy	D	The area-weighted panel velocity averaged over the entire section for Y velocity
	G	Mean Vy is the mean of the Y velocity of all point velocity measurements.
Mean_Velocity_Vz	D	The area-weighted panel velocity averaged over the entire section for Z velocity
	G	Mean Vz is the mean of the Z velocity of all point velocity measurements.
Mean_SNR	D, G	Mean SNR of all point velocity measurements
Mean_VxErr	D	Mean Vx Standard Error of each station X velocity standard error.
	G	Mean Vx Standard Error is the mean of the X velocity standard error of all point velocity measurements.
Mean_VyErr	D	Mean Vy Standard Error of each station Y velocity

Variable	Mode	Description
		standard error.
	G	Mean Vy Standard Error is the mean of the Y velocity standard error of all point velocity measurements.
Mean_VzErr	D	Mean Vz Standard Error of each station Z velocity standard error.
	G	Mean Vz Standard Error is the mean of the Z velocity standard error of all point velocity measurements.
Mean_Temp	D	Mean Temperature is the mean of all the station temperature measurements
	G	Mean Temperature of all point temperature measurements
Quality_Control_Checks	D, G	**Quality_Control_Checks**
Station_Spacing	D	Spacing between stations has changed by more than Max Location Change **%.**
Station_Order	D	Station location out of sequence or outside river edge.
Water_Depth	D, G	Station depth differs from adjacent stations by more than Max Depth Change **%.**
Boundary_Interference	D, G	Evaluates the measurement environment for interference from underwater obstacles
Fractional_Depth	D	Verify ratio between measurement depth and total depth and this should not >1
Low_SNR	D, G	Warning if SNR below 4dB
Approaching_Low_SNR	D, G	Warning if SNR between 4dB and 7 dB
Beam_SNRs_Not_Similar	D, G	Difference in SNR for any 2 beams is > SNR Threshold
Large_SNR_Variation	D, G	One-second SNR data varies more than expected during a measurement along a single beam.
SNR_Threshold_Variation	D	SNR more than SNR Threshold different previous measurements
Velocity_Standard_Error	D, G	σV (standard error of velocity) is a direct measure of the accuracy of velocity data.
Percent_Of_Spikes	D, G	The percentage of spikes within a point velocity measurement.
Velocity_Angle	D, G	The flow angle towards the ADV.
Rod_Angle	D, G	The angle of the wading rod from the vertical
Station_Discharge	D	Station contains a large portion of the total discharge.
End_Edge_Location	D	Station location out of sequence or outside river edge.
Noise_Level	D, G	Shows the electronics noise level for the receiver of each beam
Peak_Location	D, G	The physical location of the sampling volume
Peak_Shape	D, G	The shape of the sampling volume
Pre_Calculation_Validation	D, G	Consistency check on station data (e.g. edges, island edges, etc.)

Variable	Mode	Description
Discharge_Uncertainty_ISO	D	**Discharge_Uncertainty_ISO**
Overall	D	Overall
Accuracy	D	Accuracy
Depth	D	Depth
Velocity	D	Velocity
Width	D	Width
Method	D	Method
#_Stations	D	Number of Stations
Discharge_Uncertainty_IVE	D	**Discharge_Uncertainty_IVE**
Overall	D	Overall
Accuracy	D	Accuracy
Depth	D	Depth
Velocity	D	Velocity
Width	D	Width
Supplemental_Data	D	**Supplemental_Data**
Record_Number	D	Sequence number assigned to each data entry
Date_And_Time	D, G	Date and time when the supplement data was recorded.
Gauge_Height (m)	D, G	Gauge height reading
Rated_Discharge (m^3/s)	D, G	Rated flow based on stage discharge relationship
Comments	D, G	Comments regarding supplement data
Automated_BeamCheck	D, G	**Automated_BeamCheck**
Record_Number	D, G	Sequence number assigned to each automated beam check.
Date_And_Time	D, G	Date and time of automated beam check.
Noise_Level_Check	D, G	Measured electronics noise level is compared to reference data.
SNR_Check	D, G	The SNR is checked as sufficient for reliable data collection
Peak_Location_Check	D, G	The physical location of the sampling volume is compared to the expected location
Peak_Shape_Check	D, G	The shape of the sampling volume curve is compared to the expected shape.
Station Data	D, G	**Station Data**
St	D, G	Station number
Clock	D, G	Measurement time from FlowTracker2 clock
GPSLat	D, G	GPS Latitude
GPSLon	D, G	GPS Longitude
Loc	D, G	Station location
LocY	D, G	Station location Y
FinalD	D, G	Mid and Mean Section methods, same as Depth. Japanese method, average of Depth and Depth2
IceD	D, G	Ice thickness
WsIceD	D, G	Water surface to bottom of ice
WsSlushD	D, G	Water surface to bottom of slush

Variable	Mode	Description
%Dep	D, G	Measurement depth location, as fraction of the effective depth
MeasD	D, G	Point measurement depth, measured form the water surface
Npts	D, G	Number of samples in measurement; one sample collected per second
Spike	D, G	Number of spikes removed before calculating mean values
VelX	D, G	Mean X velocity component of point velocity measurement
VelY	D, G	Mean Y velocity component of point velocity measurement
VelZ	D, G	Mean Z velocity component of point velocity measurement
Angle	D, G	Velocity angle calculated as atan (Vy/Vx)
VxErr	D, G	Standard error of X velocity
VyErr	D, G	Standard error of Y velocity
VzErr	D, G	Standard error of Z velocity
SNR1	D, G	Signal-to-Noise Ratio beam 1
SNR2	D, G	Signal-to-Noise Ratio beam 2
SNR3	D, G	Signal-to-Noise Ratio beam 3
Bnd	D, G	Boundary QC measurement
Temp	D, G	Water temperature
CorrFact	D, G	Correction factor used to scale mean station velocity
Tilt	D, G	Mean wading rod angle during point velocity measurement
MeanV	D	Mean panel velocity based on panel discharge and area.
	G	Mean V is the mean of the X velocity of all point velocity measurements.
Area	D	Station area
Flow	D	Station discharge
%Q	D	Percent of total discharge

The **Summary** file consists of the velocity method, velocity, SNR and standard error data of each point velocity measurement. The variables exported in the summary file are given in Table 12:6.

Table 12-6 - Summary File Variables

Variable	Mode	Description
Desktop_Software_Build_Version	D, G	Version of desktop software
#	D, G	Burst or measurements number

Variable	Mode	Description
St	D, G	Station Number
Method	D, G	Discharge Measurement Method
%Dep	D, G	Measurement depth location, as fraction of the effective depth
MeasD	D, G	Point measurement depth, measured form the water surface
Npts	D, G	Number of samples in measurement; one sample collected per second
Spike	D, G	Number of spikes removed before calculating mean values
CorrFact	D, G	Correction factor used to scale mean station velocity
Loc	D, G	Station location
LocY	D, G	Station location Y
Depth1	D, G	Total Water Depth1
Depth2	D, G	Total Water Depth2
FinalD	D, G	Mid and Mean Section methods, same as Depth. Japanese method, average of Depth and Depth2
IceD	D, G	Ice thickness
WsIceD	D, G	Water surface to bottom of ice
WsSlushD	D, G	Water surface to bottom of slush
VelX	D, G	Mean X velocity component of point velocity measurement
VelY	D, G	Mean Y velocity component of point velocity measurement
VelZ	D, G	Mean Z velocity component of point velocity measurement
Angle	D, G	Velocity angle calculated as atan (Vy/Vx)
VxErr	D, G	Standard error of X velocity
VyErr	D, G	Standard error of Y velocity
VzErr	D, G	Standard error of Z velocity
SNR1	D, G	Signal-to-Noise Ratio beam 1
SNR2	D, G	Signal-to-Noise Ratio beam 2
SNR3	D, G	Signal-to-Noise Ratio beam 3
SNRStd1	D, G	Standard Deviation of Signal-to-Noise Ratio beam 1
SNRStd2	D, G	Standard Deviation of Signal-to-Noise Ratio beam 2
SNRStd3	D, G	Standard Deviation of Signal-to-Noise Ratio beam 3
Temp	D, G	Water temperature
Batt	D, G	Battery Voltage
Tilt	D, G	Mean wading rod angle during point velocity

Variable	Mode	Description
		measurement

12.3. Original FlowTracker ASCII vs JSON

Data File			Variable	Comment
Next of Kin	Variable	Base Type		
Properties: DataFileProperties	StartTime	DateTime	DIS.StartDateAndTime	
	EndTime	DateTime	last DAT.ymdhms, or other	
	SiteNumber	String	--	
	SiteName	String	DIS.SiteName	
	Operator	String	DIS.Operators	
	Comment	String		
	LocalTimeUtcOffset	TimeSpan		
	CalculationsEngine	CalculationsEngine	CalculationsEngine FlowTracker1	
Configuration: DataCollectionConfiguration	DataCollectionMode	DataCollectionMode	CTL.KeypadMode	
	AveragingTime	TimeSpan	CTL.SamplesPerBurst	
	SamplingRate	Double	CTL.SampleInterval	
	Salinity	Double	CTL.DefaultSalinity	
	Temperature	Double	CTL.DefaultTemperature, or NaN if CTL.TemperatureMode is MEASURED	
	SoundSpeed	Double	CTL.DefaultSoundSpeed, or NaN if CTL.TemperatureMode is MEASURED	
	MountingCorrection	Double	CTL.MountingCorrection	
QualityControl: QualityControlConfiguration	SnrThreshold	Double	--	
	StdErrorThreshold	Double	--	
	SpikeThreshold	Double	--	
	VelocityAngleForWarning	Double	--	
	TiltAngleForWarning	Double	--	
Discharge: DischargeConfiguration (optional)	DischargeEquation	DischargeEquation	DIS.DischargeEquation	
	DischargeUncertainty	DischargeUncertainty	--	Not exported (not useful)
	DischargeReference	DischargeReference	DIS.Rated if any supplemental data recs, else Measured	
	MaxStationDischargeForCaution	Double		
	MaxStationDischargeForWarning	Double	--	
	MaxDepthChangeForWarning	Double	--	
	MaxSpacingChangeForWarning	Double	--	
VelocityMethods: VelocityMethodsConfiguration	TwoTenthsSixTenthsEightTenths	Boolean	--	
	Kreps	Boolean	--	
	FivePoint	Boolean	--	

Data File Next of Kin	Variable	Base Type	Variable	Comment
	SixPoint	Boolean	--	
	VerticalVelocityCurve	Boolean	--	
HandheldInfo: HandheldInfo			--	
Stations: List<Station>	Id	Guid	--	Not exported
	CreationTime	DateTime	DIS.StartDateAndTime plus first DIS.Clock	Exported when no point measurements at this station.
	Gps	GpsRecord (optional)	--	Only GPS lat/lon exported
	Location	Double	SUM.Loc (or DIS.Loc) (General mode: SUM.Loc1 or DIS.Loc1)	
	LocationY	Double (optional)	SUM.Loc2 or DIS.Loc2	
	Depth	Double	DIS.Depth or DIS.Depth1	Only final depth exported
	Depth2	Double (optional)	DIS.Depth2	Only final depth exported
	StationType	StationType	uses DIS.IceD, DIS.NPts, and DIS.Vel to decide	Not exported
	VelocityMethod	VelocityMethod	Guessed from DIS.FractionalDepth and DIS.Vel	
	ManualVelocity	Double (optional)	Guessed from DIS.FractionalDepth and DIS.Vel	Not exported separately but can be inferred
	IceThickness	Double (optional)	DIS.IceD	
	WaterSurfaceToBottomOfIce	Double (optional)	DIS.IceD	
	WaterSurfaceToBottomOfSlush	Double (optional)	--	
	CorrectionFactor	Double	DIS.CorrFact	
	Comment	String	--	Not exported
PointMeasurements: List<PointMeasurement>>(optional)	Id	Guid	--	Not exported
	FractionalDepth	Double	DIS.FractionalDepth	
	DistanceFromBottom	Double	DIS.MeasD	Distance from water surface exported
	StartTime	DateTime	first DAT.ymdhms	
	EndTime	DateTime	last DAT.ymdhms	Not exported
OriginalVelocity: X: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Max	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Average	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	StandardDeviation	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Count	Int32	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
OriginalVelocity: Y: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Max	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Average	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	StandardDeviation	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Count	Int32	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
OriginalVelocity: Z: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Max	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Average	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported

Data File			Variable	Comment
Next of Kin	Variable	Base Type		
	StandardDeviation	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Count	Int32	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
DespikedVelocity: X: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Max	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Average	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Export
	StandardDeviation	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Count	Int32	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
DespikedVelocity: Y: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Max	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Average	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Export
	StandardDeviation	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Count	Int32	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
DespikedVelocity: Z: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Max	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Average	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Export
	StandardDeviation	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Count	Int32	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
Temperature: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Max	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Average	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Export
	StandardDeviation	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Count	Int32	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
Pressure: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	--	Not exported
	Max	Double	--	Not exported
	Average	Double	--	Not exported
	StandardDeviation	Double	--	Not exported
	Count	Int32	--	Not exported
BatteryVoltage: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Max	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Average	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Export
	StandardDeviation	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Count	Int32	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
Tilt: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	--	Not exported
	Max	Double	--	Not exported
	Average	Double	--	Export
	StandardDeviation	Double	--	Not exported
	Count	Int32	--	Not exported
Pressure:	Min	Double	--	Not exported

Data File			Variable	Comment
Next of Kin	Variable	Base Type		
MeasurementValueSummary	Max	Double	--	Not exported
	Average	Double	--	Export
	StandardDeviation	Double	--	Not exported
	Count	Int32	--	Not exported
ProbeDepth: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	--	Not exported
	Max	Double	--	Not exported
	Average	Double	--	Export
	StandardDeviation	Double	--	Not exported
	Count	Int32	--	Not exported
Beam0: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Max	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Average	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Export
	StandardDeviation	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Export
	Count	Int32	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
Beam1: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Max	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Average	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Export
	StandardDeviation	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Export
	Count	Int32	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
Beam2: MeasurementValueSummary	Min	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Max	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
	Average	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Export
	StandardDeviation	Double	Calculated from DAT file samples	Export
	Count	Int32	Calculated from DAT file samples	Not exported
Calculations: PointMeasurementCalculations	Warnings	QualityControlWarnings	--	Not exported
	Velocity	XyzData	SUM.Vel (VelX, VelY, VelZ in General mode)	
	VelocityStandardError	XyzData	SUM.Verr (VxErr, VyErr, VzErr in General mode)	
	FlowAngle	Double	DIS.Angle	
	Snr	BeamData	SUM.Snr (Snr1, Snr2, Snr3 in General mode)	
	SnrStandardDeviation	BeamData	SUM.ASD1, ASD2, ASD3	
	Samples	Int32	DIS.NPts	
	Spikes	Int32	DIS.Spike	
	Tilt	Double	--	
	BoundaryAvoidance	BoundaryAvoidanceStatus	DIS.Bnd	
Boundary: BoundaryData	BoundaryRange	Double	--	Not exported
	VelocityAmbiguity	Double	--	Not exported

Data File Next of Kin	Variable	Base Type	Variable	Comment
	VelocityResolution	Double	--	Not exported
Beams: ReadOnlyCollection< BeamStatistics>	NoiseLevel	Double	--	
	PeakLocation	Double	--	
	PeakLevel	Double	--	
HandheldInfo: HandheldInfoSummary	SoftwareVersion:	String	DIS.SoftwareVer	Not exported (pmd value exported)
	WadingRod	WadingRod	WadingRod.Unknown	Unknown is assigned, wading rod not defined in FT1
	Units	UnitType	DIS.UnitSystem	
ProbeInfo: ProbeInfoSummary	SerialNumber	String	CTL.AdvSerialnumber	
	FirmwareVersion	String	CTL.CpuFirmwareVersion	
	NumberOfBeams	Int32	CTL.AdvNumberOfBeams	
NominalBeamStatistics: ReadOnlyCollection<BeamStatistics>	NoiseLevel	Double	--	
	PeakLocation	Double	--	
	PeakLevel	Double	--	
Calculations: StationCalculations	Warnings	QualityControlWarnings	--	Not exported
	MeanVelocityInVertical	XyzData	--	Not exported
	MeanPanelVelocity	XyzData	DIS.MeanV	Only Vx is exported
	Width	Double	--	Not exported
	Area	Double	DIS.Area	
	Discharge	Double	DIS.Flow	
	FractionOfTotalDischarge	Double	DIS.%Q	
	Snr	BeamData	--	Not exported
	Temperature	Double	--	Not exported
	VelocityAngle	Double	--	Not exported
	BoundaryAvoidance	BoundaryAvoidanceStatus	DIS.Bnd	Not exported
	Samples	Int32	--	Not exported
	Spikes	Int32	--	Not exported
	Tilt	Double	--	Not exported
	VelocityStandardError	XyzData	--	Not exported
SupplementalDataRecord: List<SupplementalDataRecord> (optional)	Time	DateTime	record yyyy/MM/dd HH:mm:ss	
	GaugeHeight	Double	record GaugeHeigh	
	RatedDischarge	Double	record RatedDischarge	
	Temperature	Double	--	
	Salinity	Double	--	
	Comment	String	record Comment	
Calculations: DataFileCalculations	Warnings	QualityControlWarnings	use the final DIS.BeamCheck as AutoQC, plus the	

Data File			Variable	Comment
Next of Kin	Variable	Base Type		
			DIS.MeanBoundary as SmartQC, plus FT2 SmartQC.	
	Area	Double	DIS.TotalArea	
	Discharge	Double	DIS.TotalDischarge	
	Width	Double	DIS.TotalWidth	
	Velocity	XyzData	DIS.MeanVelocity (or DIS.MeanVelocityVx, DIS.MeanVelocityVy in General Mode)	
	VelocityStandardError	XyzData	DIS.MeanVerr	
	Depth	Double	DIS.MeanDepth	
	Snr	Double	DIS.MeanSnr	
	Temperature	Double	DIS.MeanTemperature	
	RatedDischarge	Double	--	
	GaugeHeight	Double	--	
UncertaintyIso: DischargeUncertaintyCalculations	Accuracy	Double	DIS.UncertaintyIso.Accuracy	
	Depth	Double	DIS.UncertaintyIso.Depth	
	Velocity	Double	DIS.UncertaintyIso.Velocity	
	Width	Double	DIS.UncertaintyIso.Width	
	Method	Double	DIS.UncertaintyIso.Method	
	NumberOfStations	Double	DIS.UncertaintyIso.#_Stations	
	Overall	Double	DIS.UncertaintyIso.Overall	
UncertaintyIve: DischargeUncertaintyCalculations	Accuracy	Double	DIS.UncertaintyIve.Accuracy	
	Depth	Double	DIS.UncertaintyIve.Depth	
	Velocity	Double	DIS.UncertaintyIve.Velocity	
	Width	Double	DIS.UncertaintyIve.Width	
	Method	Double	DIS.UncertaintyIve.Method	Not exported (not in IVE)
	NumberOfStations	Double	DIS.UncertaintyIve.#_Stations	Not exported (not in IVE)
	Overall	Double	DIS.UncertaintyIve.Overall	
BeamChecks: List<BeamCheckSummary>	Id	Guid	--	
	Time	DateTime	DIS.BeamCheck	
	NumberofSamples	Int32	--	
	AutoQualityControlWarnings	QualityControlWarnings	DIS.BeamCheck	
AirPressureMeasurements:List<Pressure Reading>	Time	DateTime	--	
	Pressure	Double	--	

Point Measurement Details			Variable	Comment
Next of Kin	Variable	Base Type		
	Id	Guid	--	Not exported
	SamplingRate	Double	1.0/CTL.SampleInterval	Not exported
Samples: ReadOnlyCollection<Sample>	Time	DateTime	DAT.ymdhms	
Adv: AdvData	Velocity	XyzData	DAT.VelX, VelY, VelZ	
	Snr	Double	DAT.Snr1, Snr2, Snr3	
Sensors: SensorData	Temperature	Double	SUM.Temp	Not exported
	SoundSpeed	Double	--	Not exported
	Pressure	Double	--	Not exported
	Voltage	Double	SUM.Batt	Not exported
	Accelerometer	XyzData	--	
Diagnostics: DiagnosticsSample	Time	DateTime	--	Not exported
Adv: AdvData	Velocity	XyzData	--	Not exported
	Snr	Double		Not exported
Sensors: SensorData	Temperature	Double	SUM.Temp	Not exported
	SoundSpeed	Double	--	Not exported
	Pressure	Double	--	Not exported
	Voltage	Double	SUM.Batt	Not exported
	Accelerometer	XyzData	--	Not exported
Diagnostics: DiagnosticsSample	Boundary	BoundaryData	--	Not exported
	ProfileRange: ReadOnlyCollection	Double	--	
Statistics: BeamStatistics	NoiseLevel	Double	--	Not exported
	PeakPosition	Double	--	Not exported
	PeakLevel	Double	--	Not exported
Beams: ReadOnlyCollection<DiagnosticsBeamData>	Profile: ReadOnlyCollection	Double	--	Not exported
DataCollectionConfiguration: DataCollectionConfiguration (optional)			--	
HandheldInfo: HandheldInfo	SerialNumber	String	CTL.SerialNumber	
	SoftwareVersion	String	CTL.SoftwareVer	
	BoardsInfo	String	CTL.CpuBoardRev	Not exported
	CpuSerialNumber	String	--	
	OperatingSystem	String	--	
	Settings	Object	--	Not exported
ProbeInfo: ProbeInfo	InstrumentType	String	CTL.AdvProbeType	Not exported

Point Measurement Details			Variable	Comment
Next of Kin	**Variable**	**Base Type**		
	SerialNumber	String	CTL.AdvSerialNumber	Not exported
	FirmwareVersion	String	CTL.CpuFirmwareVersion	Not exported
	NumberOfBeams	Int32	CTL.AdvNumberOfBeams	Not exported
	IsPressureSensorPresent	Boolean	--	
	PressureSensorLocation	XyzData	--	
	ProbeBottomZ	Double	--	
NominalBeamStatistics: ReadOnlyCollection<BeamStatistics>	NoiseLevel	Double	--	Not exported
	PeakPosition	Double	--	Not exported
	PeakLevel	Double	--	Not exported
ProbeInfo: ProbeInfo	RawConfiguration	Object (optional)	--	Not exported
	Spikes: ReadOnlyCollection	Int32	Set by FT2 de-spike	Not exported
	AirPressure	Double	--	
	SiteLocation: GpsRecord	Object (optional)	--	
	ProbeDepths: ReadOnlyCollection	Double	--	

Section 13. Principle of Operations

13.1. FlowTracker2 Overview

The FlowTracker2 Handheld ADV is a single-point Doppler current meter designed for field velocity measurements. The FlowTracker2 uses the proven Doppler technology of the SonTek Acoustic Doppler Velocimeter (ADV), the leading high-resolution velocity sensor. ADV technology provides several advantages.

- Accurate velocity measurements in a remote sampling volume,
- 2D or 3D velocity measurements (depending on probe configuration),
- Invariant factory calibration, no periodic recalibration required,
- Rapid response time,
- Simple operation,
- Excellent performance for low and high flows – accuracy 1% of measured velocity,
- Built-in temperature sensor.

The FlowTracker2 offers ADV performance from a simple handheld interface, allowing rapid data collection without the use of a computer. Some common applications include:

- River discharge measurements (using established methodology, including USGS/ISO),
- Open-channel flow measurements,
- Current measurements in large pipes,
- Rapid, multi-point current surveys,
- Current monitoring in water treatment facilities.

13.2. The Doppler Shift

The FlowTracker2 uses a highly sophisticated form of this technique, which processes underwater sound (sonar) reflected from particulate matter suspended in the water.

a) The Doppler principle says that if a source of sound is moving relative to the receiver, the frequency of the sound at the receiver is shifted from the transmit frequency.

$$F_{doppler} = F_{source} \times \left(\frac{V}{C}\right)$$

where, $F_{doppler}$ = *change in received frequency (Doppler shift),*
F_{source} = *frequency of transmitted sound,*
V = *velocity of source relative to receiver,*
C = *speed of sound.*

b) The velocity, V, represents the relative speed between source and receiver (motion that changes the distance between the two).

   i). If the distance between the two objects is decreasing, frequency increases.

   ii). If the distance is increasing, frequency decreases.

   iii). Motion perpendicular to the line connecting source and receiver does not introduce a Doppler shift.

13.3. Bistatic Doppler Current Meters

13.3.1 **Bistatic Doppler Operation**

The FlowTracker2 is a Bistatic Doppler current meter with the 2D side looking probe design and sampling volume shown in Figure 13:1.

a) Bistatic means separate acoustic transducers are used for transmitter and receiver.

b) The transmitter generates sound concentrated in a narrow beam.

c) The receivers are sensitive to sound coming from a narrow beam.

d) The receivers are mounted such that the beams intersect at a volume of water located a fixed distance (10 cm; 4 in) from the tip of the probe.

e) The beam intersection determines the location of the sampling volume (the volume of water in which measurements are made).

13.3.2 **The FlowTracker2 Measurement Principle**

a) The transmitter generates a short pulse of sound at a known frequency.

b) The sound travels through the water along the transmitter beam axis.

c) As the pulse passes through the sampling volume, sound is reflected in all directions by particulate matter (sediment, small organisms, bubbles).

d) Some portion of the reflected energy travels back along the receiver beam axes.

e) The reflected signal is sampled by the acoustic receivers.

f) The FlowTracker2 measures the change in frequency (Doppler shift) for each receiver.

g) The Doppler shift is proportional to the velocity of the particles along the bistatic axis of the receiver and transmitter. The bistatic axis is located halfway between transmit and receive axes.

h) Knowing the relative orientation of the bistatic axes allows the FlowTracker2 to calculate 2D or 3D water velocity.

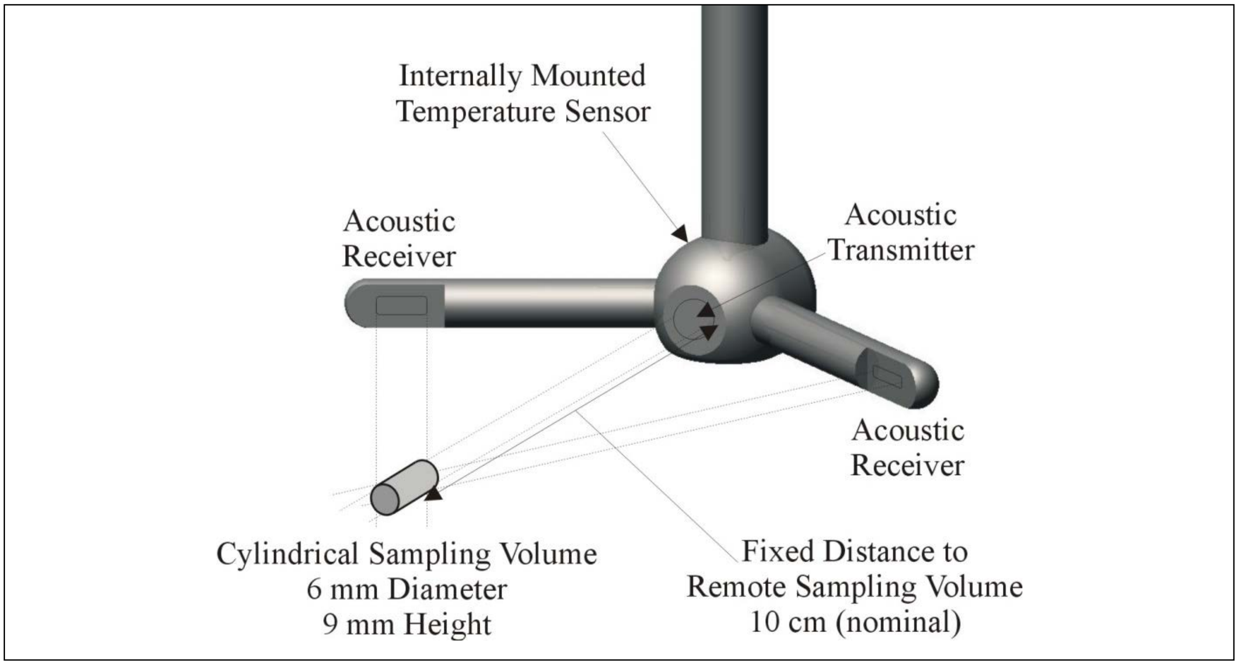


Figure 13:1 - 2D Side Looking Probe and Sampling Volume

13.3.3 Signal to Noise Ratio Profile

The signal to noise ratio versus time profile plot for the FlowTracker2 is shown in Figure 13:2.

a) The horizontal axis shows time after the transmit pulse.

b) The vertical axis shows the return signal strength measured by one receiver.

c) As the transmit pulse travels through the water, sound is reflected in all directions.

d) Immediately following the transmit pulse, reflections come from outside the receiver beam. The receiver measures only the ambient noise level.

e) As the pulse propagates along the transmit axis, it moves closer to the receiver beam. The receiver sees an increase in signal strength.

f) Signal strength reaches a maximum at the intersection of transmit and receive beams.

g) By sampling the return signal at its peak, the FlowTracker2 makes measurements in the sampling volume defined by the intersection of transmit and receive beams.

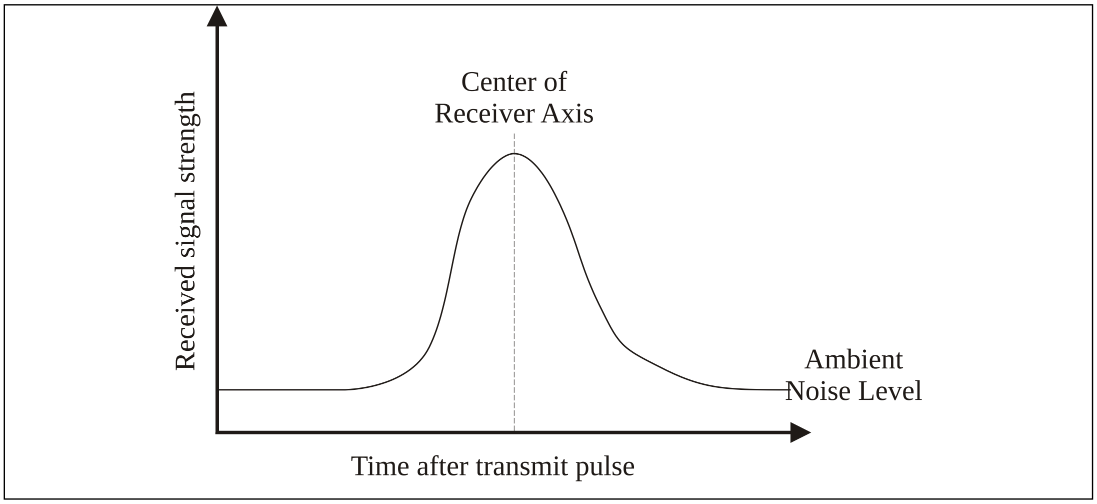


Figure 13:2 - Signal to Noise Ratio Profile

13.4. Pulse-Coherent Processing

This section does not attempt to provide a detailed description of pulse-coherent processing. It presents a simple overview with a focus on how this affects FlowTracker2 operation. SonTek can provide additional information on request.

The description of FlowTracker2 operation given in Bistatic Doppler Current Meters is an oversimplification.

- Bistatic Doppler Current Meters describes incoherent Doppler processing in which the transducer sends a single pulse of sound and measures the frequency change of the return signal.
- The FlowTracker2 uses a technique called pulse-coherent processing.

Pulse-coherent processing provides the best possible performance of any Doppler processing technique. In the simplest terms, pulse-coherent processing works as follows.

a) The FlowTracker2 sends two pulses of sound separated by a time lag (τ).

b) Each receiver measures the phase (ϕ) of the return signal from each pulse.

c) The change in phase ($\phi 2$ - $\phi 1$) divided by the time lag (τ) is proportional to velocity.

d) Because of the nature of the phase measurement (which can only be determined from -180° to +180°), the system has an inherent maximum velocity limitation.

e) The FlowTracker2 velocity algorithms have been optimized to give the best possible performance over a wide velocity range of ±4.0 m/s (±13 ft/s).

f) FlowTracker2 processing provides unmatched results for low flows (<1 cm/s; <0.03 ft/s).

FlowTracker2 processing has been designed to give the best possible performance in all environments. However, there is a situation where system performance may be affected by operating conditions.

- When working near boundaries or underwater obstacles, the system may need to adapt its operation to avoid acoustic interference.
- This is called boundary adjustment and is performed automatically by the system at each measurement location.
- The system reports a quality control parameter with each measurement location that tells you if the environment has any effect on FlowTracker2 performance. This quality control parameter is described in Boundary Interference.

13.5. Beam Geometry and 3D Velocity Measurements

A single transmit/receive pair measures the projection of the 3D water velocity onto the bistatic axis.

a) The bistatic axis is halfway between transmit and receive beam axes (see Figure 13:3).

b) The velocity measured by each receiver is called the bistatic velocity.

c) The FlowTracker2 uses one transmitter and two or three receivers (for 2D or 3D probes).

d) See Probe Configurations for other FlowTracker2 probe configurations.

e) Receivers intersect with the transmit beam pattern at a common sampling volume.

f) Bistatic velocities are converted to Cartesian (XYZ) velocities using the probe geometry (the relative angles of transmit and receive beams). Cartesian velocities give the 2D or 3D velocity relative of the FlowTracker2 probe.

g) During the manufacturing process, probe geometry is precisely determined by a calibration procedure.

h) This calibration only needs to be performed once.

i) No periodic re-calibration is required.

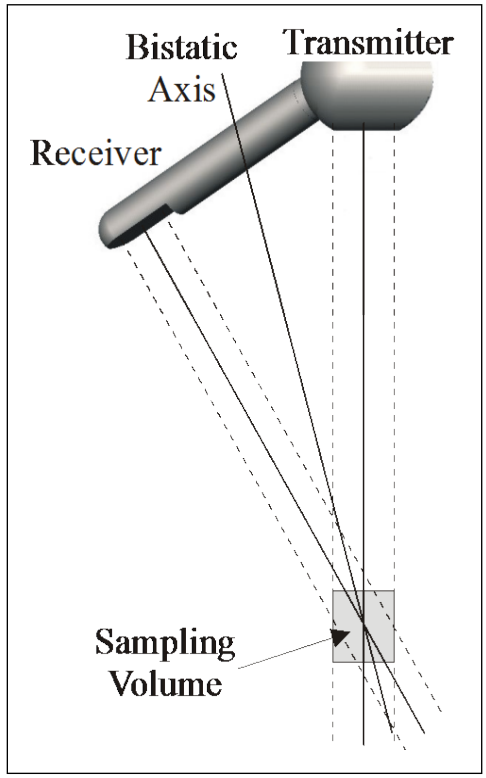


Figure 13:3 - Bistatic Axis

13.6. Sampling Volume Definition

The FlowTracker2 sampling volume is defined based on the following criteria,

a) The sampling volume is nominally 10 cm (4 in) from the tip of the probe.

b) The exact location varies ±1.0 cm (±0.4 in) from probe to probe.

c) Precise sampling volume location is fixed for any given probe.

d) The physical size of the sampling volume is a cylinder 6 mm (0.24 in) in diameter by 9mm (0.35 in) in length (see Figure 13:1).

13.7. Velocity Data Coordinate System

FlowTracker2 velocity measurements are reported using a right-hand Cartesian coordinate system relative to the probe. The XYZ coordinate systems for each probe type are shown below.

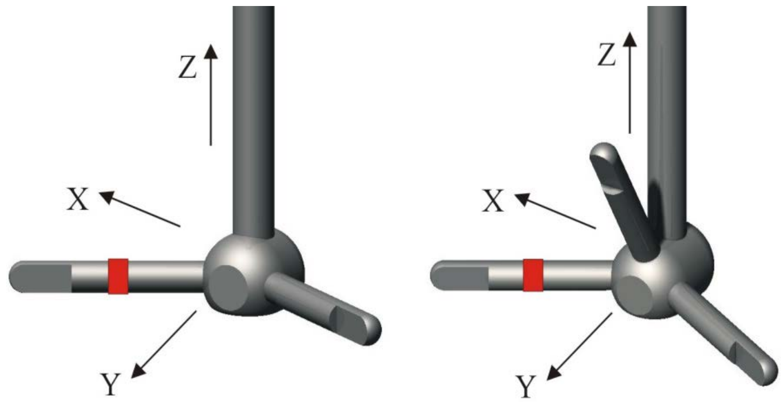


Figure 13:4 - FlowTracker2 Probe XYZ Coordinate System

13.7.1 **2D Side-Looking Probe (Figure 30a)**

a) The positive Z-axis is defined as vertically up in the direction of the probe’s stem.

b) The positive X-axis is defined perpendicular to both the probe’s stem and the axis of the transmit transducer in the direction of receiver arm #1 (marked with a red band).

c) The positive Y-axis is defined along the axis of the transmit transducer from the transmitter towards the sampling volume (making a right-handed coordinate system).

13.7.2 **2D/3D Side-Looking Probe (Figure 30b)**

a) The positive Z-axis is defined as vertically up in the direction of the probe’s stem.

b) The positive X-axis is defined perpendicular to both the probe’s stem and the axis of the transmit transducer in the direction of receiver arm #1 (marked with a red band).

c) The positive Y-axis is defined along the axis of the transmit transducer from the transmitter towards the sampling volume (making a right-handed coordinate system).

13.8. FlowTracker2 Data

13.8.1 **Basic Sampling Strategy**

The FlowTracker2 collects a burst of velocity data at each measurement location. The sampling strategy for the FlowTracker2 instruments is summarized in Table 13:1. The Original FlowTracker sampling strategy is included for comparison.

Table 13-1- Sampling Strategy

Category	FlowTracker2			Original FlowTracker		
	Sampling Rate	Pings per Sample	Ping Rate	Sampling Rate	Pings per Sample	Ping Rate
Field	2 Hz	20	40 Hz	1 Hz	10	10 Hz

a) An individual measurement of the 2D or 3D velocity is referred to as a ping.

b) Sample refers to the mean of 20 pings to produce a measurement of the 2D or 3D water velocity.

c) Two samples are recorded per second during the user specified averaging time.

d) The averaging time at each location is user-specified (10 to 1000 seconds).

e) The system collects a time-series of velocity at each measurement location over the user specified averaging interval.

13.8.2 **Velocity Data**

The FlowTracker2 provides several important performance advantages.

a) It can measure 2D or 3D water velocities from 0.001 to 4.0 m/s (0.003 to 13 ft/s).

b) Velocity data are accurate to 1% of the measured velocity in a one-second sample.

c) Velocity data can be used immediately without any post processing corrections.

d) True 2D or 3D velocity data are output in Cartesian coordinates (XYZ) relative to probe orientation.

e) The FlowTracker2 calibration will not change unless the probe is physically damaged. No periodic calibration is required.

f) Diagnostic software is included to evaluate system performance periodically.

13.8.3 **Accuracy of Velocity Data**

13.8.3.1 Optimizing of FlowTracker2

The FlowTracker2 has been optimized to provide the best possible velocity data.

a) Velocity data are accurate to 1% of measured velocity for each one-second sample.

b) Variations in velocity data are dominated by true variations in water velocity.

c) Instrument noise does not normally have an impact on velocity data.

d) The averaging time required to determine the true mean velocity at a given location is a function of the real variations in velocity at that site.

13.8.3.2 Factors Influencing Accuracy

Two factors influence accuracy of FlowTracker2 velocity data – sound speed and probe geometry.

a) The effect of sound speed is discussed in Sound Speed. With properly specified salinity data, sound speed errors are negligible (less than 0.25%).
b) Probe geometry is calibrated at the factory for each FlowTracker; no recalibration is required unless the probe has been physically damaged.
c) The FlowTracker2 calibration procedure is specified to ±1.0% of the measured velocity.
d) There is no potential for zero offset or zero drift in velocity measurements. There is no inherent minimum measurable velocity.
e) The FlowTracker2 is very well suited to low-flow applications to less than 1 cm/s (0.03 ft/s).

13.8.4 **Quality Control Data**

In addition to velocity, the FlowTracker2 records quality control data with each measurement station to quickly evaluate velocity data quality. The quality control parameter details are discussed in Quality Control Parameters, Section 6, Quality Control.

13.9. Special Considerations

13.9.1 **Probe Configurations**

Several FlowTracker2 probe configurations are available for different applications (see Figure 13:4).

13.9.1.1 Probe mounting

a) The probe is mounted from a 1.500m (4.92ft) flexible cable. A 3.500m (11.5ft) or 8.500m (27.9ft) extension cable is available. However, it is not possible to upgrade an existing system to a different cable length.
b) It is not advised to exceed an overall cable length of 10.000m (32.8ft).
c) The cable is custom built to reduce electronic noise. It should not be modified by the user.
d) Take care to avoid damage to the cable, as this can affect system operation.

13.9.1.2 Probe type

a) Two probe types are available (see Figure 13:4).

b) The standard FlowTracker2 uses a 2D side-looking probe. The sampling volume is located 10 cm (4 in) to the side of the probe, and can operate in as little as 2 cm (1 in) of water.

c) To work in both shallow and deeper water, a combination 2D/3D side-looking probe is available. This has a sampling volume located 10 cm (4 in) to the side of the probe, and can operate in as little as 2 cm (1 in) of water. It measures 2D velocity in shallow water (with only two arms submerged), and 3D velocity in deeper water (with all three arms submerged).

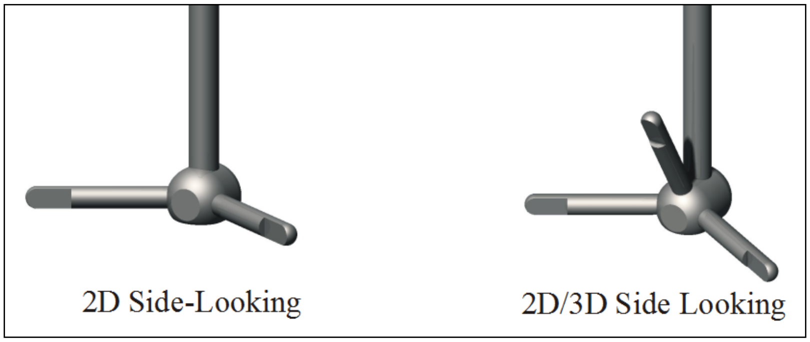


Figure 13:5 - FlowTracker2 Probe Configuration

13.10. Sound Speed

The FlowTracker2 uses sound speed to compute velocity from the measured Doppler shift, and to precisely determine the location of the sampling volume.

13.10.1 **Sound Speed Function**

The speed of sound in water is primarily a function of temperature and salinity.

a) Temperatures change of 5°C (9°F) results in a sound speed change of ≈1%.

b) A salinity change of 12 results in a change in sound speed of ≈1%.

c) A 1% error in sound speed results in a ≈2% error in velocity data.

13.10.2 **Compensate for Changes**

To compensate for changing sound speed, the FlowTracker2 does the following.

a) The FlowTracker2 includes a temperature sensor for automatic sound speed corrections. Resolution is ±0.01°C (±0.02°F).

b) A user-input value of salinity is used for sound speed calculations.

c) If accurate salinity data has been specified by the user (±2), sound speed changes can be assumed to have no impact on velocity data.

13.10.3 **Environmental Conditions**

Doppler current meters, such as the FlowTracker2, do not measure movement of water, but actually the movement of particles **in** the water,

- We must assume that the movement of the particles in the water is representative of the movement of the water itself,
- If there are no particles (other than the water molecules themselves) present in the water, Doppler current meters will not work. Natural streams almost always have something else other than just “water” (even if just tiny air bubbles), and the technology is such that even a small amount of particles in the water is usually enough for good measurements.

Visual inspection is **not** an acceptable method for determining the amount of particles in the water and no simple relationship exists with turbidity.

- We cannot say that for a given turbidity level your water is too clear for a Doppler-based measurement.
- The amount of particles in the water is not the only factor affecting signal amplitudes. Particle size, shape, distribution, and type also control these values, and these conditions vary from site to site.
- Therefore, one stream may meet these conditions, but another with the same turbidity may not.

If the site conditions seems unsuitable for FlowTracker2 measurement due to lack of particles in the water it is recommended to perform an Automated Beam Check. If the results are within the instrument specifications and quality control parameters user can start with velocity measurements. The FlowTracker2 can return reliable measurements down to about 3 dB (in SNR), although we recommend 10 dB and above for best operating conditions.

13.11. Flow Interference

The FlowTracker measures velocity in a small sampling volume nominally located 10 cm (4 in) from the tip of the probe (see Sampling Volume Definition). The placement of the sampling volume relative to other structures in the water must be considered when measuring velocity to avoid flow interference.

13.11.1 Structures

a) The FlowTracker probe should be located away from any underwater structures or obstacles, particularly those upstream.

b) Consider the size and location of nearby structures and obstacles, and the probable magnitude and direction of flow, when choosing a measurement location.

13.11.2 Probe orientation relative to flow

a) The FlowTracker should be oriented so the axis of the transmit transducer is roughly perpendicular to the expected direction of flow (see Figure 13:6).

b) For side-looking probes (2D and 2D/3D), the probe should be oriented looking across the expected direction of flow (so the X-axis aligns with the expected flow).

c) FlowTracker probes have been tested and have shown negligible flow interference with the probe as much as 40-50° away from the preferred alignment. At higher angles, the FlowTracker may see flow interference in the sampling volume.

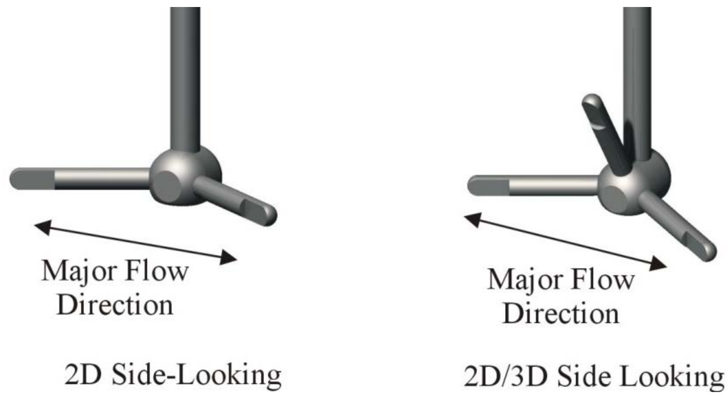


Figure 13:6 - Preferred Flow Direction to Avoid Flow Interference

13.11.3 **Mounting Correction**

Laboratory tow tank tests have indicated the FlowTracker2 probe and mount create flow disturbance that may have a small impact (approximately 1.0%) on measured velocity data. The mount is most commonly a top-setting wading rod using an S or J offset bracket. Additional tests and modeling have looked at whether flowing water shows the same flow disturbance effect seen in a tow tank (where the FlowTracker2 is towed through a pool of stationary water).

By default, no correction for flow disturbance is applied to FlowTracker2 data. If you are using a standard top-setting wading rod, and have decided to apply a correction, SonTek typically recommends using a correction of 1.0%. For additional information about the flow disturbance effect, contact SonTek directly.

To apply a flow disturbance correction, set the Mounting Correction from the Data Collection Settings menu.

13.11.3.1 No Correction

- With the default setting of No Correction, the FlowTracker2 velocity data is used directly without any correction for flow disturbance.

13.11.3.2 Custom Correction

- This is selected when you want to apply a correction to account for flow disturbance from the FlowTracker mount. With this option, you must specify the value of the Mounting Correction within the range -5% to +5%.
- When applied, the most common value for a standard top setting wading rod is 1.0%. A 1.0% correction means that measured velocity data is increased by 1.0% to account for the effect of flow disturbance from the wading rod.

13.12. Dynamic Pressure (Pressure Sensor)

Dynamic pressure is the kinetic energy per unit volume of fluid and affects the pressure sensor measurements performed by the FlowTracker2 ADV internal pressure sensor in flowing water. The extent of the dynamic pressure affecting the pressure sensor measurements is directly related to the water velocity. The correction for dynamic pressure on FlowTracker2 pressure sensor measurements is described in this section.

In fluid dynamics, the Total Pressure (P0) is defined as the sum of the Static Pressure (P) and the Dynamic Pressure (Pd),

Equation 13:1 – Total Pressure

$$P_0 = P + P_d$$

The internal pressure sensor of the FlowTracker2 provides an accurate measurement of the Total Pressure (P_0). Calculating depth from pressure requires the Static Pressure (P) to be known. For still or slow moving water the Dynamic Pressure (Pd) is negligible and thus the Static Pressure (P) and the Total Pressure (P_0) are very close. Using the Total Pressure (P_0) as measured by the pressure sensor instead of the Static Pressure (P) in these cases provides a good conversion for all practical purposes.

However, for faster flowing water, ignoring the Dynamic Pressures (Pd) is not an option and would result in a significant error in the pressure-to-depth conversion. Correcting for Dynamic Pressure is essential to ensure a proper depth computation.

Dynamic Pressure (Pd) is defined as,

Equation 13:2 – Dynamic Pressure

$$P_d = 0.5 \times WaterDensity \times WaterSpeed^2$$

All parameters required in Equation 13:2 are available to the FlowTracker2

- WaterDensity can be approximated or in the case of the FlowTracker2 is precisely computed from Salinity (user entry), Latitude and Altitude (from the integrated GPS),
- WaterSpeed is provided by the ADV (the main function of the FlowTracker2 is to measure water velocity). To produce a precise WaterSpeed, the AdvWaterSpeed (measured water speed) is corrected by a constant “head drag coefficient” (a) which describes the flow disturbance around the pressure sensor introduced by the ADV head and is different for different head shapes (e.g. 2D or 2D/3D).

Equation 13:3 – Corrected AdvWaterSpeed

$$WaterSpeed = AdvWaterSpeed \times a$$

If we substitute Equation 13:3 in Equation 13:2 the dynamic pressure can be computed using Equation 13:4,

Equation 13:4 – Dynamic Pressure using AdvWaterSpeed

$$P_d = 0.5 \times WaterDensity \times (AdvWaterSpeed \times a)^2$$

Knowing the Dynamic Pressure (Pd) and the Total Pressure (P_0) – the static pressure can then be computed using Equation 13:5,

Equation 13:5 – Static Pressure

$$P = P_0 - P_d$$

If we substitute Equation 13:4 in Equation 13:5 the final equation for correcting the pressure measured by the FlowTracker2 internal pressure sensor is defined in Equation 13:6,

Equation 13:6 – Corrected Pressure

$$P = P_0 - 0.5 \times WaterDensity \times (AdvWaterSpeed \times 2)^2$$

Section 14. FlowTracker2 Desktop Software

14.1. Overview of Software Features and Functions

The FlowTracker2 Desktop Software is designed to work in conjunction with the FlowTracker2 Handheld ADV. With this software, you will be able to:

- **View, post-process**, and **export** FlowTracker Data,
- **Connect** to a FlowTracker Handheld ADV to download data and perform recorder functions.

The layout of the FlowTracker2 Desktop Software upon startup is shown in Figure 14:1. Each function and feature of the software will be addressed in the subsequent sections.

Specific software functions will have the sequence of buttons or tabs taken to reach that function next to the function title (*in blue italic font*). This sequence will always start at the startup page shown in Figure 14:1.

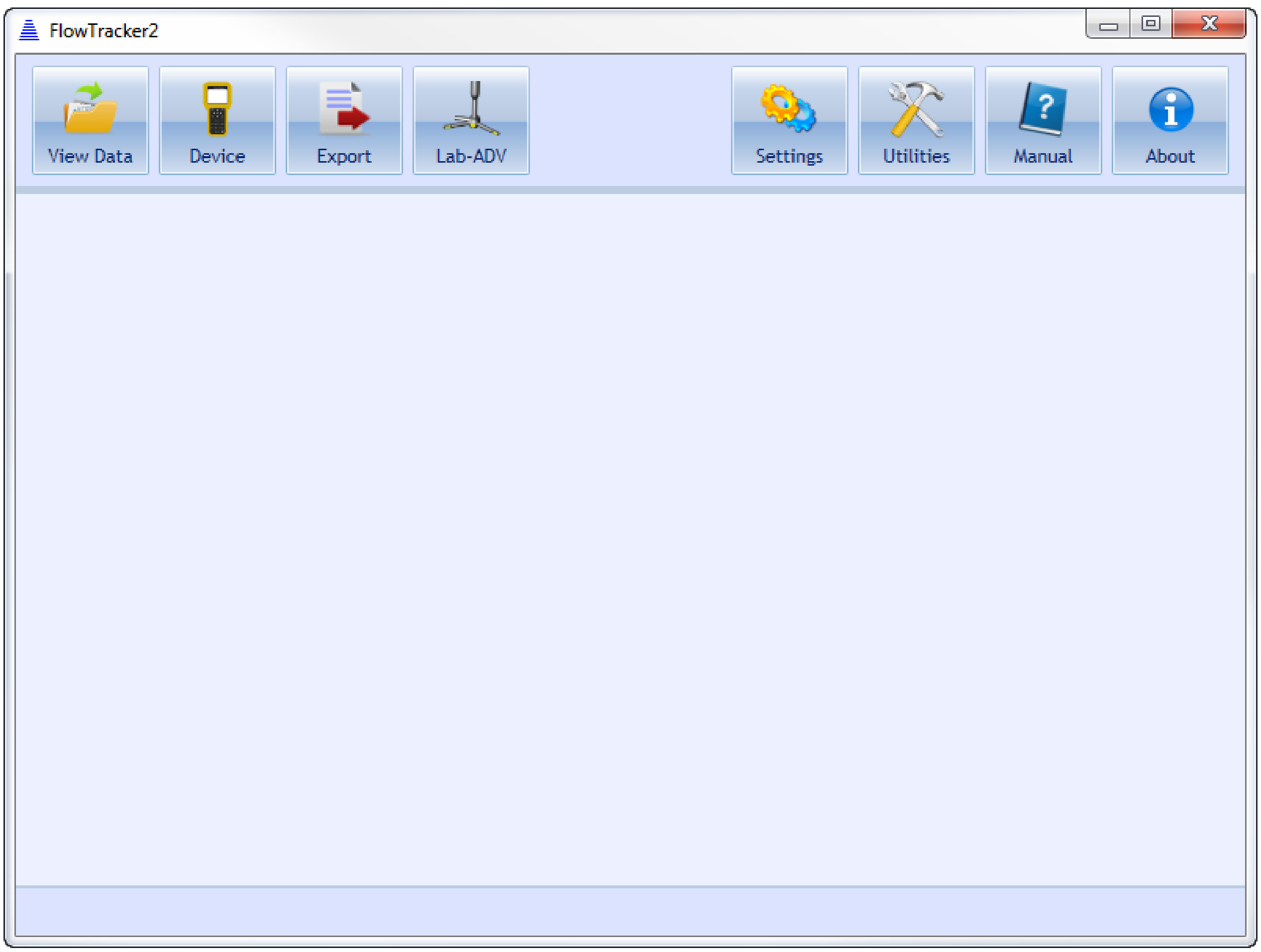


Figure 14:1 - Layout of FlowTracker2 Desktop Software upon startup

14.2. Installing Software

The FlowTracker2 Desktop Software installation file is included with the USB thumb drive that ships with your FlowTracker2 Handheld ADV. It is also available from the SonTek website (http://www.sontek.com). Run the **Windows Installer Package (.msi)** file corresponding to the type of computer on which you wish to install the software (**32-bit** or **64-bit**). Accept the terms in the License Agreement (shown in Figure 14:2) and click Install.

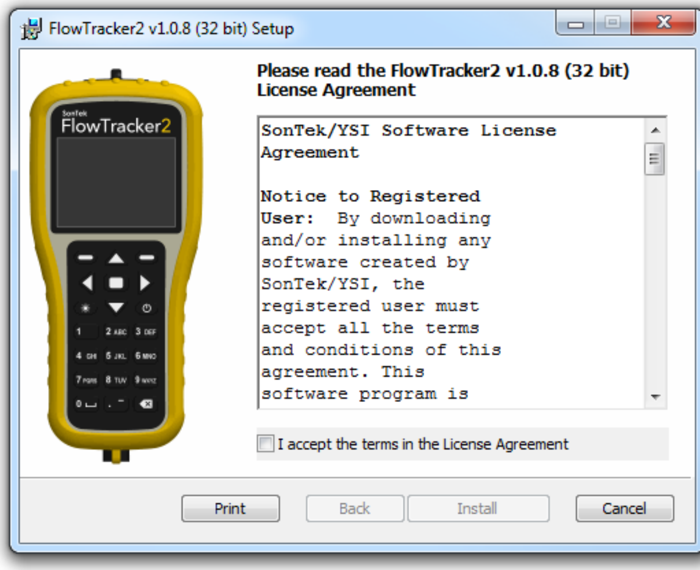


Figure 14:2. Installation Dialog for FlowTracker2 Desktop Software

During the process, you will be prompted to install a driver with the message shown in Figure 14:3. **This driver must be installed in order to communicate with the FlowTracker2 Handheld ADV.**

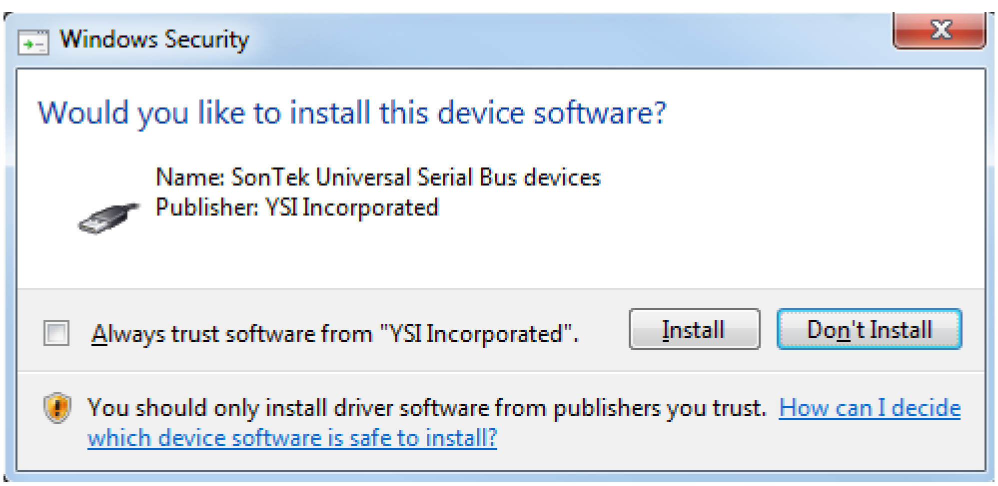


Figure 14:3. Driver Installation

14.3. Changing Settings

The Settings button opens a dialog (shown in Figure 14:4) providing options to change various software and user settings.

14.3.1 User Interface Tab

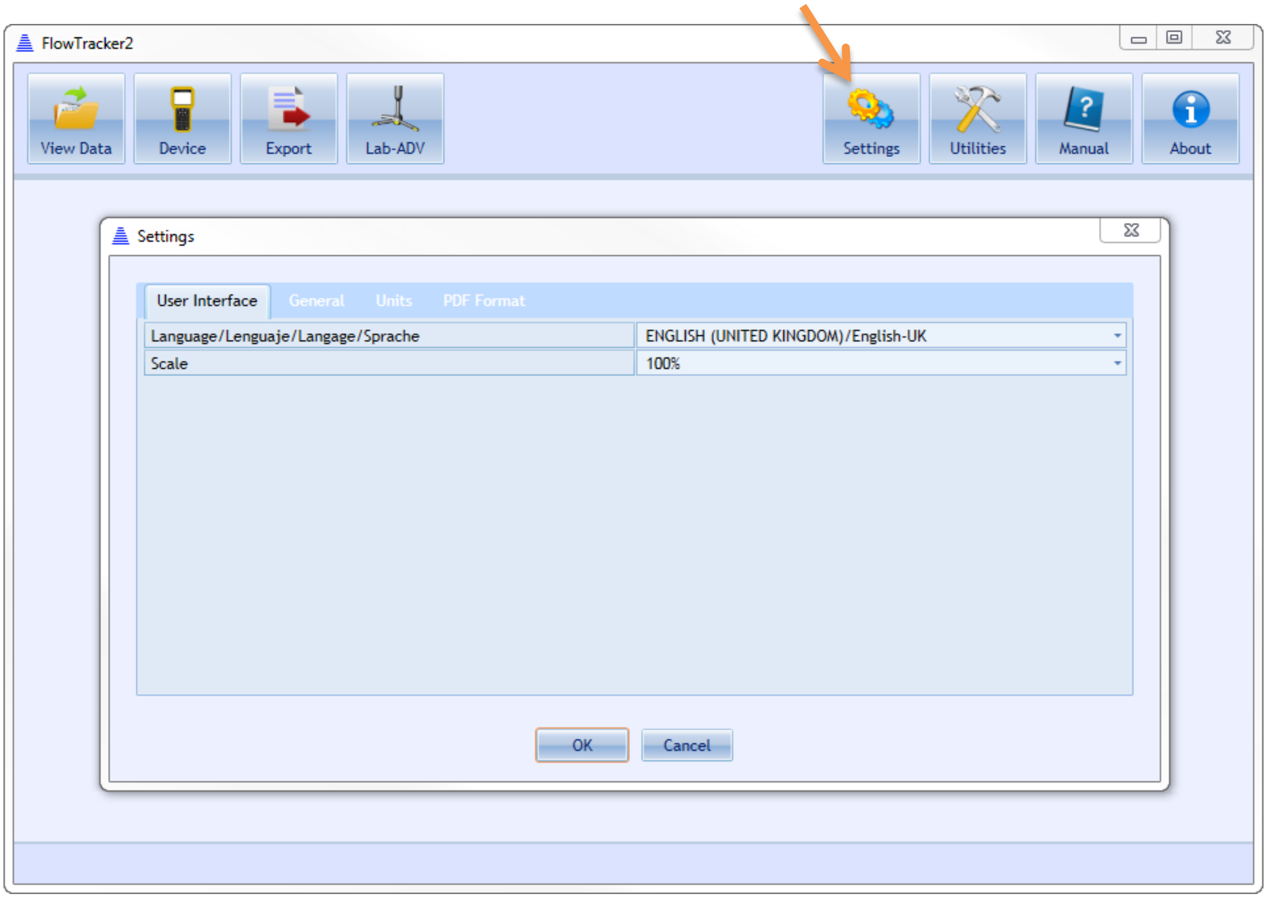


Figure 14:4. Changing User Interface Settings

14.3.1.1 Changing Language (Settings > User Interface > Language)

The **software language** can be changed through the **User Interface** tab in the **Settings** dialog. The language choices include:

- Auto Detect (using your computer settings)
- Catalan
- Chinese (simplified and traditional)
- English
- French
- German
- Greek
- Italian
- Japanese
- Korean
- Portuguese
- Romanian
- Russian
- Spanish
- Custom

For languages not included in this list (Custom), different language tools are available. These are described in detail in Run Translator.

14.3.1.2 Changing Scale and Font Size (Settings > User Interface > Scale)

The **scale** of all the text and buttons can be changed through the **User Interface** tab in the **Settings dialog**. The font size and buttons can be increased up to 150% and decreased down to 60%. The software will restart automatically to implement the changes.

14.3.2 **General Tab**

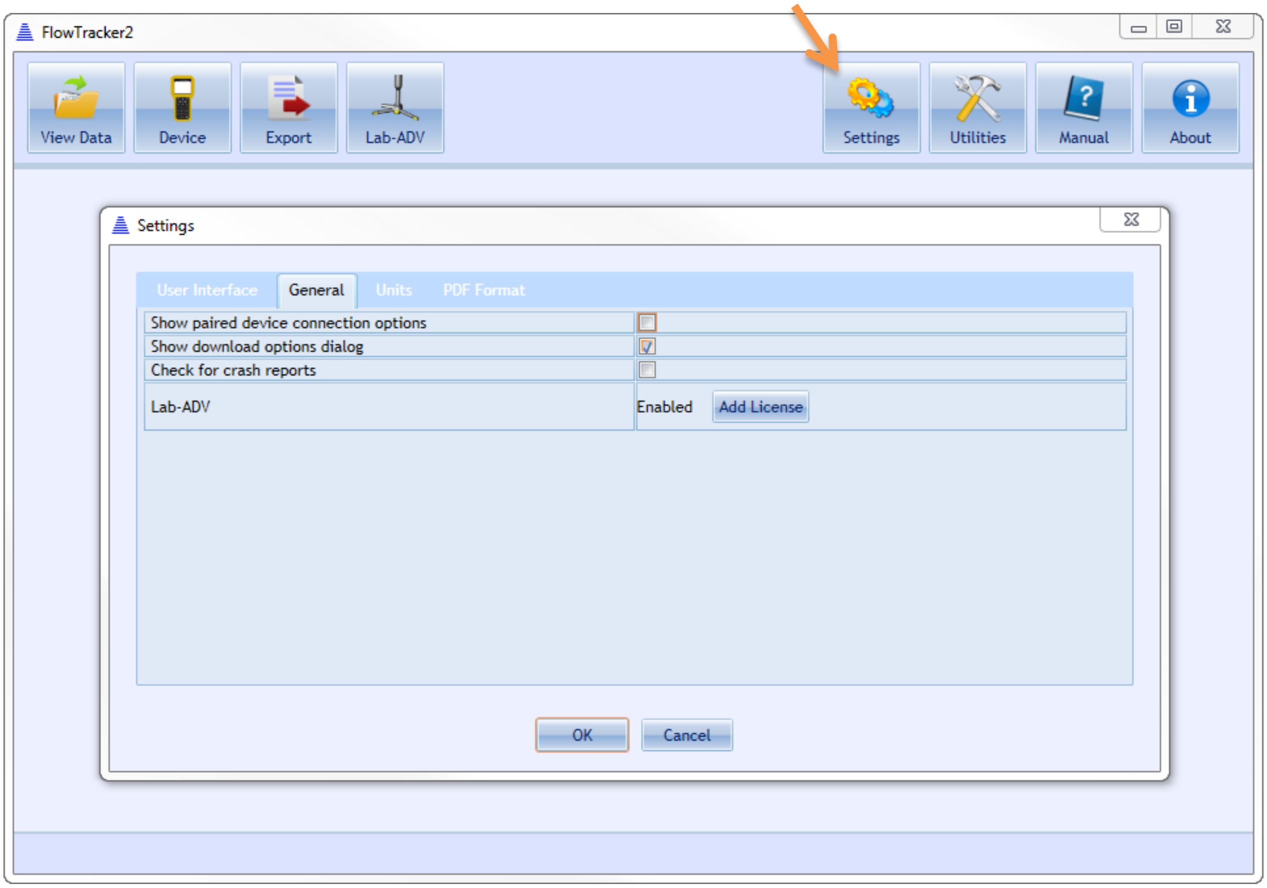


Figure 14:5. Changing General Settings

14.3.2.1 Show paired device connection options (Settings > General > Show paired device connection options)

Checking this box will provide more options during device communication using Bluetooth. It allows you to select a COM port manually if you already have a Bluetooth device paired. It is recommended that this box be left unchecked unless you are contacting Technical Support and are troubleshooting Bluetooth connectivity issues.

14.3.2.2 Show Download Options Dialog (Settings > General > Show download options dialog)

When downloading data files from the FlowTracker2 Handheld ADV, a dialog with various options appears by default. These options are described in Download Data Files. This dialog can be enabled/disabled using this check box.

14.3.2.3 Check for Crash Reports and Send to SonTek Support (Settings > General > Check for crash reports)

Crash reports are automatically generated by the FlowTracker2 software. If the **Check for crash reports** option is toggled on, upon startup, the software will search for crash reports. If crash reports are found, the dialog in Figure 14:6 will appear, prompting for the option to send crash reports to SonTek Technical Support.

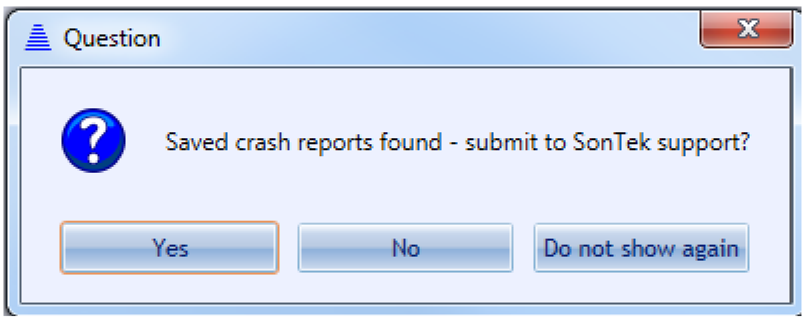


Figure 14:6. Crash report dialog

Toggling this option off will disable this prompt upon startup of the software. Clicking **Do not show again** will uncheck the box in the General Settings tab.

14.3.2.4 Lab-Adv (Settings > General > Lab-Adv)

The Lab-ADV feature is enabled by uploading the license file into the FlowTracker2 Desktop Software. The upload of license file can be performed from the Settings menu under the General tab, shown in Figure 14:5. Please see FlowTracker2 Lab-ADV for instructions on how to use this feature.

14.3.3 **Units Tab**

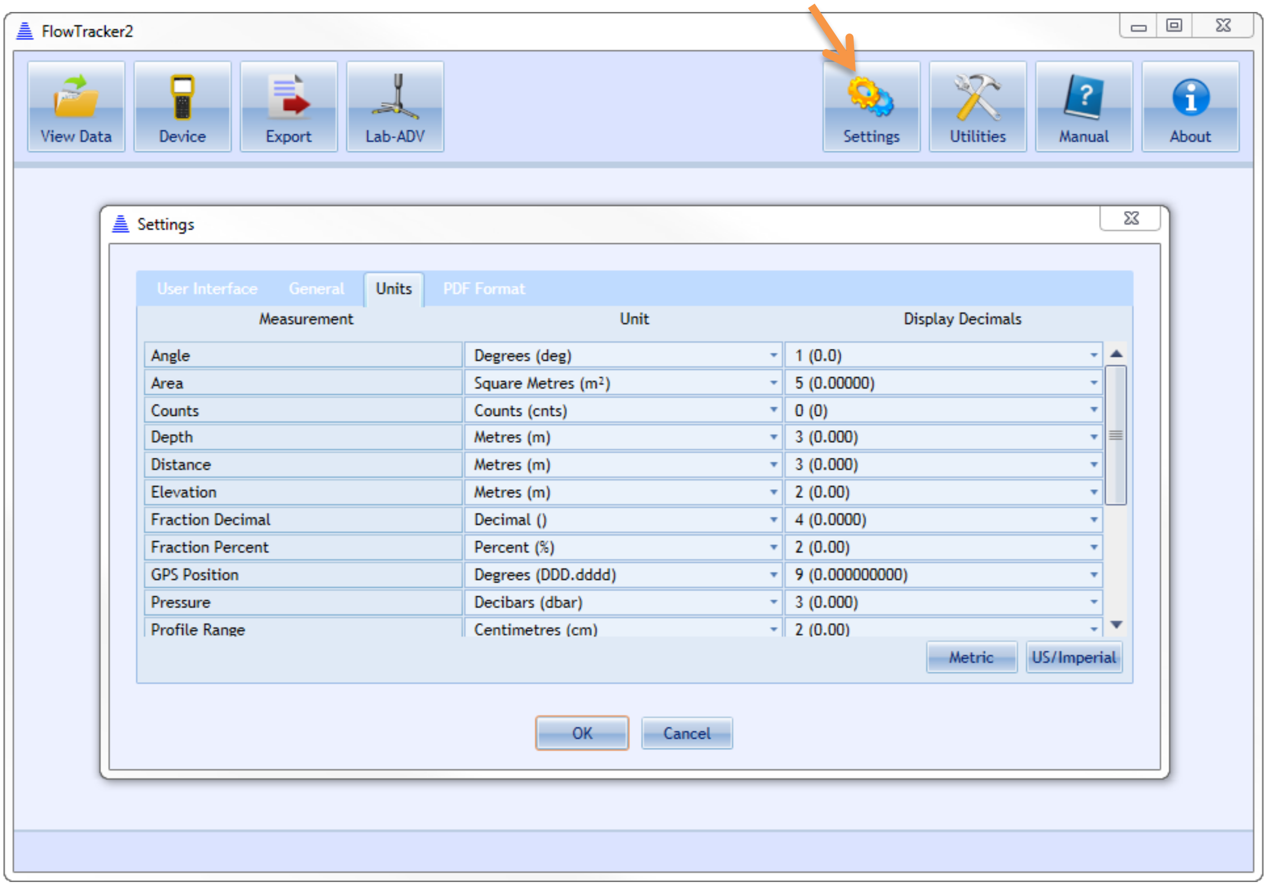


Figure 14:7. Changing Units

14.3.3.1 Changing Software Units (Settings > Units)

The units displayed by the software for various parameters can be changed independently. Table 14:1 summarizes the changeable parameters and what unit options are available.

Table 14-1- Units Available for Software Parameters

Measurement	Unit Options
Angle	Degrees (deg), Radians (rad)
Area	Square feet (ft^2), Square meters (m^2)
Counts	Counts (cnts)
Depth	Centimeters (cm), Fathoms (fms), Feet (ft), Inches (in), Kilometers (km), Meters (m), Miles (miles), Millimeters (mm), Yards (yd)
Distance	Centimeters (cm), Fathoms (fms), Feet (ft), Inches (in), Kilometers (km), Meters (m), Miles (miles), Millimeters (mm), Yards (yd)
Flow	Acre feet per day (acre ft/day), Acre feet per hour (acre ft/hour), Cubic feet per second (ft^3/s), Cubic

Measurement	Unit Options
	meters per second (m^3/s), Liters per second (L/s), Megaliters per day (ML/day), Million UK gallons per day (Million UK gallons/day), Million US gallons per day (Million US gallons/day), UK gallons per minute (UK gallons/min), US gallons per minute (US gallons/min)
Fraction Decimal	Decimal (), Percent (%)
Fraction Percent	Decimal (), Percent (%)
GPS Position	Degrees (DDD.dddd), Degrees minutes (DDD MM.mmmm), Degrees minutes seconds (DDD MM SS.ss)
Pressure	Bar (bar), Decibars (dbar), Feet of water (ft H_2O), Meters of water (m H_2O), Pascal (Pa), Pound Force per Square Inch (psi)
Salinity	Practical Salinity Scale (pss)
SNR	Decibels (dB)
Sound Speed	Centimeters per second (cm/s), Feet per second (ft/s), Furlongs per fortnight (furlongs/fortnight), Inches per second (in/s), Kilometers per hour (km/h), Knots (kt), Meters per second (m/s), Miles per hour (mph), Millimeters per second (mm/s), Yards per second (yd/s)
Temperature	Celsius (^oC), Fahrenheit (^oF), Kelvin (^oK)
Time Span	Seconds (s)
Voltage	Millivolts (mV), Volts (V)
Water Velocity	Centimeters per second (cm/s), Feet per second (ft/s), Furlongs per fortnight (furlongs/fortnight), Inches per second (in/s), Kilometers per hour (km/h), Knots (kt), Meters per second (m/s), Miles per hour (mph), Millimeters per second (mm/s), Yards per second (yd/s)

To change units, click on the appropriate drop-down menu and select the unit desired. There is an option on the lower right to change all relevant units to Metric or US/Imperial. Click OK, and the software will automatically restart to apply the changes.

14.3.3.2 Changing Software Display Decimals (Settings > Units)

The number of decimals displayed by the software for various parameters can be changed independently. Display decimals can be changed for all parameters listed in Table 14:1. The display decimals range from 0 (0) to 9 (0.000000000). To change the number of decimals displayed, click on the appropriate drop-down menu and select the value desired. When display decimals are changed, the software will automatically restart to apply those changes.

14.3.4 **PDF Format**

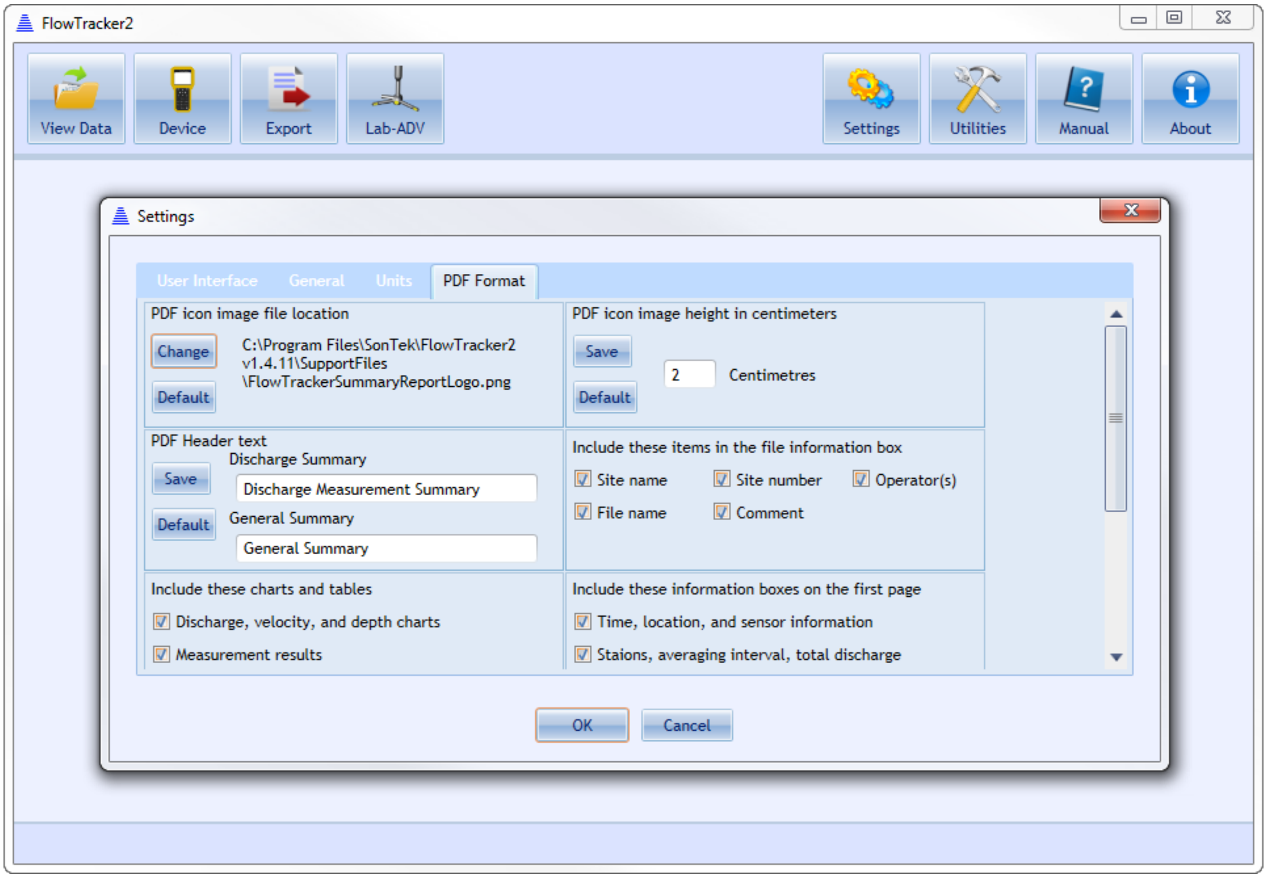


Figure 14:8. PDF Format

14.3.4.1 Icon Image (Settings > PDF Format > PDF icon image file location)

The "PDF Icon Image File Location" allows an organization to incorporate their logo in the PDF Discharge Measurement Summary report. The image format accepted for organization logo is "png".

The network path where the organization logo should be stored on user operating platform is the following,

C:\Program Files\SonTek\FlowTracker2 v1.6\SupportFiles

14.3.4.2 Image Height (Settings > PDF Format > PDF icon image height in centimeters)

The "PDF Icon Image Height in Centimeters" feature configures the image height in centimeters that is displayed on the PDF report.

The PDF icon image height is user configurable or based on FlowTracker2 default settings. It is important to save the configuration changes for implementation.

14.3.4.3 Header Text (Settings > PDF Format > PDF Header Text)

The “PDF Header Text” feature enable users to personalize the PDF report heading.

The PDF Header text is user configurable or based on FlowTracker2 default settings. It is important to save the configuration changes for implementation.

14.3.4.4 Include File Information (Settings > PDF Format > Include these items in the file information box)

The “File Information” available for inclusion on the PDF report consists of Site Name, Site Number, Operator, File Name and Comments. Select the checkbox to either include or exclude the information from the report.

14.3.4.5 Include Charts and Tables (Settings > PDF Format > Include these charts and tables)

The “Charts and Tables” available for inclusion on the PDF report consists of the following. Select the checkbox to either include or exclude the information from the report.

- Discharge, Velocity and Depth Charts,
- Measurement Results,
- Quality Control Warnings,
- Automated Beam Check, Air Pressure Measurements
- Supplemental Data Summary.

14.3.4.6 Include Information Boxes (Settings > PDF Format > Include these information boxes on the first page)

The “Information” available for inclusion on the first page of the PDF report consists of the following. Select the checkbox to either include or exclude the information from the report.

- Time, Location and Sensor Information,
- Stations, Averaging Interval, Total Discharge,
- Total Width, Total Area, Wetted Perimeter,
- Mean SNR, Mean Depth, Mean Velocity,
- Mean Temperature, Max Depth, Max Velocity,
- Discharge Uncertainty and Settings,
- Summary Overview,

- Configuration Changes.

14.4. Utilities

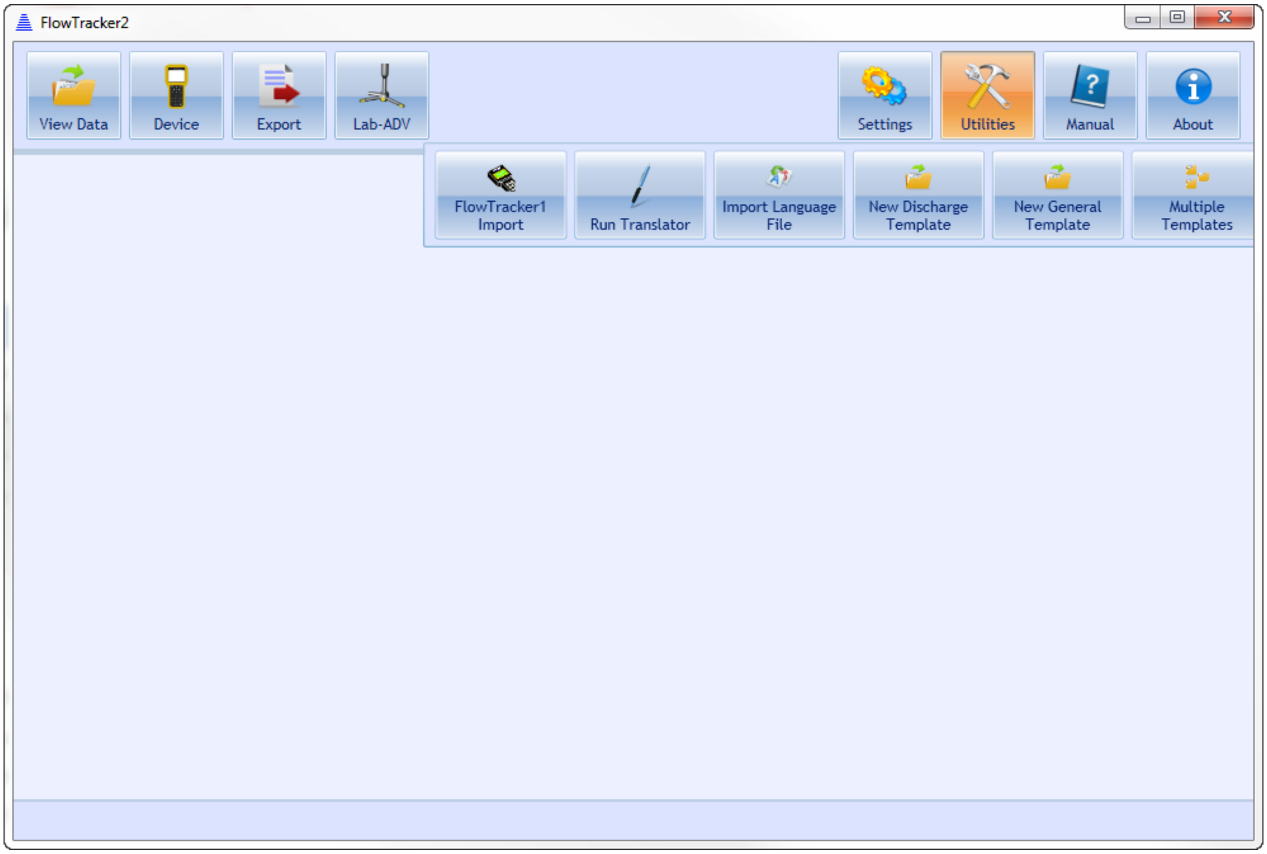


Figure 14:9. Utilities Dialog

14.4.1 **FlowTracker1 Import** (Utilities > FlowTracker1 Import)

This is a conversion tool allowing users to open measurements taken by the Original FlowTracker Handheld ADV instrument with the .wad extension. Please see Opening Original FlowTracker Handheld ADV Data Files (.WAD files) for instructions on how to use this feature.

14.4.2 **Run Translator** (Utilities > Run Translator)

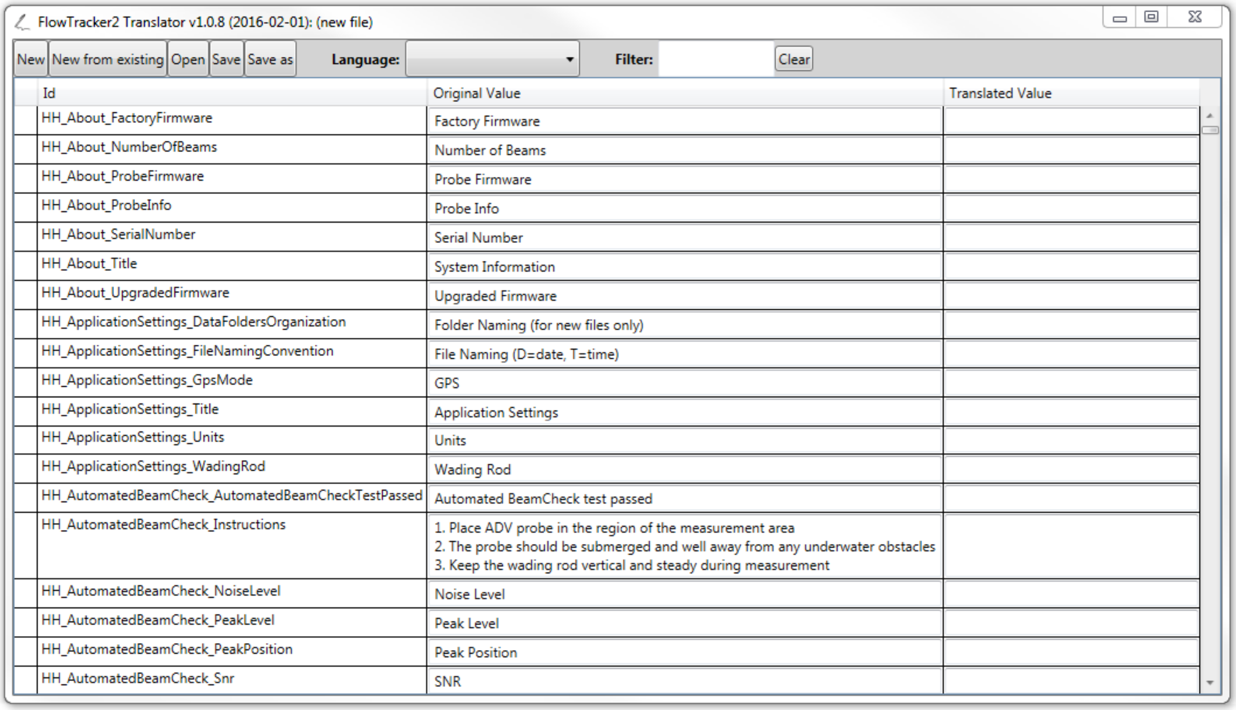


Figure 14:10 Run Translator Dialog

The Run Translator Dialog (Figure 14:10) allows a user to customize a language translation to suit specific purposes or to translate to a language not included in the standard language list. An extensive list of variables used by the software appears under the “Id” column, with its description or association in the “Original Value” column. The user can enter their translated value into the “Translated Value” column. A “Filter” function at the top of the dialog allows users to search for specific terms to be translated.

To save a translation file for future use, first pick a language from the drop-down menu at the top. Then, click the “Save” or “Save As” button, and specify the name of the language file you wish to create. A **.lang** file will be created in the directory of choice.

14.4.3 **Import Language File** (Utilities > Import Language File)

Once a **.lang** file is created (see previous section), this file can be applied to the software using the Import Language File dialog. You will be prompted to open the **.lang** file that you have created. The FlowTracker2 software will then restart to apply the changes associated with the custom **.lang** file.

14.4.4 **New Discharge Template** (Utilities > New Discharge Template)

To create a new Discharge Template, press the New Discharge Template button under the Utilities Menu. Choose a template name and destination for the template on your computer. A new template with extension .ft_template will be created. To configure an existing or new template upload to FlowTracker2 Handheld device, please refer to Uploading and Downloading Templates.

14.4.5 **New General Template** (Utilities > New General Template)

To create a new General Template (template associated with General Mode measurements), follow the same instructions in the previous section for creating a Discharge Template.

14.4.6 **Multiple Templates** (Utilities > Multiple Templates)

Multiple Templates can be created in the handheld by performing a bulk import of monitoring sites from a CSV file. The steps involved in creating a CSV file and multiple templates are summarized below,

a) **Create CSV Template**

- i). Open existing template from the "View Data" button,
- ii). Select "Save Template as CSV File" feature,
- iii). Save the CSV file to user defined folder.

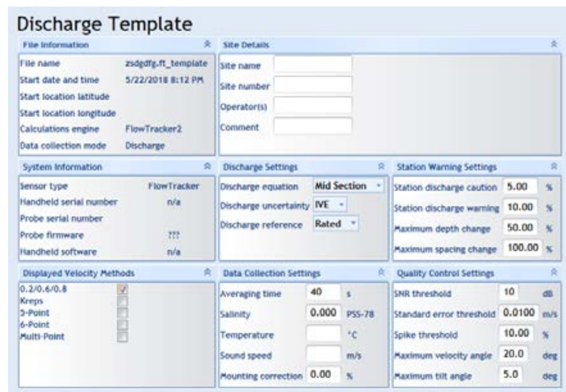


Figure 14:11 Save Template as CSV File

b) **Populate Fields in CSV File**

- i). The headers supplied in the top row of CSV file define parameters required,
- ii). Each row represents a different monitoring site.

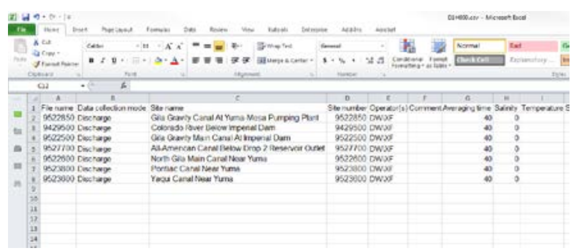


Figure 14:12 CSV File Format

c) **Create Multiple Templates**

- i). Select the "Multiple Templates" features in "Utilities",
- ii). Open CSV file created for Multiple Templates,
- iii). Set Input Units of CSV File to Create Template Files dialog box displayed.

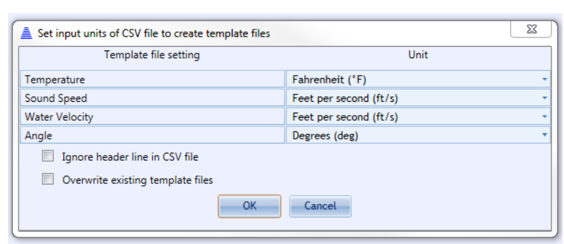


Figure 14:13 Set Input Units of CSV File to Create Template Files

The Set Input Units of CSV File to Create Template Files Dialog (Figure 14:13) allows a user to define the units of the parameters populated in the CSV file. The dialog box also give the option to "Ignore header lien in CSV file" and "Overwrite existing template files".

A new template with extension .ft_template will be created for each of the monitoring sites populated in the CSV file. The templates will be copied to the same folder path where the CSV file is located. To configure an existing or new template upload to FlowTracker2 Handheld device, please refer to Uploading and Downloading Templates.

14.5. Connecting to the FlowTracker2 Handheld ADV

The FlowTracker2 Desktop Software is designed to connect to the FlowTracker2 Handheld ADV only. User will not be able to use FlowTracker2 desktop software to connect to an Original FlowTracker Handheld ADV. User will also not be able to use the Original FlowTracker software or SonUtils to connect to the FlowTracker2.

The FlowTracker2 Handheld ADV can connect to your PC in two ways: using a direct **USB to micro-USB connection**, or using your PC's **Bluetooth radio**. To connect, click on the **Device** button, shown in Figure 14:14. Instructions for each connection type follow in the subsequent sections.

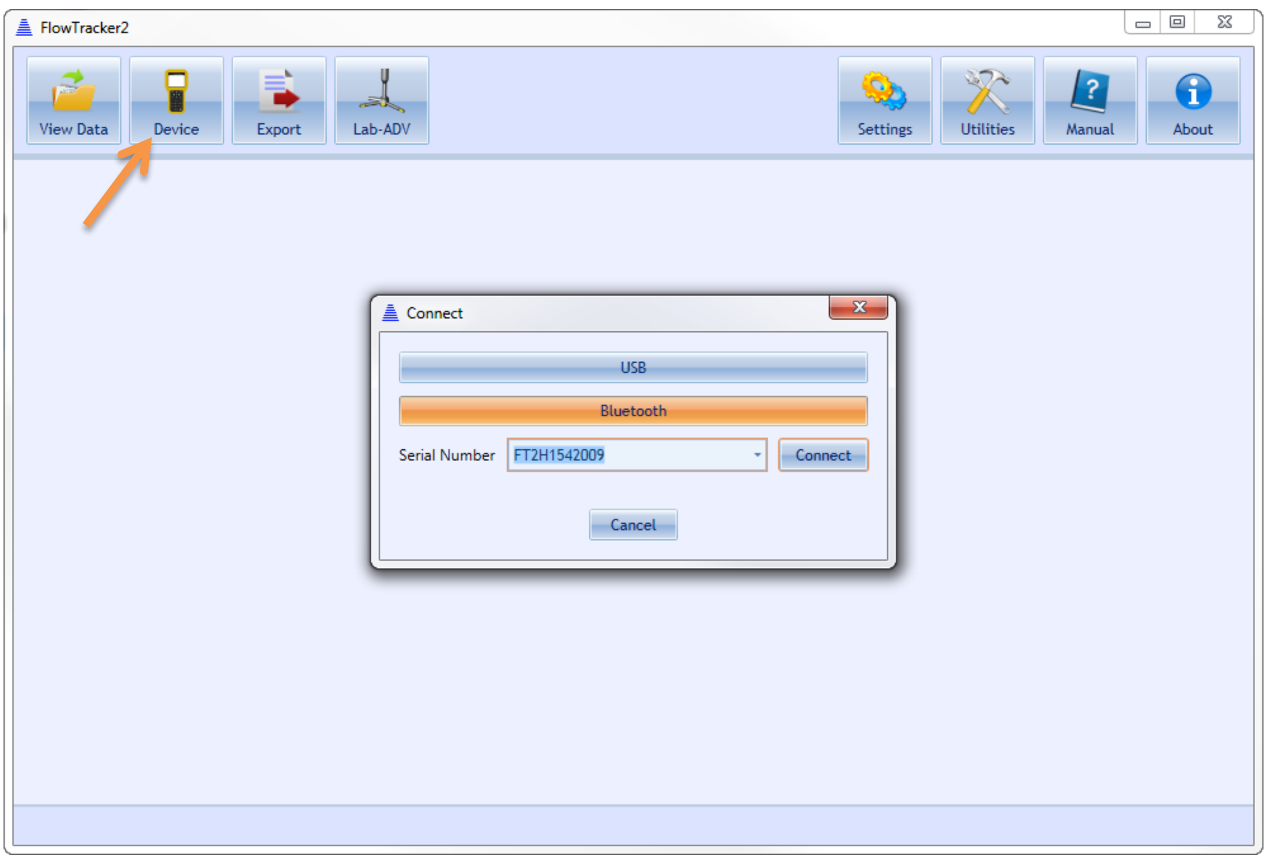


Figure 14:14. Connecting to FlowTracker2

14.5.1 **USB Connection** (Device > USB)

To connect to the FlowTracker2 Handheld ADV using the **USB to micro-USB connection**,

a) Plug the micro-USB connector to the communications connector at the bottom of the Handheld unit (see Figure 1:1).

b) Plug the USB cable end into a USB port of your PC.

c) Ensure that you have the battery pack installed in the Handheld device with sufficient battery power, and turn on your FlowTracker2.

d) From the main menu, navigate to the Communications button (Left panel of Figure 14:15) and click the Center Key. The FlowTracker2 will wait for a signal from the PC, showing the screen in the right panel of Figure 14:15.

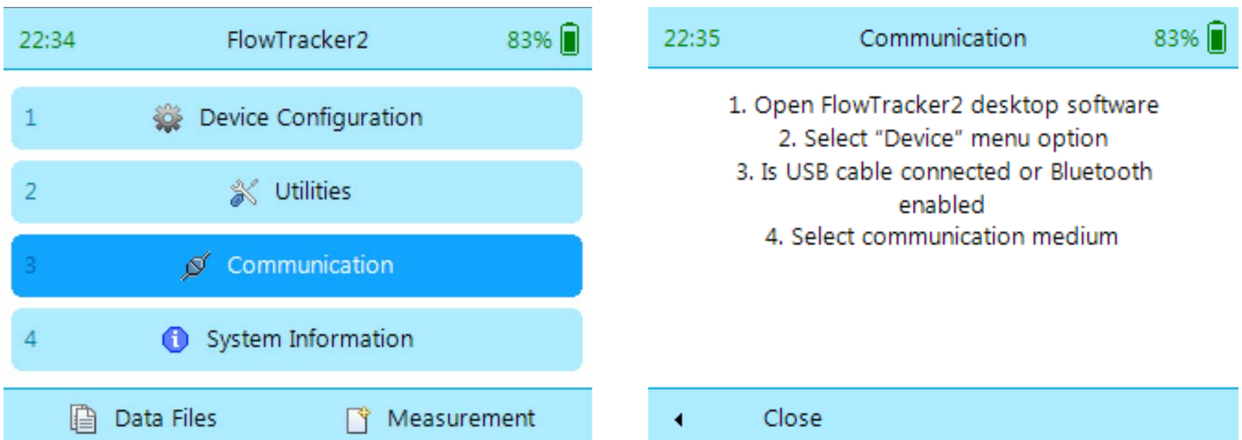


Figure 14:15. Communication dialog

e) From the FlowTracker2 Desktop Software, in the Device dialog, click the USB button. The software will attempt to connect automatically with the FlowTracker2.

f) Once successfully connected, the FlowTracker2 data files will be listed, as shown in Figure 14:16. The handheld will indicate that it is connected to your computer.

14.5.2 **Bluetooth Connection**

Do not use your Windows Bluetooth manager to pair the FlowTracker2 device to your computer's Bluetooth radio. The software will perform the pairing automatically.

To connect to the FlowTracker2 using **Bluetooth**,

a) Ensure that you have the battery pack installed in the Handheld device with sufficient battery power, and turn on your FlowTracker2.

b) From the main menu, navigate to the Communications button (Left panel of Figure 14:14) and click the Center Key. The FlowTracker2 will wait for a signal from the PC, showing the screen in the right panel of Figure 14:14.

c) Ensure that your computer Bluetooth radio (wireless communications) is turned on.

d) Enter the full serial number of your FlowTracker2 device in the Input box that appears (see Figure 14:16).

e) Click the Connect button. A dialog will appear with updates on the Bluetooth connection status.

f) Once successfully connected, the FlowTracker2 data files will be listed, as shown in Figure 14:17. The handheld will indicate that it is connected to your computer.

The FlowTracker2 software will remember different devices after they are first connected using Bluetooth. To remove a device, open the Serial Number drop-down menu and click "remove."

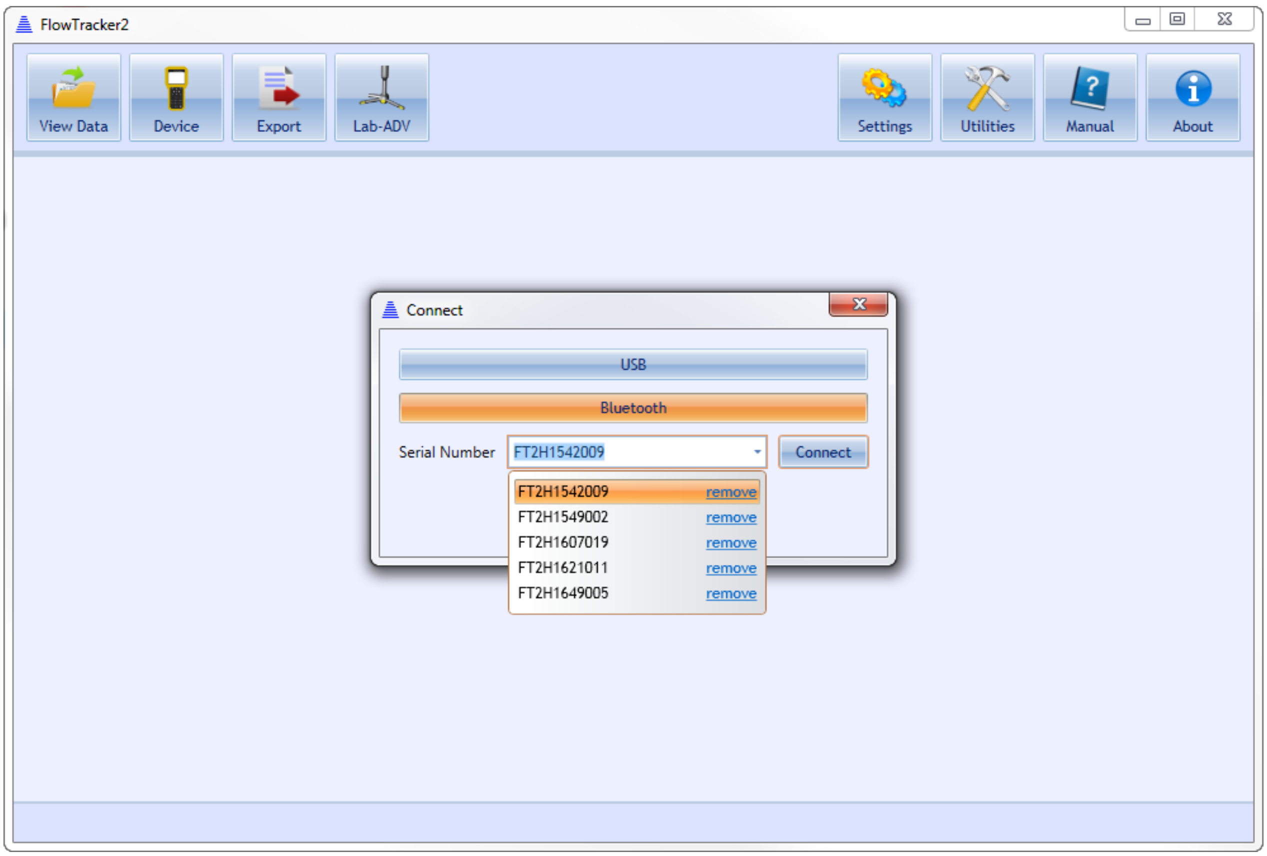


Figure 14:16. Bluetooth Connection Dialog

14.6. Device Menu and Functions

Once connected with the FlowTracker2, there are a number of functions available that allow you to download data and interact with the handheld device. These functions are indicated in Figure 14:16 and are described below.

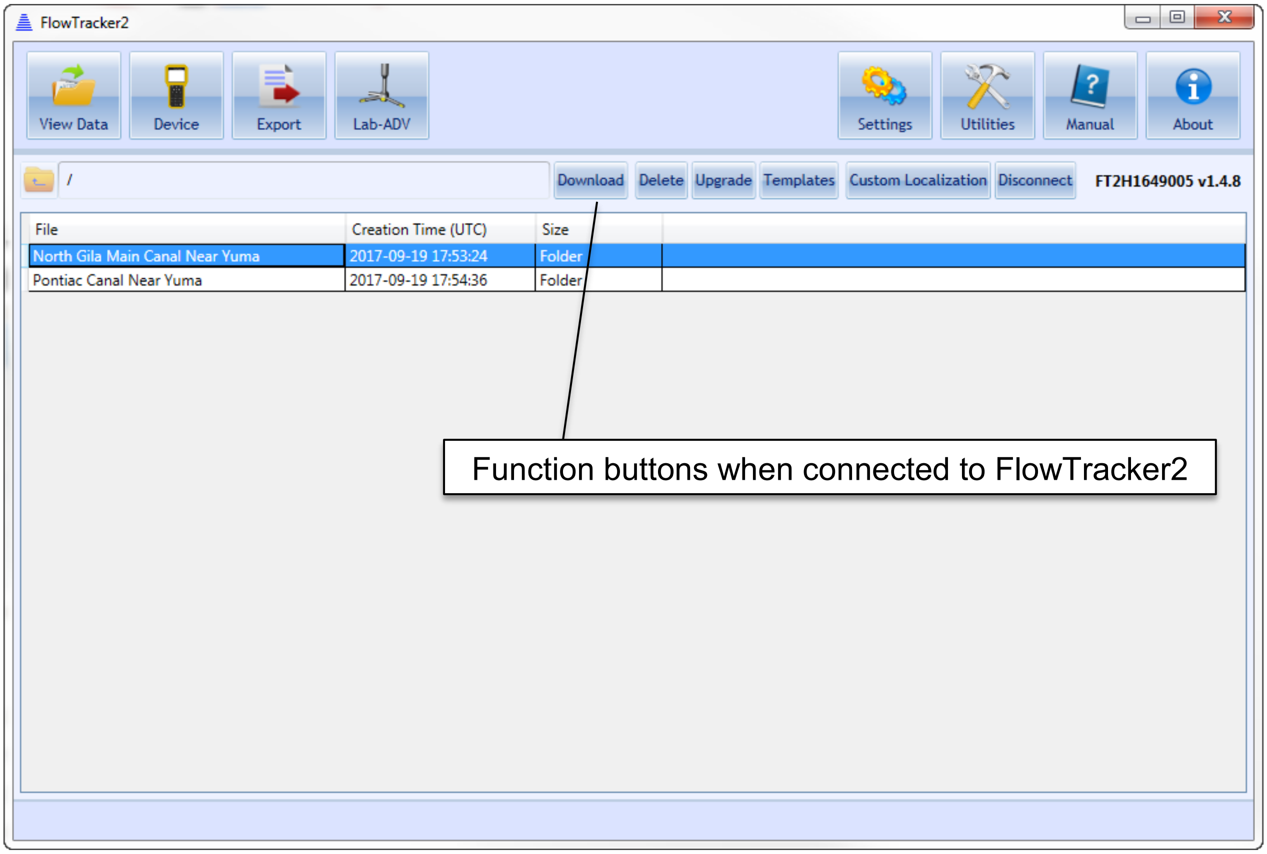


Figure 14:17. Device Menu after successful connection

14.6.1 **Download Data Files** (Device > [Choose your connection] > Download)

To download data files, you must click on a file or multiple files.

- To select a single file, click on that file.
- To select a range of files, hold the **SHIFT** key and select your files.
- To select multiple specific files, hold the **CTRL** key and select your files. You can also de-select files using the **CTRL** key.

Once the files are selected, the **Download** button will be activated. Click the **Download** button. The Download dialog, shown in Figure 14:18, will appear.

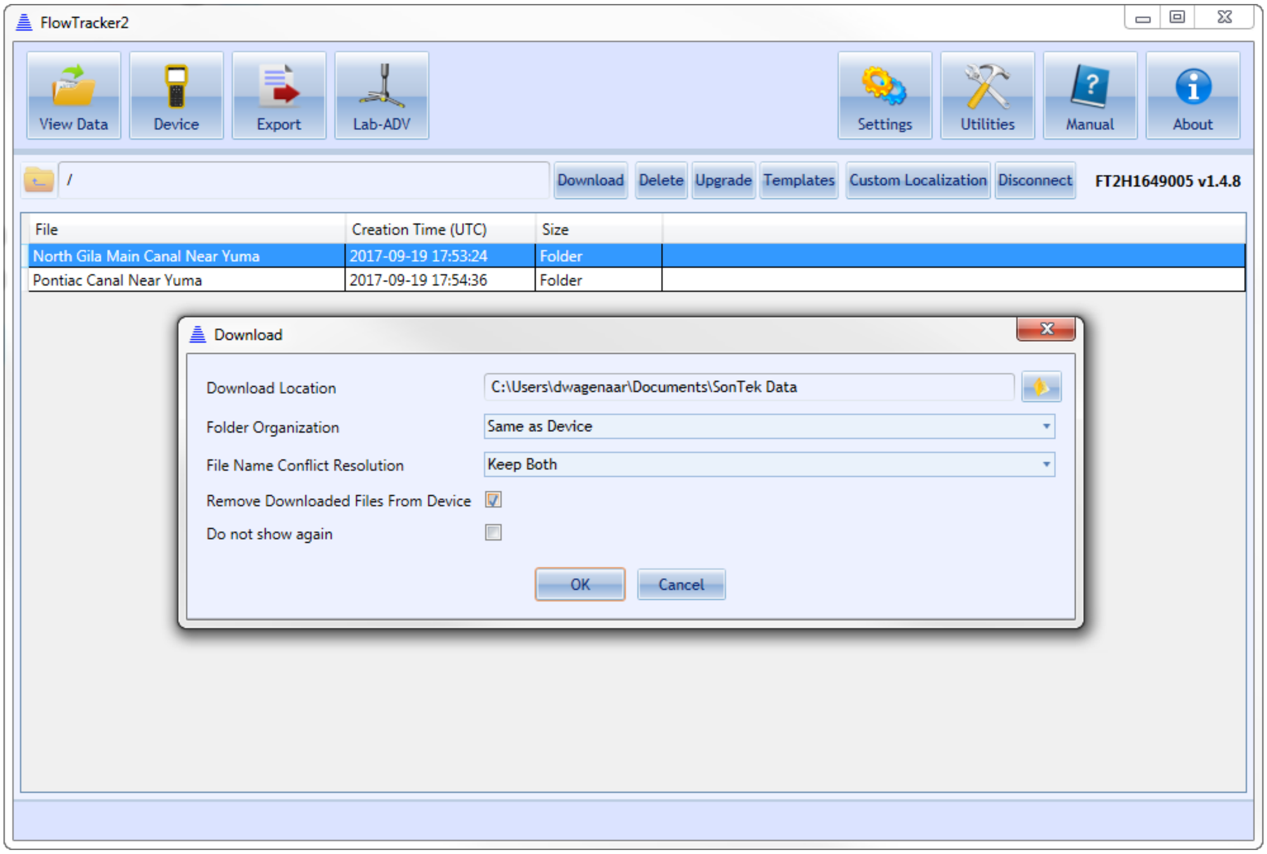


Figure 14:18. Download Data dialog

a) The **Download Location** can be changed by clicking the folder button on the right.

b) The **Folder Organization** option dictates with what type of folder structure data files are stored:

i). **Same as Device** – Each data file will have its own folder with the same naming convention as on the device.

ii). **By Device Serial Number** – files are stored in a folder indicated by the device serial number.

iii). **Single Folder** – all files stored in single folder indicated by the Download Location.

c) The File Name Conflict Resolution provides options when downloading a file from the device with the same file name as one existing in the Download Location directory. The choices are to:

i). **Keep Both** – both files placed in same folder and newest file will have name with incrementally growing number extensions (i.e. "_2.ft", "_3.ft", etc.).

ii). **Skip** – skips downloading duplicate files.

iii). **Overwrite** – overwrites existing file on PC with newly downloaded file of same name.

d) Checking the **Remove Downloaded Files From Device** box will delete any files from the handheld recorder that have been downloaded onto the PC.

e) Checking the **Do not show again** box will save your downloading preferences, and data will automatically be downloaded according to those preferences when the Download button is pushed. To re-enable the dialog box, see Show Download Options Dialog.

14.6.2 Delete Data files (Device > [Choose your connection] > Delete)

To delete data files from the handheld device, select the files to be removed. A prompt will appear to confirm file deletion.

14.6.3 Upgrading FlowTracker2 Firmware (Device > [Choose your connection] > Upgrade)

Periodic firmware updates will be released. The firmware files will be available from the SonTek website (http://www.sontek.com) or by contacting SonTek Technical Support. If you have upgraded your desktop software, but not your firmware, the software will notify you that a firmware upgrade is available upon connection with the FlowTracker2 (shown in Figure 14:19). The firmware file needs to first be downloaded and saved onto the computer used to connect to the FlowTracker2. The **Upgrade** function will open a dialog to select the FlowTracker2 firmware file. Select the appropriate file and click ‘Open’ – the firmware upgrade will begin automatically. First, the firmware file will be uploaded to the handheld device. Then, the handheld device will disconnect automatically from the computer, and will perform the upgrade. When the upgrade is complete, the handheld will restart automatically.

Occasional firmware upgrade files may or may not include an upgrade to the FlowTracker2 probe firmware. Because the ADV probe has its own set of electronics, it has its own firmware that may periodically need updating. When the Handheld firmware is upgraded using the software, the probe firmware is not automatically performed until the Handheld queries the probe. This means that when the probe is accessed (to take a measurement, see its firmware version, perform a beam check, etc.), the probe firmware will automatically be updated, and requires no additional steps by the user. The user will see a pop-up on the Handheld software indicating that the probe firmware upgrade is taking place.

Do not manually disconnect or turn off the device during a firmware upgrade process. Doing so will interrupt the firmware upgrade and potentially cause serious corruptions on the handheld device. It is recommended to use the USB direct connection when upgrading firmware to avoid possible wireless connection interruptions.

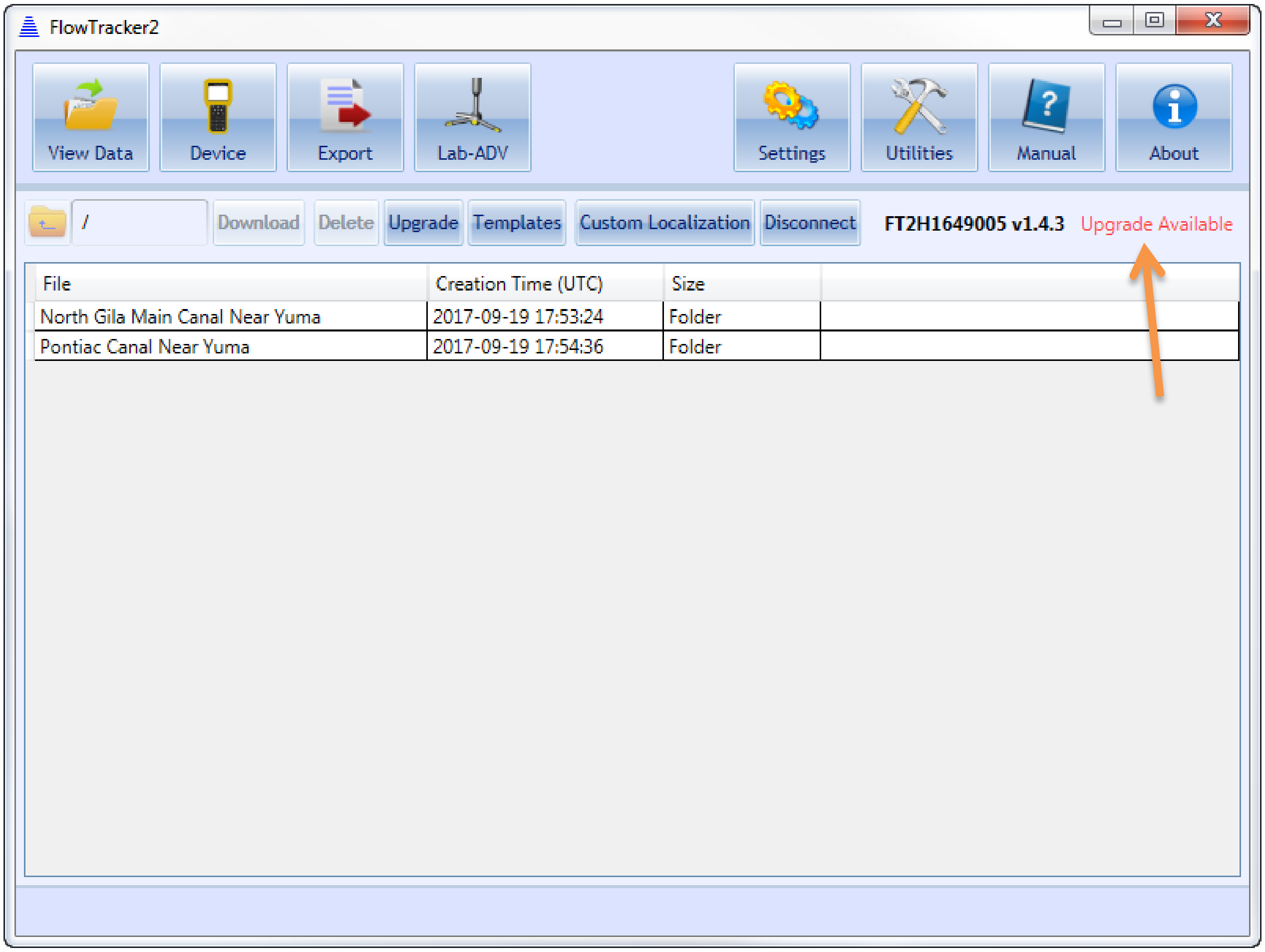


Figure 14:19. Firmware Upgrade Alert

14.6.4 **Uploading and Downloading Templates** (Device > [Choose your connection] > Templates)

The ability to use templates is a new feature in the FlowTracker2 Handheld ADV operation, allowing the user to easily store and load data that are applicable to multiple measurements (such as site name, site number, operator, etc.). This feature allows faster operation because the user will not need to input certain values for each measurement. Please see Configuration Templates on how to create and manipulate templates from the FlowTracker2 Handheld device.

To **download** an existing template from the FlowTracker2, click the Templates button after connecting with a unit. The available templates stored on the device will appear. Select the appropriate files, click Download to PC, and choose a destination on your computer to save the files. The template files will be saved with the extension .ft_template.

To **upload** an existing template from your computer to the FlowTracker2, click Templates > Upload to Device, and select the appropriate .ft_template file. The template file will be added to the list of templates on your device that appears.

Templates can be either created on the Handheld device and modified on a computer, or created through the desktop software and uploaded to the device. Please refer to New Discharge Template for instructions on how to create a template file using the software. Please refer to Opening FlowTracker2 Template Files (.ft_template) for instructions on opening and editing template files.

14.6.5 **Custom Localization**

Custom Localization allows a user to import Language files onto the handheld device. Please see Run Translator for instructions on creating a Language file (.lang).

14.6.6 **Disconnecting the FlowTracker2**

To disconnect the FlowTracker2 from the computer, click the **Disconnect** button.

14.7. Opening a Data File

To view FlowTracker data files, click the **View Data** button to turn View Data on. The first time this button is clicked, a dialog will appear to select a file. To open more files, click the **'+' tab** shown in Figure 14:20. The Open File dialog (Figure 14:21) will appear. The FlowTracker2 software is capable of opening the following file types:

- FlowTracker File (.ft)
- FlowTracker Beamcheck File (.ft_beamcheck)
- FlowTracker Template File (.ft_template)

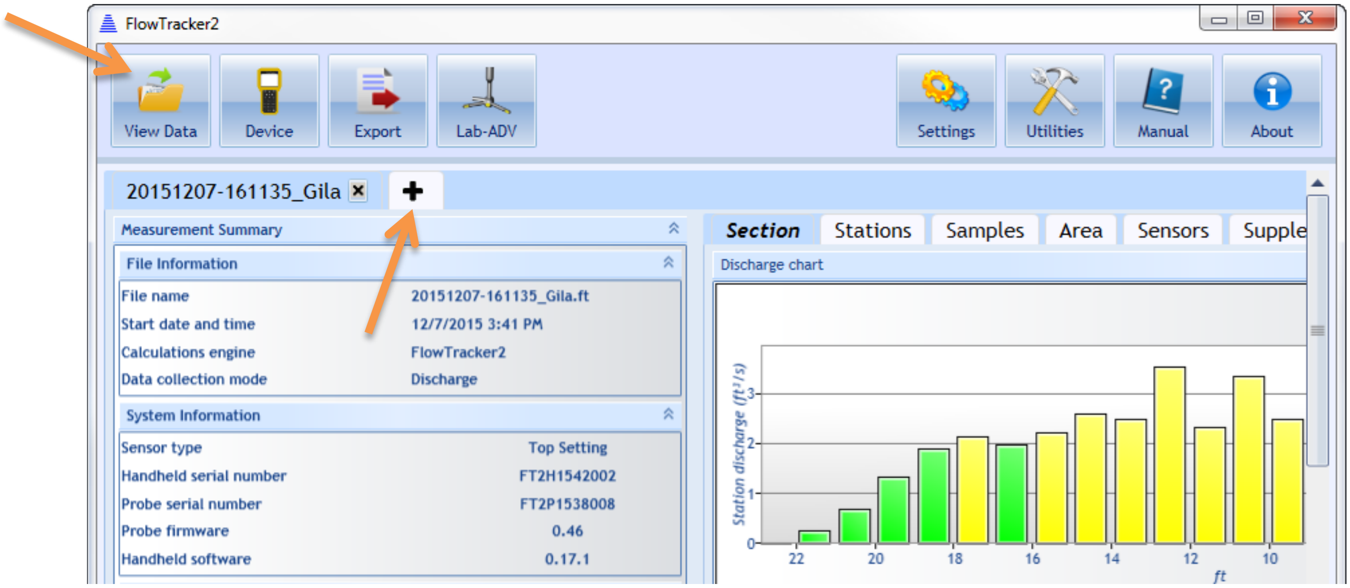


Figure 14:20. + Tab to open additional data files

The FlowTracker2 Desktop software is capable of opening FlowTracker2 (.ft) files only. In order to open files from the Original FlowTracker (.wad), please follow the steps specifically for .wad files in subsequent sections.

14.7.1 Opening FlowTracker2 Handheld ADV Data Files (.ft files)

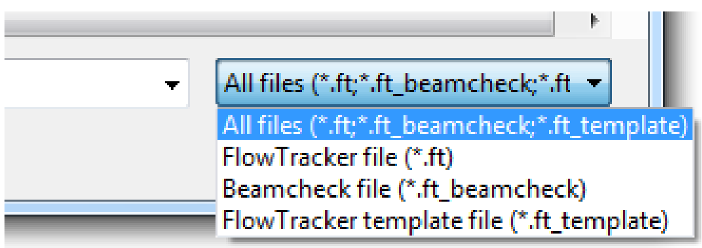


Figure 14:21. Open File Dialog.

The FlowTracker2 .ft file is the main data file that contains your Discharge or General Mode measurement. To open a ft file from the Open File dialog, navigate to the appropriate folder, select “All files” or “FlowTracker file” in the drop-down menu on the lower right, select the appropriate .ft file to be opened from the list populated, and click the **Open** button.

Sample data files are included with the USB that came with your FlowTracker2 package and are located in the “FlowTracker2 Example Data” folder on the USB drive.

14.7.2 Opening FlowTracker2 BeamCheck Files (.ft_beamcheck)

During a measurement, the FlowTracker2 will save BeamCheck information within the .ft file. The FlowTracker2 also has the option of recording a separate BeamCheck which results in a .ft_beamcheck file.

The FlowTracker2 BeamCheck (.ft_beamcheck) file results from a user requesting a BeamCheck to be done separately from a measurement. To open a .ft_beamcheck file, follow the same instructions for opening a .ft file, but select "Beamcheck file (*.ft_beamcheck)" in the drop-down menu, or select an appropriate .ft_beamcheck file from the "All files" drop-down option.

Opening a Beamcheck file produces the screen shown in Figure 14:22. The time stamp on the top of the file dialog corresponds to when the beam check was started, in local time. Handheld information, probe information, beam check statistics, and quality control warnings are displayed in the first row of panels. For each sample, Sample information and statistics are displayed in the second row of panels. A plot of the SNR (dB) against the distance from the ADV receiver is shown at the bottom. To toggle between samples, press the "Previous sample" and "Next sample" buttons. "Show average" will show the average SNR profile over all samples in the beam check file.

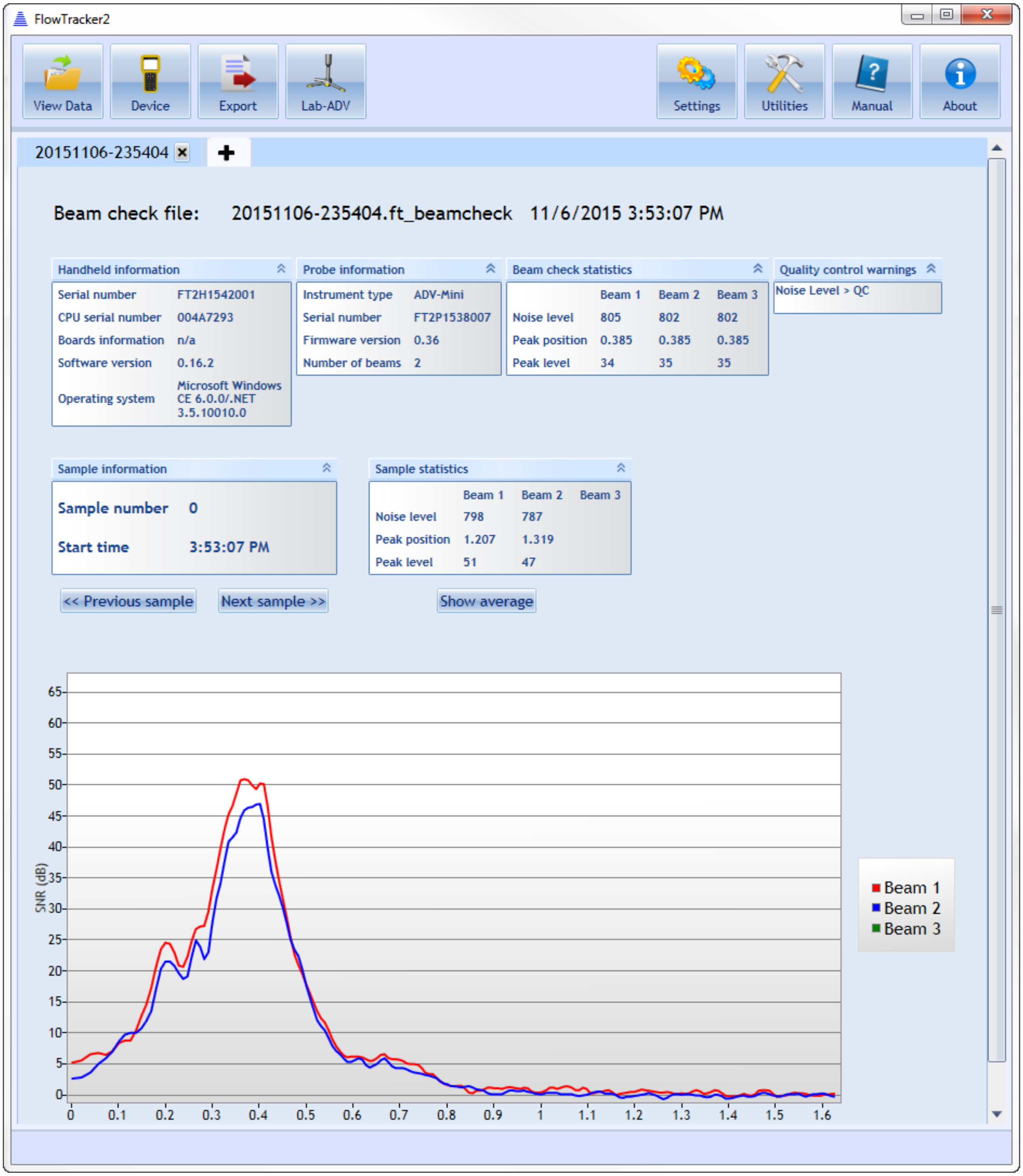


Figure 14:22. Viewing a Beamcheck File

14.7.3 **Opening FlowTracker2 Template Files (.ft_template)**

The FlowTracker2 software allows you to open and edit template files separately from the Handheld unit. To open a template (.ft_template) file, follow the same instructions for opening a .ft file, but select “FlowTracker template file (*.ft_template)” or select an appropriate .ft_template file from the “All files” drop-down option.

When a Discharge template is opened, the screen shown in Figure 14:23 will appear. Fields that can be edited will show input boxes. When a General Mode template is opened, similar fields to the Discharge template will appear, with the exception that Discharge Settings, Station Warning Settings, and Displayed Velocity Methods fields will not be available. To save changes to the template, click the **Save Template File** button.

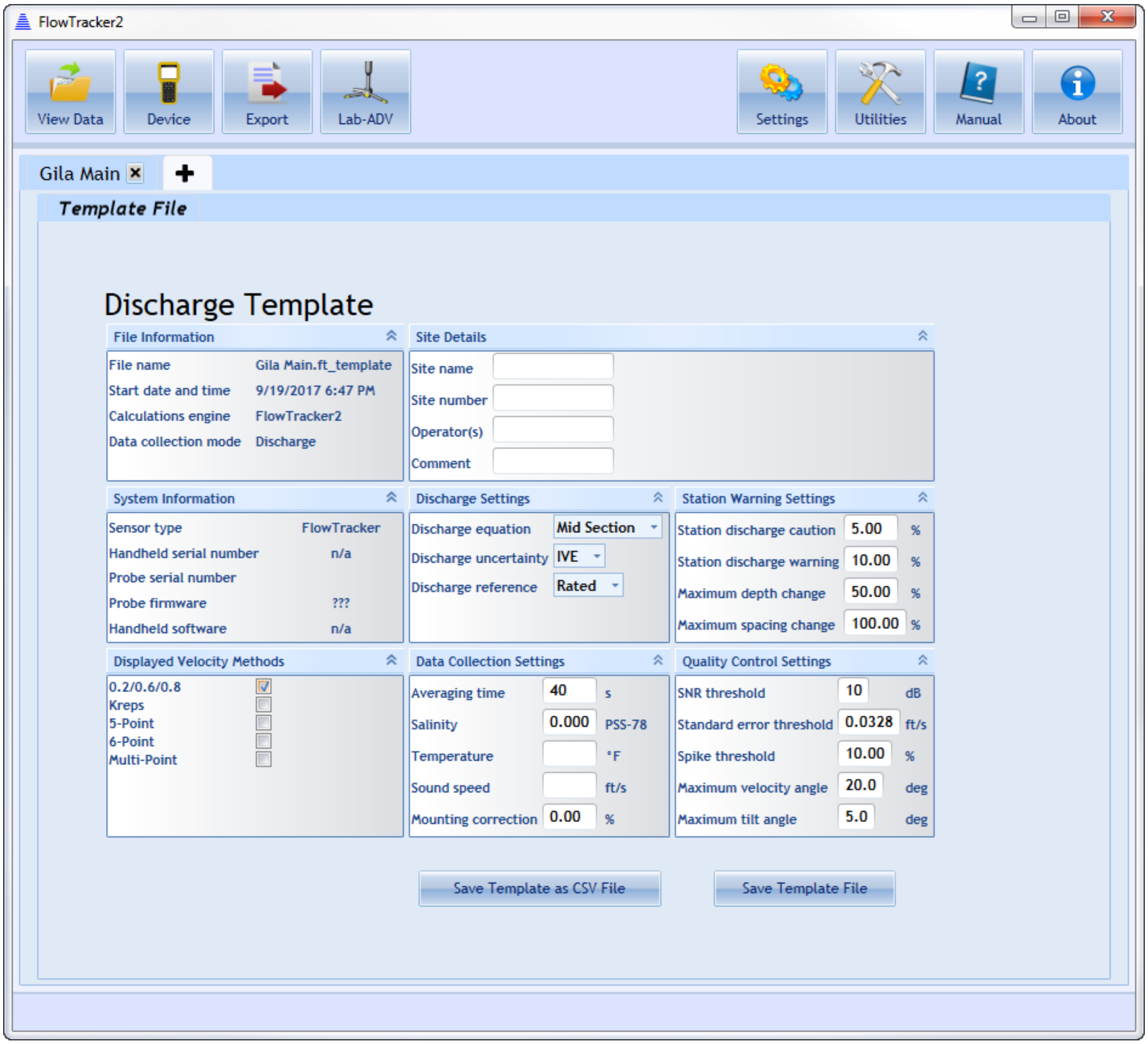


Figure 14:23 - Discharge Template

14.7.4 Opening Original FlowTracker Handheld ADV Data Files (.WAD files)

The FlowTracker2 software can import Original FlowTracker Handheld ADV data from either .wad or ASCII files. The Original FlowTracker files are not directly imported and the FlowTracker2 software provides a tool to convert .wad or ASCII files to the .ft format that can be opened using the software. The Original FlowTracker import tool can be accessed under Utilities, shown in Figure 14:24.

Figure 14:24. Original FlowTracker .wad File Import Tool

The FlowTracker2 software supply two options to import Original FlowTracker data from either the ASCII or WAD files, shown in Figure 14:24.

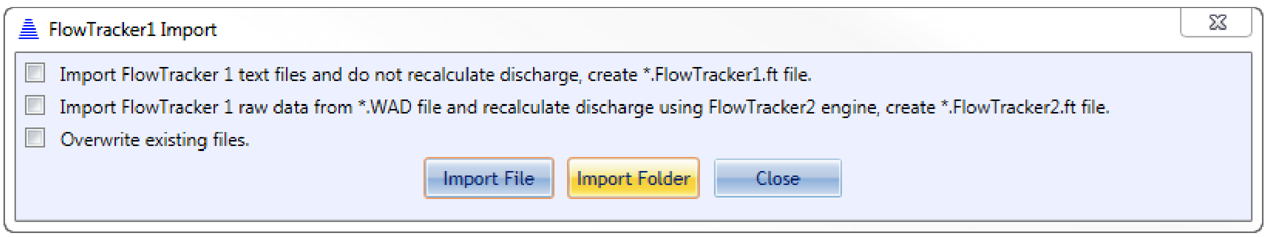


Figure 14:25. FlowTarcker1 Import

The criteria associated with each file format import are summarized in Table 14:2. Import of ASCII files will preserve the Original FlowTracker discharge calculations. If any editing is performed in FlowTracker2 software, the Original FlowTracker discharge will be recalculated based on FlowTracker2 Engine.

Table 14-2. Original FlowTracker File Format Import

File Format	Calculation	Engine	Requirement
ASCII	**Not Recalculated**	Original FlowTracker Engine	The (4) ASCII and WAD files must be present in the same folder. The .DIS, .DAT, .CTL, and .SUM ASCII files are exported using the Original FlowTracker desktop software
WAD	**Recalculated**	FlowTracker2 Engine	The WAD file must be present in the folder.

ASCII: The "Put Headers on ASCII Files" option in the Original FlowTracker desktop software must be selected before the ASCII files are created. This will ensure that header information is placed at the top of the ASCII file.

WAD: Only WAD files generated post 2006 firmware can be converted.

The import process shown in Figure 14:25. FlowTarcker1 Import allows the user to import a single or multiple Original FlowTracker files at a time,

- **Import File** – Select the .wad file you would like to convert. The ASCII exports must be associated with this file, or you will receive an error message during the data import. The resulting file converted will have the same file name, but the .wad extension will be replaced with **.FlowTracker1.ft**.
- **Import Folder** – Select the folder containing multiple .wad files you would like to convert. The tool will look within subfolders recursively to convert all .wad files with associated ASCII exports. If the ASCII exports do not exist in the same folder(s) as the .wad files, an error message will appear. The resulting files converted will have the same file name, but the .wad extension will be replaced with **.FlowTracker1.ft.**

The **.FlowTracker1.ft** file can now be opened in similar method as the FlowTracker2, .ft file.

14.8. Overview of View Data Options

When a FlowTracker data file is opened, three panes will appear (Figure 14:26): the Measurement Summary pane, the main viewing pane (including tabs offering various views), and the Settings pane.

Figure 14:26. Layout of Data Viewing Window and Section Tab

14.8.1 Measurement Summary Pane

The Measurement Summary Pane values are summarized in Table 14:3.

Table 14-3. Measurement Summary Pane

Category	Value	Description
File Information	File name	File name
	Start date and time	Start date and time of measurement
	Calculations engine	Identifies which calculation algorithm was used: Original FlowTracker (FlowTracker1) or FlowTracker2
	Data collection mode	Discharge or General Mode
System Information	Sensor type	Top setting, Universal, or Ice (not available with Original FlowTracker)
	Handheld serial number	Handheld device serial number
	Probe serial number	Probe serial number (not available with Original FlowTracker)
	Probe firmware	Probe firmware
	Handheld software	Handheld software version
Discharge Summary	# Stations	Number of stations measured
	Mean depth	Mean depth over all stations
	Mean velocity	Mean velocity over all velocity measurements
	Mean SNR	Mean Signal to Noise Ratio over all velocity measurements
	Mean temp	Mean temperature over all measurements
	Avg interval	Probe averaging interval per sample (in seconds)
	Total width	Total transect width
	Total area	Total transect area
	Total discharge	Total discharge
Discharge Uncertainty	Category	ISO or IVE
	Accuracy	Accuracy (%)
	Depth	Uncertainty on depth (%)
	Velocity	Uncertainty on velocity (%)
	Width	Uncertainty on width (%)
	Method	Uncertainty on method used (%)
	# Stations	Uncertainty on number of stations (%)

Category	Value	Description
	Overall	Total uncertainty
View Controls	Chart size + / Chart size -	Increase or decrease size of all plots within software
	Reset all	Reset size of all plots to default

14.8.2 Main Viewing Pane

The main viewing pane consists of seven tabular views in Discharge Mode, and 6 tabs in General Mode. The contents of each tab are described below.

14.8.2.1 Section

The Section plots (Figure 14:26) are shown with respect to station location. The left bank is always shown at the left regardless of whether measurements were taken starting at the left or right bank. Plots available are:

- **Station discharge** – discharge per station
- **Velocity** – mean velocity per sample. Blue vectors indicate the mean velocity measured (in the X-direction with respect to the ADV probe). If multiple points exist, the blue vector represents the vertical average. The red vector(s) indicate actual velocity measured at each point, incorporating the Y-component of flow to indicate the skew ness of the flow with respect to the X-axis.
- **Depth** – depth measured at each station (from user input at each station). The actual measurement depths are indicated by dots. Hovering over the dots produces a pop-up showing the actual depth those measurements were made.

14.8.2.2 Stations

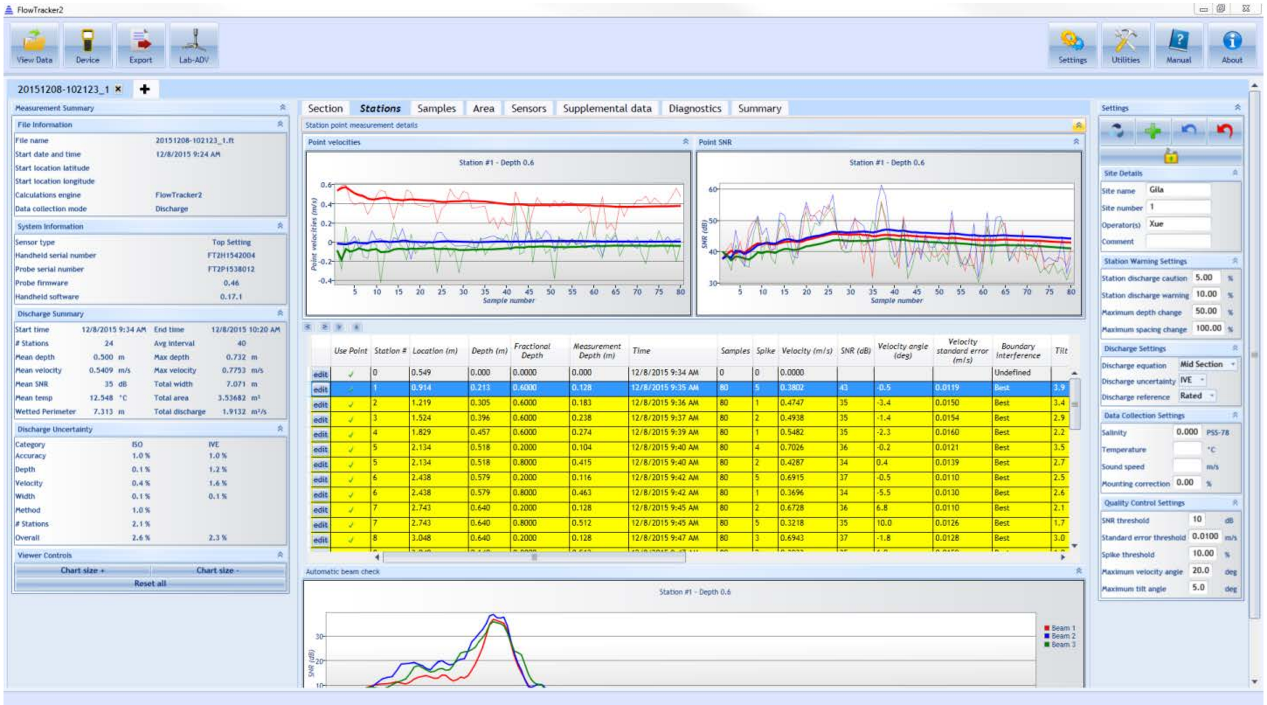


Figure 14:27. Layout of Stations Tab.

The Stations tab (Figure 14:27) shows detailed data for each station. The station in active view is highlighted in blue. Clicking on a different station line will highlight that station, and its available data will be displayed. Fields in the Station tab can be edited. For details on how to edit various parameters, please refer to Section 14.9 . Plots/data available are:

- **Velocities** – X,Y, (and Z, if using a 3D probe) velocities measured during a station point measurement spanning chosen sampling period,
- **SNR** – mean beam SNR measured during a station point measurement spanning chosen sampling period,
- **Station information** – Station information summary. Values displayed are described in Table 14:4. The number of rows and columns that are viewable can be changed by using the four arrows that appear above the station information summary table in the software.

The continuous lines displayed in the graphics are defined under the following categories,

i). **Thin** continuous line represents the one second raw data,
ii). **Thick** continuous line represents moving average of the one second raw data.

Table 14-4: Station Information Values Available

Edit	Orig. FT	FT2	Value	Description

Edit	Orig. FT	FT2	Value	Description
✓	✓	✓	Use Point	Indicates whether the station is used in the discharge calculation. This feature can be edited.
	✓	✓	Station #	Station number
✓	✓	✓	Location	Station location along tag line
✓	✓	✓	Depth	Depth at each station (from user input during measurement)
	✓	✓	Fractional Depth	Fractional depth
	✓	✓	Measurement Depth	Actual measurement depth
	✓	✓	Time	Time at start of station
	✓	✓	Samples	Number of samples in station
	✓	✓	Spike	Number of spikes during measurement period
✓	✓	✓	Velocity	Measured mean velocity
	✓	✓	SNR	Mean SNR (all beams)
	✓	✓	Velocity angle	Mean velocity angle with respect to FlowTracker probe X axis
	✓	✓	Velocity standard error	Velocity standard error
	✓	✓	Boundary interference	Boundary interference quality parameter (Best, Good, Fair, Poor)
		✓	Tilt	Mean Tilt
✓	✓	✓	Correction factor	User entered correction factor
	✓	✓	Width	Width of section
	✓	✓	Area	Area of section
	✓	✓	Mean velocity	Mean velocity calculated by dividing discharge by area
	✓	✓	Station discharge	Station discharge
✓	✓	✓	Temperature	Mean station temperature
	✓	✓	Warnings	Warnings associated with each station. Stations with warnings are highlighted in yellow.
✓	✓	✓	Comment	Comments from user input during measurement
✓	✓	✓	Station type	Station type (OpenWater, LeftBank, RightBank, IslandEdge, Ice)
✓	✓	✓	Velocity method	Velocity method used
		✓	GPS Latitude	GPS Latitude if GPS fix was recorded
		✓	GPS Longitude	GPS Longitude if GPS fix was recorded
		✓	Altitude	GPS Altitude if GPS fix was recorded
		✓	Number of	GPS number of satellites if GPS fix

Edit	Orig. FT	FT2	Value	Description
			satellites	was recorded
		✓	Fix quality	GPS fix quality if GPS fix was recorded
		✓	HDOP	HDOP if GPS fix was recorded

- **Automatic beam check** – For each station, the mean beam check data is displayed below the station information summary table. The SNR for each ADV beam is plotted with distance ("Range") from the sample volume.

14.8.2.3 Samples

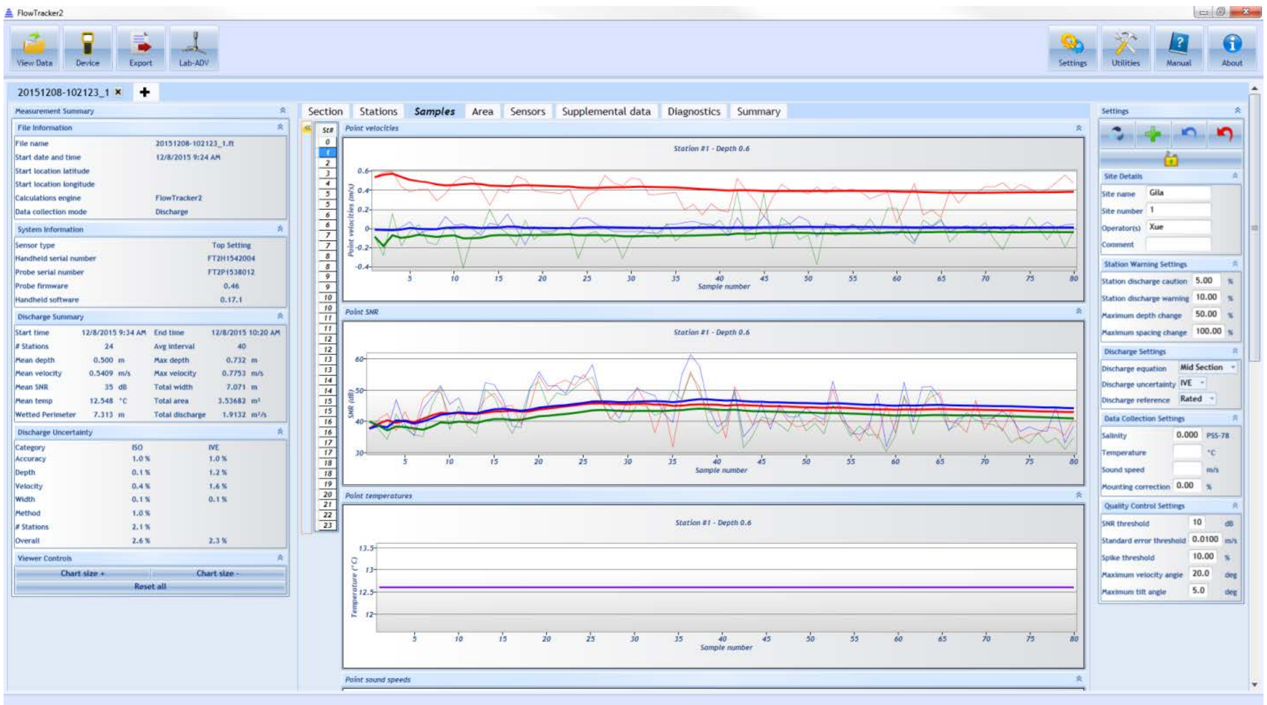


Figure 14:28. Layout of Samples

The Samples tab (Figure 14:28) contains the following plots. The point measurement selection can be performed by selecting the appropriate station number in the "Station Number" column on the left of plots. All point measurements at the same station will be allocated the same station number. The header of each plot distinguishes between the specific station number and point measurement.

- **Velocities** – X,Y, (and Z, if using a 3D probe) velocities measured during a station point measurement spanning chosen sampling period,
- **SNR** – beam SNR measured during a station point measurement spanning chosen sampling period,
- **Temperature** – Temperature measured during a station point measurement spanning chosen sampling period,

- **Pressure (Pressure Sensor)** – Pressure measured during a station point measurement spanning chosen sampling period (only available ,
- **Sound Speed** – Sound Speed calculated during a station point measurement spanning chosen sampling period,
- **Voltage** – Voltage measured during a station point measurement spanning chosen sampling period,
- **Pitch** – Pitch measured during a station point measurement spanning chosen sampling period,
- **Roll** – Roll measured during a station point measurement spanning chosen sampling period.

The continuous lines displayed in the graphics are defined under the following categories,

i). **Thin** continuous line represents the one second raw data,
ii). **Thick** continuous line represents moving average of the one second raw data.

14.8.2.4 Area

Figure 14:29. Layout of Area Tab

The Area tab (Figure 14:29) contains the following plots:

- **Area** – the Area plotted with respect to the tagline location of each station

- **Width** – the transect Width plotted with respect to the tagline location of each station
- **Velocity angle** – the angle of the flow with respect to the X-axis of the ADV probe plotted with respect to the tagline location of each station. The mean is calculated over all station samples. In the case of multiple point measurements per station, a value will appear for each point measurements at a given station location.

14.8.2.5 Sensors

Figure 14:30. Layout of Sensors Tab

The Sensors tab (Figure 14:30) contains the following plots:

- **Temperature** – the mean temperature recorded during each station plotted with respect to the tagline location of each station. In the case of multiple point measurements per station, a value will appear for each point measurements at a given station location.
- **Tilt** – the mean tilt recorded during each station plotted with respect to the tagline location of each station. In the case of multiple point measurements per station, a value will appear for each point measurements at a given station location.
- **Battery** - the mean battery voltage recorded during each station plotted with respect to the tagline location of each station. In the case of multiple point measurements per station, a value will appear for each point measurements at a given station location.

14.8.2.6 Supplemental Data

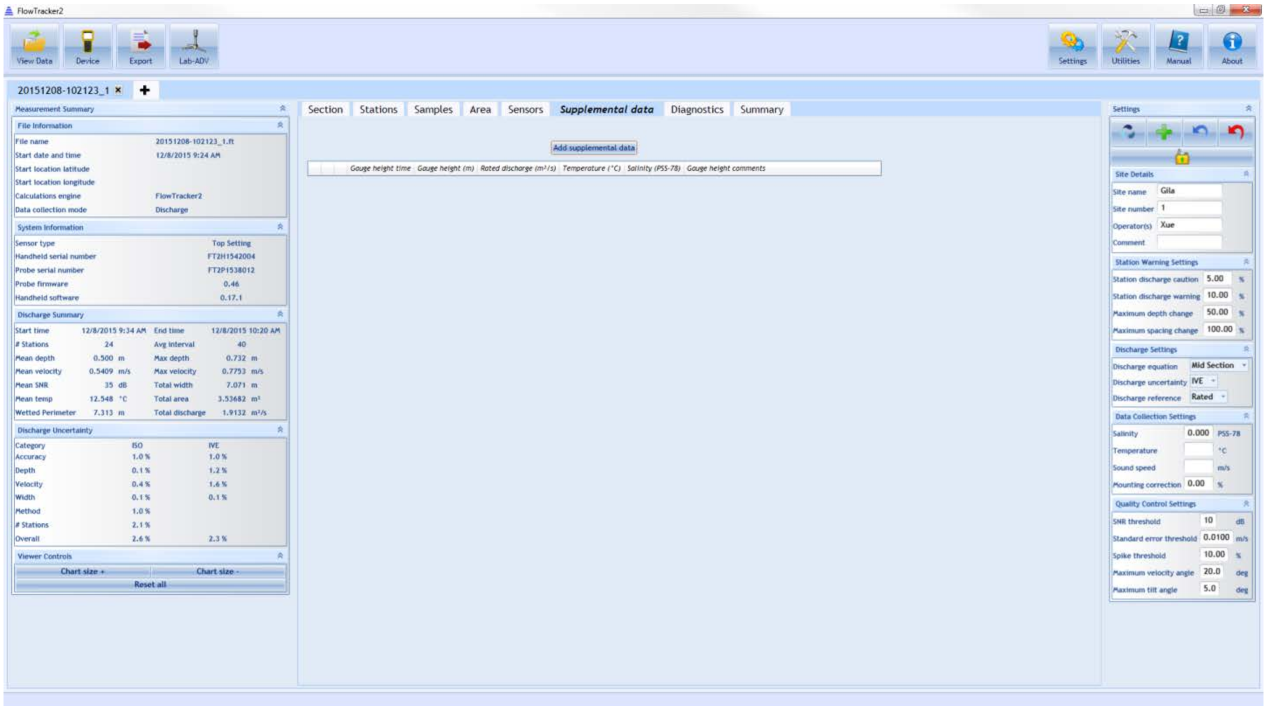


Figure 14:31. Layout of Supplemental Data Tab

Any supplemental data added during the measurement will appear in the Supplemental Data tab (Figure 14:31). Multiple supplemental data entries can be available during a measurement. Supplemental data values are the following:

- **Gauge height time** – time at which gauge height is taken
- **Gauge height** – gauge height read from external source
- **Rated discharge** – rated discharge acquired from external source
- **Temperature** – temperature acquired from external source
- **Salinity** – salinity acquired from external source
- **Gauge height comments** – any comments associated with gauge height or rated discharge reading

Supplemental data can be added after the measurement is collected in Post-Processing. Please refer to Section 14.9 for post-processing instructions.

14.8.2.7 Diagnostics

Figure 14:32. Layout of Diagnostics Tab

The Diagnostics tab (Figure 14:32) shows data pertaining to the quality of the measurement. The following plots are available:

- **SNR** – the mean SNR at the ADV sample volume over all samples and all beams at each station. In the case of multiple point measurements per station, a value will appear for each point measurements at a given station location. In the case of multiple point measurements per station, a value will appear for each point measurements at a given station location.
- **Spike** – the number of spikes that were detected over all samples at each station. Spikes are removed from the velocity measurement. In the case of multiple point measurements per station, a value will appear for each point measurements at a given station location.
- **Velocity standard error** – the velocity standard error calculated over all samples at each station. In the case of multiple point measurements per station, a value will appear for each point measurements at a given station location.
- **Samples** – the number of samples collected per station

14.8.2.8 Summary

The Summary tab shows a comprehensive overview of the measurement. The information presented in the other tabs and panes are summarized in this tab. Please refer to other sections for descriptions of the specific values presented in this tab.

One feature in the Summary tab is the ability to export the measurement to a PDF file. Please see Export Discharge Summary to PDF for details on how to use this function.

14.8.3 **Settings Pane**

The Settings pane contains general information about the site, the measurement, and user input values. Much of this information is editable – please refer to Post-Processing FlowTracker Measurements regarding how to edit these values. The information presented in the Settings Pane is summarized in Table 14:5.

Table 14-5. Summary of Settings Pane Values

Category	Edit	Value	Description
Site Details	✓	Site Name	Site name
	✓	Site Number	Site number
	✓	Operator(s)	Operators(s)
	✓	Comment	Comments
Station Warning Settings	✓	Maximum station discharge	Maximum % discharge at each station after which a warning will be issued
	✓	Maximum depth change	Maximum % depth change between consecutive stations after which a warning will be issued
	✓	Maximum spacing change	Maximum % spacing change between consecutive stations after which a warning will be issued
Discharge Settings	✓	Discharge equation	Discharge equation used in discharge calculation (MidSection, MeanSection, Japanese)
	✓	Discharge uncertainty	Discharge uncertainty calculation used to calculate uncertainty (Iso, Ive, None)
	✓	Discharge reference	Discharge reference (Measured, Rated)
Data Collection Settings	✓	Salinity	Salinity used in velocity measurement
	✓	Temperature	Temperature used in velocity measurement. If left blank,

Category	Edit	Value	Description
			will use measured temperature in velocity calculation. If value is entered, this value will be used.
	✓	Sound speed	Sound speed used in velocity measurement. If left blank, will use measured temperature and entered salinity in calculation of sound speed used in velocity calculation. If value is entered, this value will be used.
	✓	Mounting correction	Mounting correction (%) applied to velocity value.
Quality Control Settings	✓	SNR threshold	SNR threshold (dB). If mean SNR at sample volume is below this value, a warning will be issued.
	✓	Standard error threshold	Standard error threshold (in velocity units). If standard error over all samples at each station exceeds this threshold, a warning will be issued.
	✓	Spike threshold	Spike threshold (in counts). If number of spikes at a station exceeds this value, a warning will be issued.
	✓	Maximum velocity angle	Maximum velocity angle (in degrees). If mean angle of flow with respect to ADV X-axis exceeds this value at a station, a warning will be issued.
	✓	Maximum tilt angle	Maximum tilt angle (in degrees). If mean tilt at a station exceeds this value, a warning will be issued.

14.9. Post-Processing FlowTracker Measurements

A powerful new feature in the FlowTracker2 now allows the user to edit most values associated with a measurement after the measurement is taken. This section provides instructions on the post-processing ability of the FlowTracker2 software.

Measurements taken with the Original FlowTracker Handheld ADV can also be edited with the FlowTracker2 software.

14.9.1 **Enable Editing**

14.9.1.1 FlowTracker2 .ft File Editing

By default, any measurement taken with the FlowTracker2 will have editing enabled. The editing pane appears in the top right corner of the software, shown in Figure 14:33.

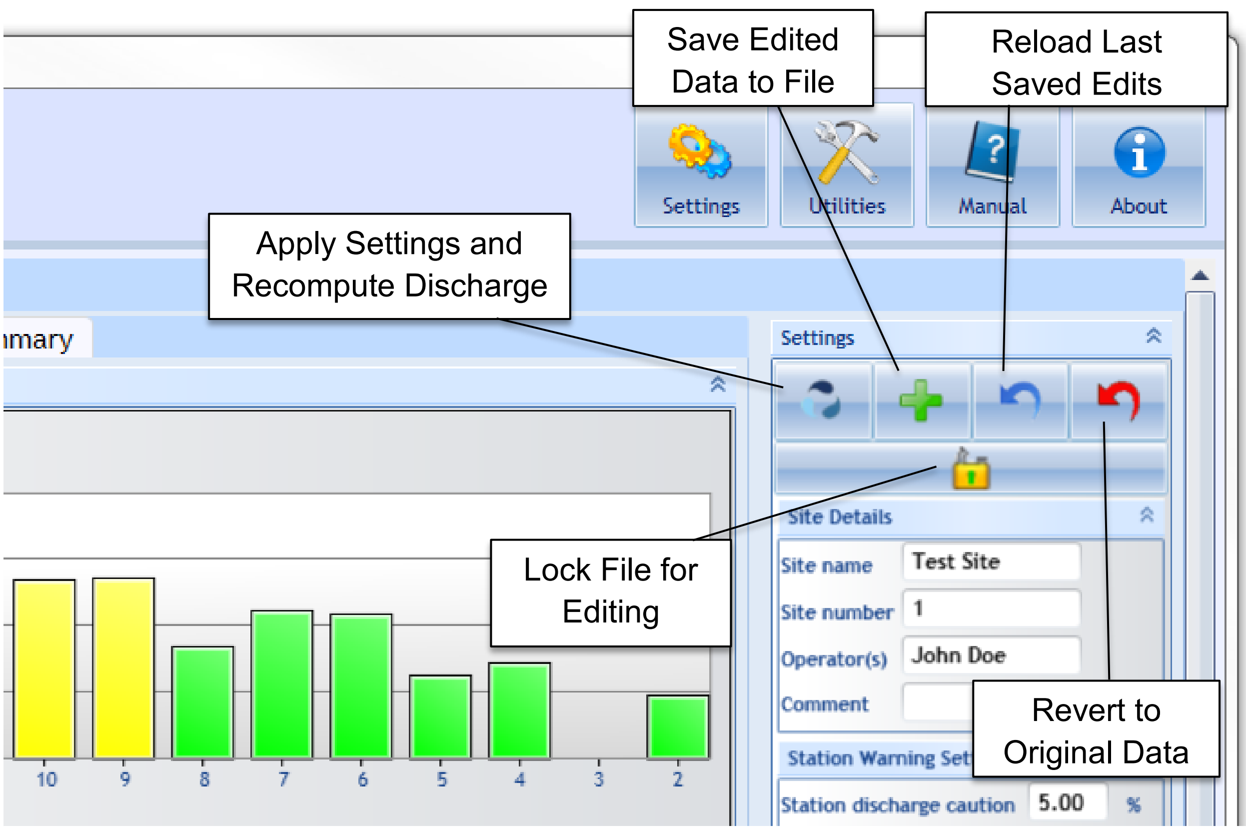


Figure 14:33. FlowTracker 2 Editing Buttons

Functions include:

- **Apply Settings and Recompute Discharge** – after any changes in the Settings Pane (right pane), hitting this button will apply those changes and recalculate discharge.

- **Save Edited Data to File** – after hitting the Apply Settings and Recompute Discharge button, changes will appear in the values displayed in the software, but these changes will not be saved to a file unless the Save Edited Data to File is pressed. A file containing edits will be created in the same folder where the .ft file resides with a "_edited" extension. Once this file is created, opening the .ft file will open the edited file showing the last saved edits.
- **Reload Last Saved Edits** – after performing multiple edits that are not saved, this button is used to revert back to the last saved edits.
- **Revert to Original Data** – reverts to the original .ft file that was downloaded from the FlowTracker2 Handheld unit. The original .ft file will always be preserved regardless of new edits saved.
- **Lock File for Editing** – enabling the feature will prevent any changes to the original measurement file or edited data during post processing. If changes are required to the measurement file or edited data set, the Lock File feature needs to be disabled.

14.9.1.2 Original FlowTracker .wad File Editing

The editing of Original FlowTracker data (.wad files converted to .OriginalFlowTracker1.ft) in FlowTracker2 Desktop Software is not enabled in this software version. The Lock File feature will be enabled (Locked) when opening .OriginalFlowTracker1.ft files, preventing any changes to the Original FlowTracker data.

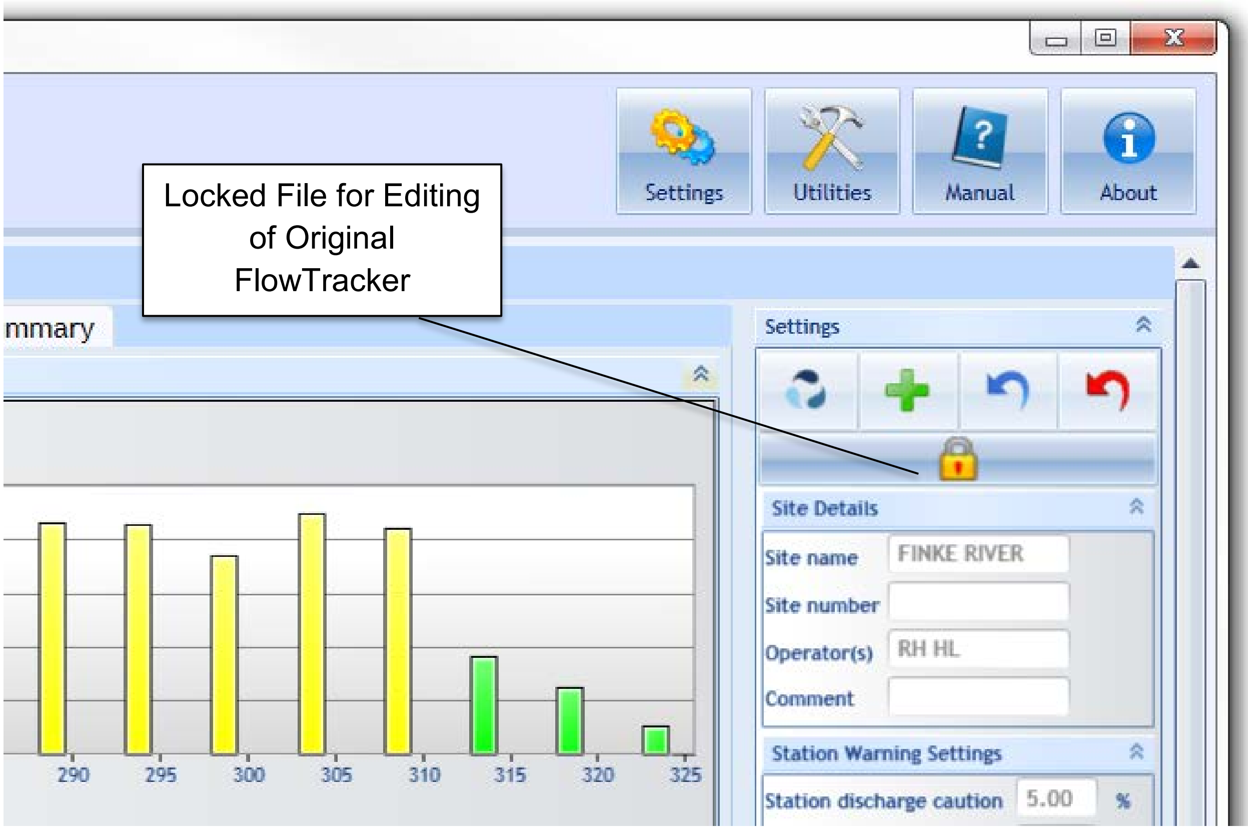


Figure 14:34. Original FlowTracker Editing

14.9.2 Editing through the Settings Pane

The values in the Settings Pane are summarized in Table 14:5. All of these values can be edited. To edit, type in the appropriate changes in the input boxes and press **the Apply Settings and Recompute Discharge** button. Changes will update all necessary parameters displayed in all panes and tabs in the software data view. As shown in Figure 14:35, changed values will appear in the appropriate panes, with their original value included in square brackets.

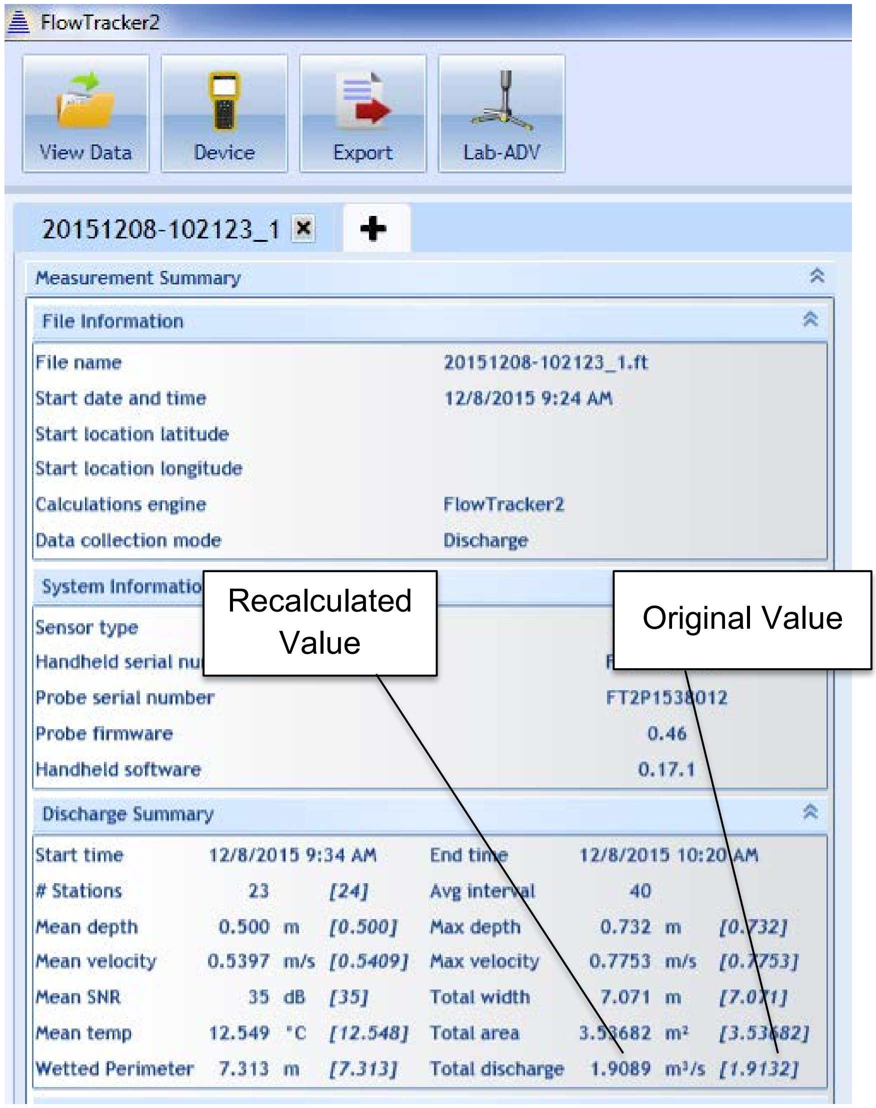


Figure 14:35. Edited Values Updated

14.9.3 **Editing by Station**

To edit values associated with individual stations within a measurement, first go to the Stations tab. The editable values associated with each station are indicated in Table 14:4. Identify the station you wish to edit, and press the Edit button on the left of that station line, shown in Figure 14:36.

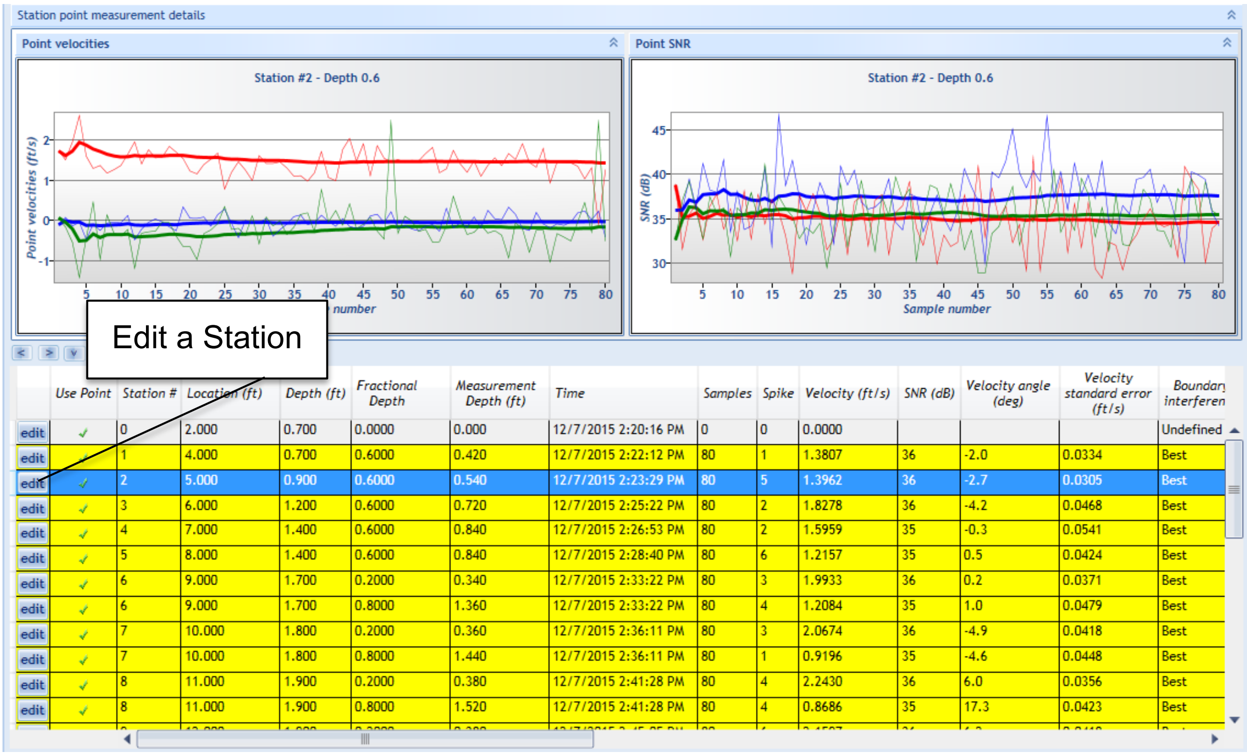


Figure 14:36. Edit by Station

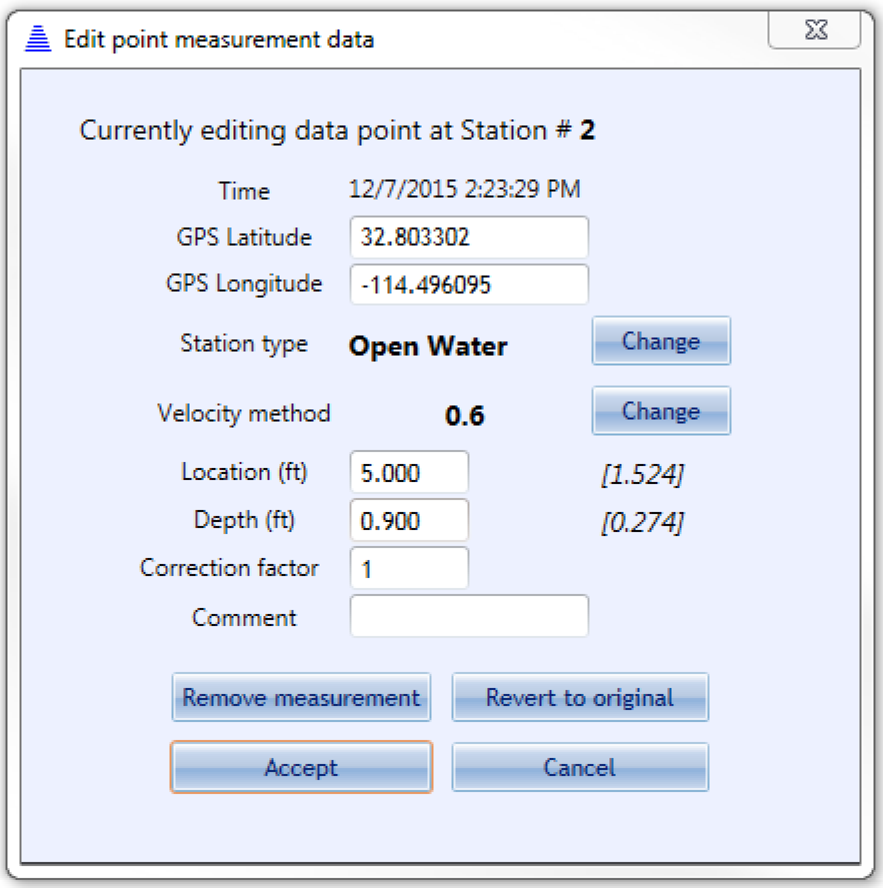


Figure 14:37. Station Editing Dialog

A pop-up editing dialog will appear when the **Edit** button is pressed, shown in Figure 14:37. Within this dialog, the following items can be edited:

- **GPS Latitude** – GPS latitude if known from external source
- **GPS Longitude** – GPS longitude if known from external source
- **Station Type** – Change station type (LeftBank, RightBank, IslandEdge, OpenWater, Ice). Please note: when changing station types, there are some station type combinations that will result in an error and the software will be unable to compute discharge. For example, inputting two Left Bank station types for the section will result in an error. Please refer to your discharge measurement method guide for specific rules regarding what station types are valid for your measurement.
- **Velocity Method (enter Manual Velocity or None)** – the option exists to enter a manual velocity if it is known at the station and not measured by the ADV. To enter a manual velocity, click the **Change** button and select the "Enter Velocity" option, and hit **Accept**. A new input box will appear in the main dialog to enter a manual velocity value. To select **None** for the Velocity Method, select the "None" option, and hit **Accept**.
- **Location** – Change the location at which the station was taken. Please note: if location does not satisfy the **Maximum Spacing Change** criteria set in the Settings Pane, a warning will appear.
- **Depth** – Change the water depth at the station. Please note: if the depth does not satisfy the **Maximum Depth Change** criteria set in the Settings Pane, a warning will appear.
- **Correction Factor** – Change the correction factor applied to the velocity value. The correction factor is a fraction ranging from [-1:1].
- **Comment** – Change or add a comment associated with station
- **Remove Measurement** – Removing a station removes it from being used in the discharge calculation. Please note: some rules apply to what types of stations can be removed, and are specific to the velocity method used. For example, if the original measurement were a 0.2/0.8 measurement, removing the 0.2 measurement will result in an automatic removal of the 0.8 measurement. If a 0.2/0.6/0.8 measurement is taken, removing the 0.6 measurement will result in removing the 0.6 measurement only, as a 0.2/0.8 is still a valid measurement type. However, for this 0.2/0.6/0.8 measurement, if the 0.2 measurement is

removed, all three measurements associated with this station will be removed (0.2, 0.6, and 0.8). Please consult the rules specific to each measurement type.

- **Revert to Original** – Revert to original values associated with the station when the data file was downloaded from the FlowTracker unit.

After any changes to these editable values, click the **Apply Changes** button. Discharge will be recalculated and new values will be appearing in the appropriate areas.

14.9.4 Editing Supplemental Data

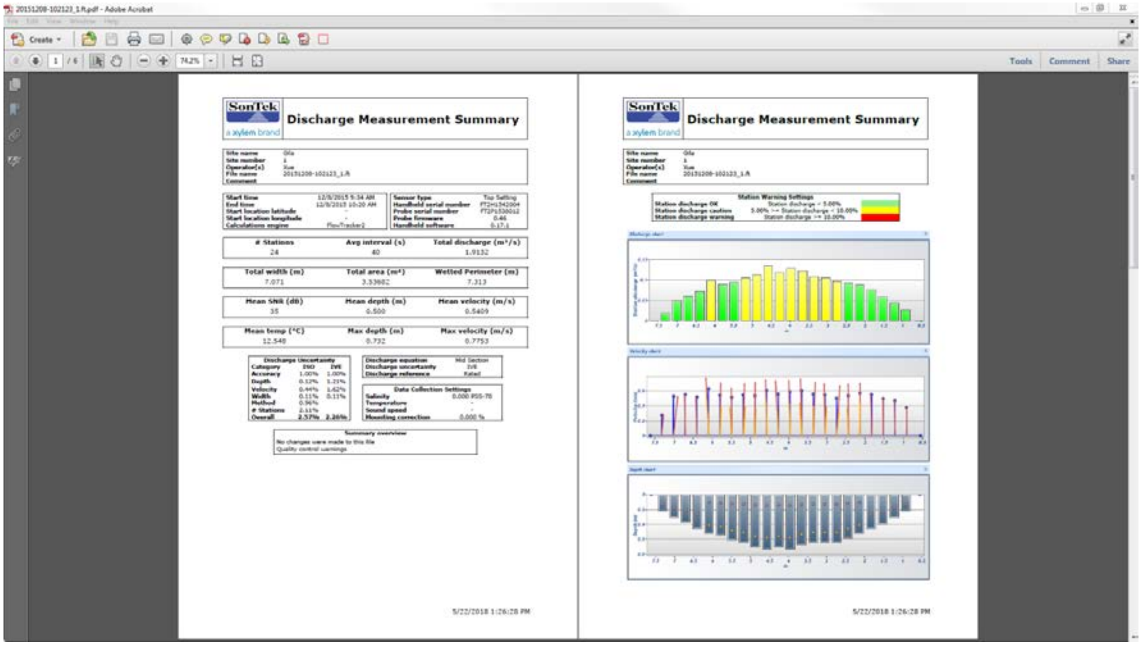
Supplemental data can be added or edited after the measurement is taken and the file is closed in the handheld device. To add or edit supplemental data, first navigate to the Supplemental Data tab (Figure 14:31). To edit existing supplemental data, simply double click on the field you wish to edit, and enter in a new value. To add a line of supplemental data, click the Add Supplemental Data button. To add additional lines of supplemental data, use the green up/down arrows to add rows above/below the current line, respectively.

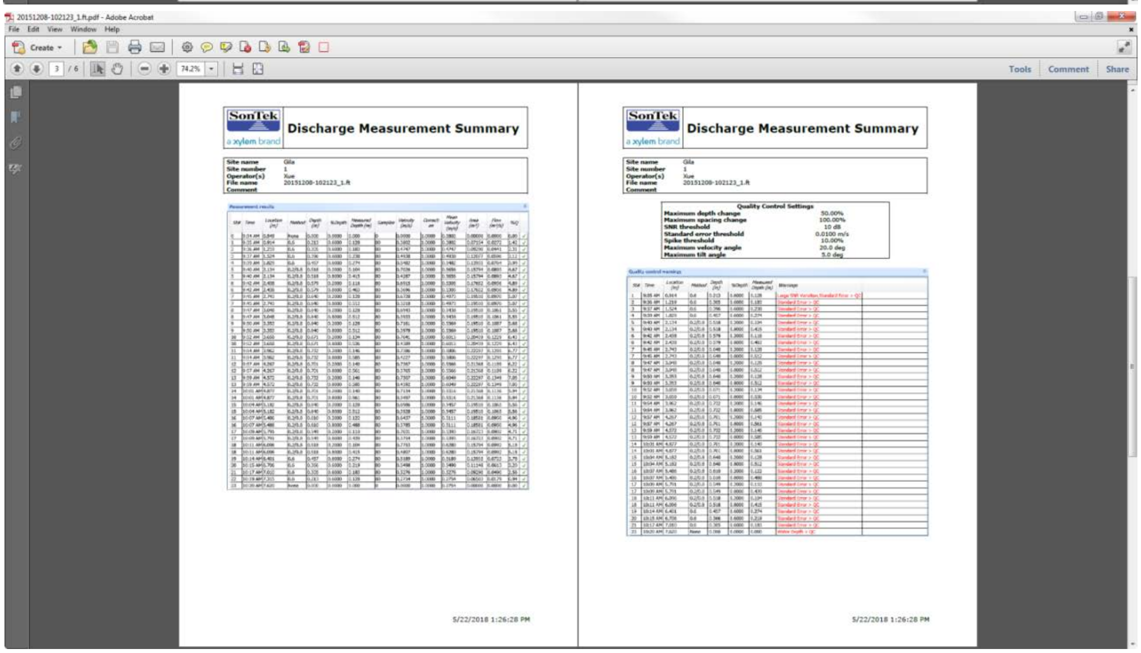
14.10. Data Export and File Formats

The FlowTracker2 data can be exported from the FlowTracker2 desktop software in either PDF or ASCII format. The FlowTracker2 measurement file created on the handheld is JSON format and contains all the raw data and measurement results.

14.10.1 Export Discharge Summary to PDF

To export the Discharge Summary to PDF, navigate to the Summary tab and click the **Save PDF of Summary** button. A PDF will be produced and opened using a PDF viewer the user has installed on the computer. An example of a discharge summary is shown in Figure 14:38. The user can then choose to save or print the PDF file.


Discharge Measurement Summary
Discharge Measurement Summary


Discharge Measurement Summary
Discharge Measurement Summary

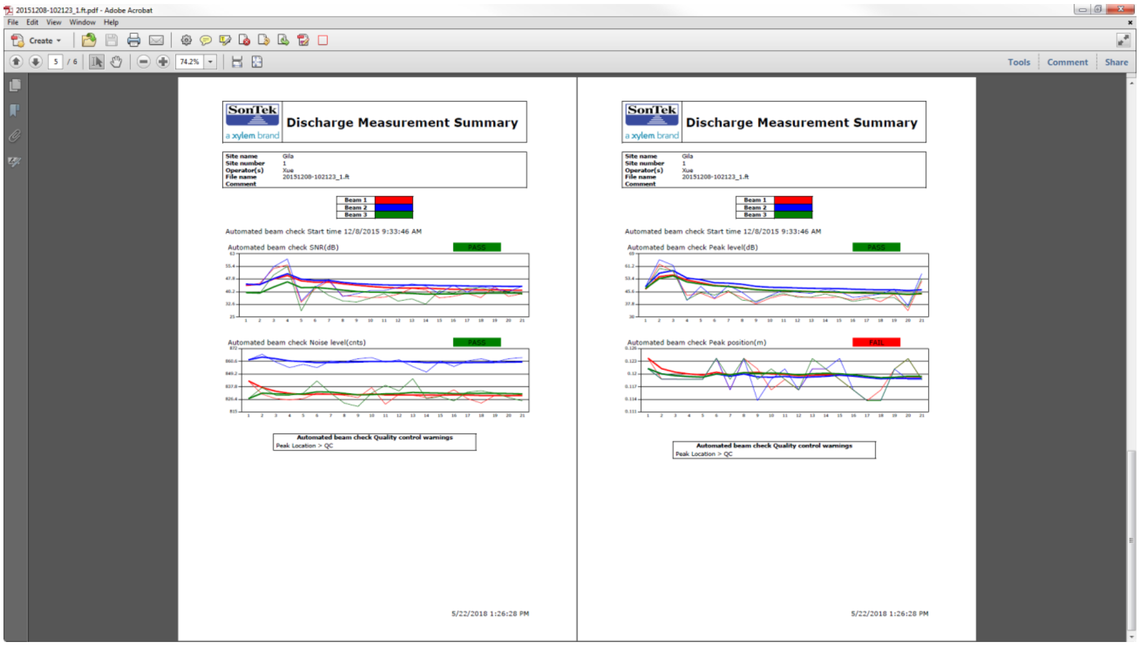


Figure 14:38. PDF Discharge Summary File

14.10.2 Export Files to ASCII

To export .ft files to ASCII format readable by text editors and spreadsheet software (Microsoft Excel, Word, etc.), click the Export button, shown in Figure 14:39.

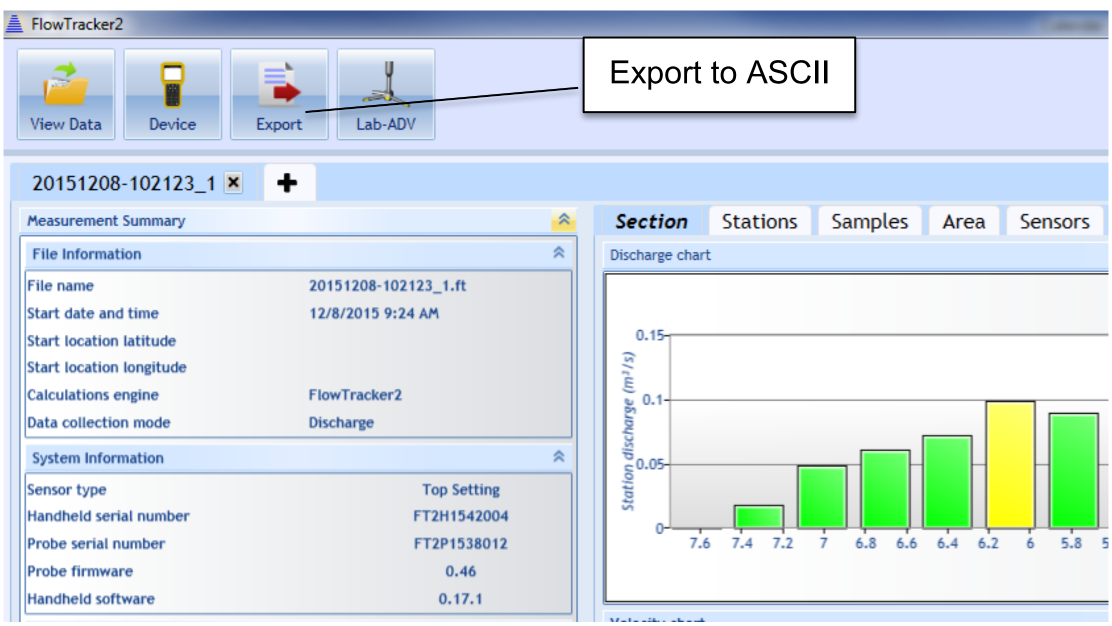


Figure 14:39. Export to ASCII Button

A dialog will appear with the options to Show Headers and Export in English Language. The export function will not automatically export the data you have opened for viewing. Instead, a dialog will appear to select the .ft file you wish to export, and following this, you will select a folder to where the export will save the ASCII files. Four ASCII files will be created in the selected folder. The contents and format of the ASCII files is summarized in FlowTracker2 CSV Output.

14.10.3 Matlab Tools for JSON files

Although the FlowTracker2 software does not have a specific Matlab export, a number of Matlab tools exist to parse and convert JSON format files to Matlab-readable format, and are readily available through various third-party websites. If help is needed in using Matlab to read the FlowTracker .ft files into Matlab, please contact SonTek (support@sontek.com).

Section 15. FlowTracker2 Lab-ADV

15.1. Lab-ADV Software Feature

The Lab-ADV feature is designed to work in conjunction with a Windows based Computer or Tablet and a FlowTracker2 ADV probe assembly. A Power and Communication Cable is required to connect the FlowTracker2 probe assembly to the PC or Tablet. The Lab-ADV feature will enable users to perform the following functions

- **Collect** FlowTracker Data at different sampling rates,
- **Generate** CSV file of measured data,
- **Perform** Beam Check before measurement,
- **Upgrade** firmware FlowTracker2 probe,

A license file is required to enable the Lab-ADV feature for a FlowTracker2 probe assembly, where the license is specific to the probe assembly and is based on its serial number. Each probe assembly that will be used with the desktop software Lab-ADV feature will require the purchase of a license.

The Lab-ADV feature can be accessed from the main menu of the FlowTracker2 Desktop Software shown in Figure 15:1.

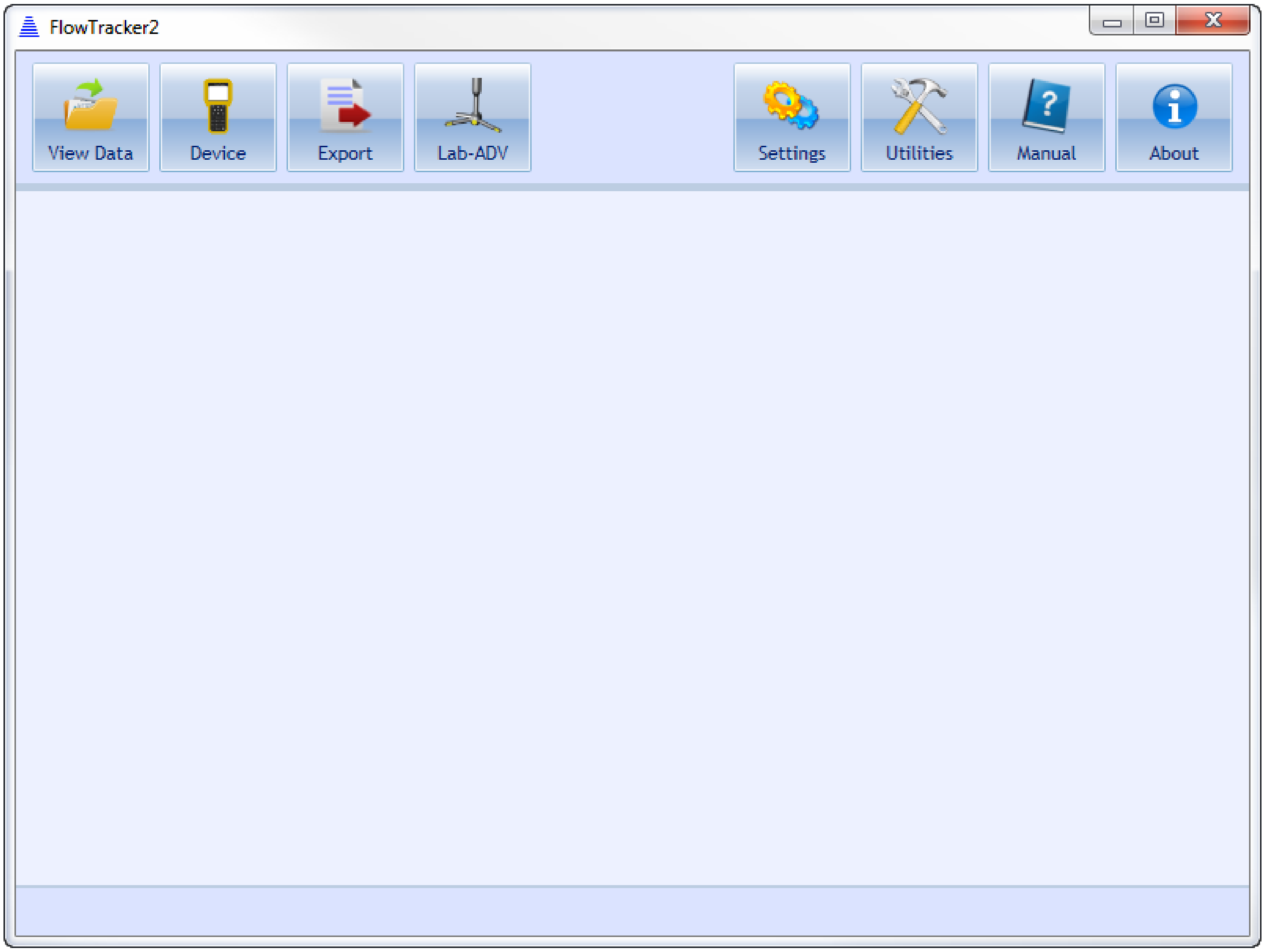


Figure 15:1 – Lab-ADV Feature of FlowTracker2 Desktop Software

15.2. Enable Lab-ADV feature

A license file is required to enable the Lab-ADV feature in a FlowTracker2 probe assembly, where the license is specific to the probe assembly and is based on its serial number. Each probe assembly that will be used with the desktop software Lab-ADV feature will require the purchase of a license.

The Lab-ADV feature is enabled by uploading the license file into the FlowTracker2 Desktop Software. The upload of the license file can be performed from the Settings menu under the General tab, shown in Figure 15:2.

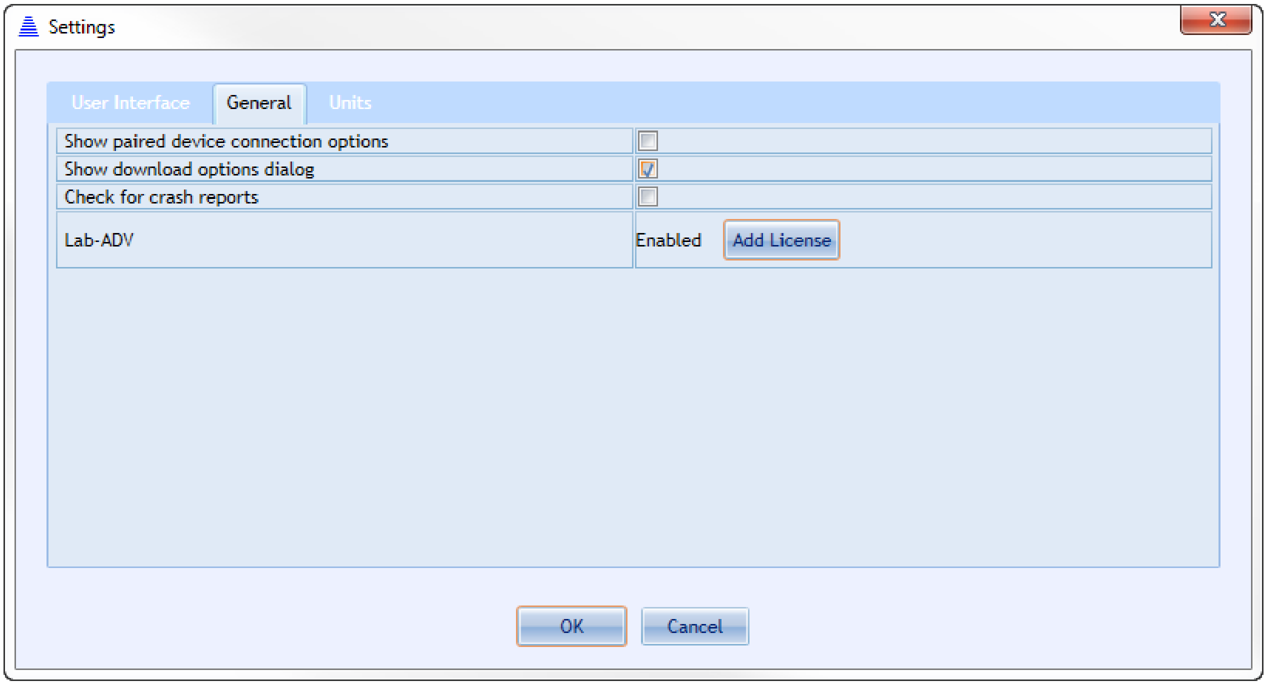


Figure 15:2 – Upload of License File for Lab-ADV

15.3. Lab-ADV Configuration

The Lab-ADV Configuration settings specified in Table 15:1 allows the user to define the data collection process within Communication, System, Environmental and Data Management categories. The configuration settings are application dependent and will vary depending on the specific measurement requirements.

Table 15-1. Configuration Settings

Category	Value	Description
Communication	COM Port	COM port assigned to FlowTracker2 probe assembly. It is recommended that the Windows Device Manager be used to determine assigned COM port.
Sampling	Sampling Rate	Sampling rate selected for measurement. The Lab-ADV has four sampling rates: 1, 2, 5, and 10 Hz.
	Velocity Range	Optimizes ADV operation for expected maximum velocity conditions. There are six velocity range settings: +/- 10, 20, 50, 100, 200 cm/s and Auto. Auto velocity range is the most robust setting under variable or unknown conditions. Auto is not available at the10 Hz sample rate.

<table>
<tr><th>Category</th><th colspan="2">Value</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="2"></td><td>Otherwise, generally it is best to select the lowest velocity range that will cover the maximum velocity expected in a given experiment. See Table 15-2 for descriptions of each velocity range.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">System</td><td colspan="2">Run Automated BeamCheck on Start</td><td>Automated Beam Check will be performed before the measurement if this is selected.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Use Pressure Sensor</td><td>Collect Pressure Sensor data if the probe assembly is equipped with a Pressure Sensor.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Pressure Sensor Information</td><td>Air Pressure Cal. Period (min)</td><td>The Air Pressure Cal. Period (min) function sets the time limit between atmospheric pressure calibrations.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Approximate Site Latitude (±deg)</td><td>Used for the calculation of Water Density based on Salinity (user entry), Latitude and Altitude.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Approximate Site Altitude (m)</td><td>Used for the calculation of Water Density based on Salinity (user entry), Latitude and Altitude.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">Environmental</td><td colspan="2">Salinity (PSS-78)</td><td>User defined salinity value. This will be used in the sound speed calculation</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Temperature Override (Optional)</td><td>User defined temperature value, to override the system’s temperature sensor. This will be used in the sound speed calculation.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Sound Speed Override (Optional)</td><td>User defined sound speed value, to override internal sound speed calculations.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Mounting Correction</td><td>Mounting correction field can be used to correct for either flow disturbance or negative flows.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Data Management</td><td colspan="2">Logging Location</td><td>The logging location defines the folder where the measurement files will be stored</td></tr>
</table>

Category	Value	Description
	Logging Duration Per File (min)	Defines a file logging limit based on a time duration.
	Logging Interval Start / End Time Alignment	The Logging Interval Start / End Time Alignment works in combination with "Logging Duration Per File (min)". If your logging duration per file is specified as 10 min and you start your logging at 17:03:25: - Without logging interval alignment the next file will be started at 17:13:25, the third one at 17:23:25 and so on - With logging interval alignment the next file will be started at 17:20:00, the third one at 17:30:00 and so on

Table 15-2: Velocity Range Settings

Velocity Range	Absolute max velocity in arbitrary direction in ideal conditions	Absolute max velocity in X direction in ideal conditions	Recommended max velocity in arbitrary direction in ideal conditions	Recommended max velocity in X direction in ideal conditions
Auto	± 112 cm/s	± 448 cm/s	± 60 cm/s	± 200 cm/s
± 10 cm/s	± 10 cm/s	± 40 cm/s	± 3 cm/s	± 10 cm/s
± 20 cm/s	± 14 cm/s	± 52 cm/s	± 7 cm/s	± 20 cm/s
± 50 cm/s	± 27 cm/s	± 108 cm/s	± 15 cm/s	± 50 cm/s
± 100 cm/s	± 55 cm/s	± 220 cm/s	± 30 cm/s	± 100 cm/s
± 200 cm/s	± 112 cm/s	± 448 cm/s	± 60 cm/s	± 200 cm/s
Ideal conditions consist of: - ideal signal conditions (high SNR, low noise) - Ideal boundary conditions (no boundaries nearby) - Ideal temperature and sound speed (18°C and 1475 m/s) - For X direction velocity – uniform flow in X direction				
2D/3D FT2 probe would use the same recommendation with **Z velocity maximum same as the arbitrary direction.**				

The Lab-ADV Configuration window, shown in Figure 15:3, consists of two sections. The first requires the user to define the parameters specified in Table 15:1. The second section consists of number of functions that enhance the measurement process.

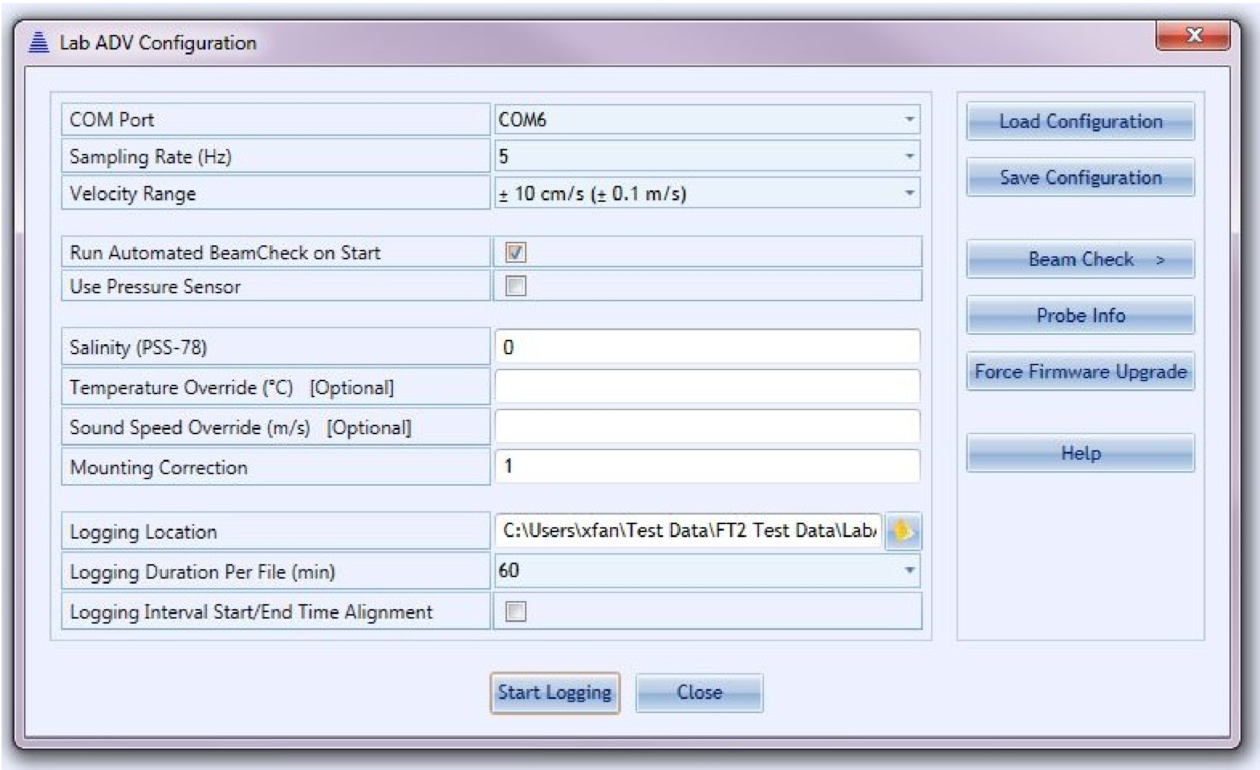


Figure 15:3 - Lab-ADV Configuration

15.3.1 **Load Configuration**

Load Configuration allows the user to upload a configuration file based on previous measurements configuration settings. This can simplify the setup process if the same settings will be used for multiple measurements.

15.3.2 **Save Configuration**

Save Configuration allows the user to create a configuration file based on the current configuration settings. The configuration file created will have the following file extension.

*.labadv_config

15.3.3 **Beam Check**

The Beam Check function enables the user to perform either a Manual Beam Check or Automated Beam Check.

Manual Beam Check

a) Sampling Volume is defined by the **Grey** vertical line,

b) Averaging of beam profile data,

c) Beam Check file can be recorded during manual Beam Check

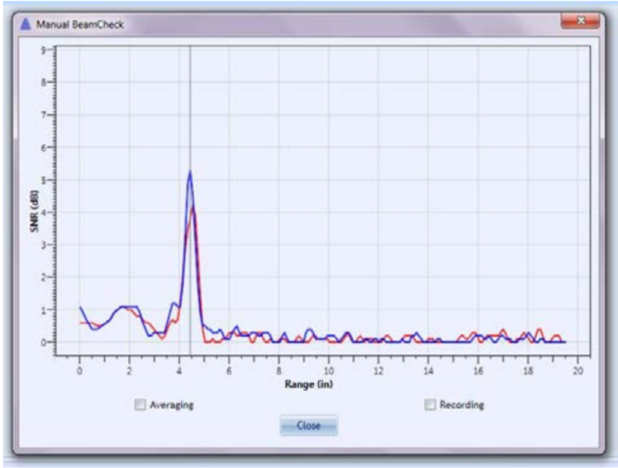


Figure 15:4 – Manual Beam Check

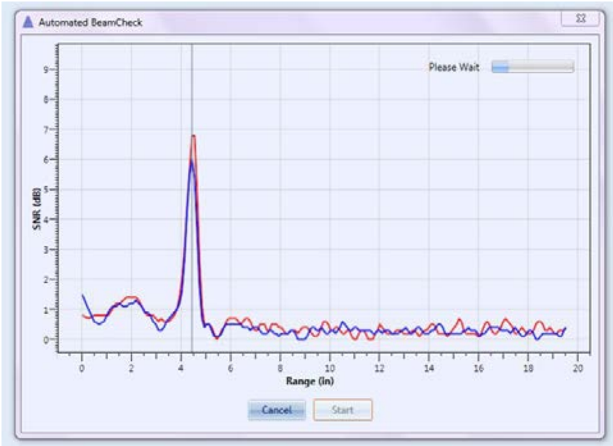


Figure 15:5 – Automated Beam Check

Automated Beam Check

a) Deployment instructions are supplied before Automated Beam Check commences,

b) The Lab-ADV collects approximately 12 seconds of beam profile data during the Automated Beam Check,

c) Warnings will be supplied if any criteria was exceeded during the Automated Beam Check

15.3.4 **Probe Info**

Probe Info supplies the FlowTracker2 probe assembly information as recorded within the firmware, as shown in Figure 15:6.

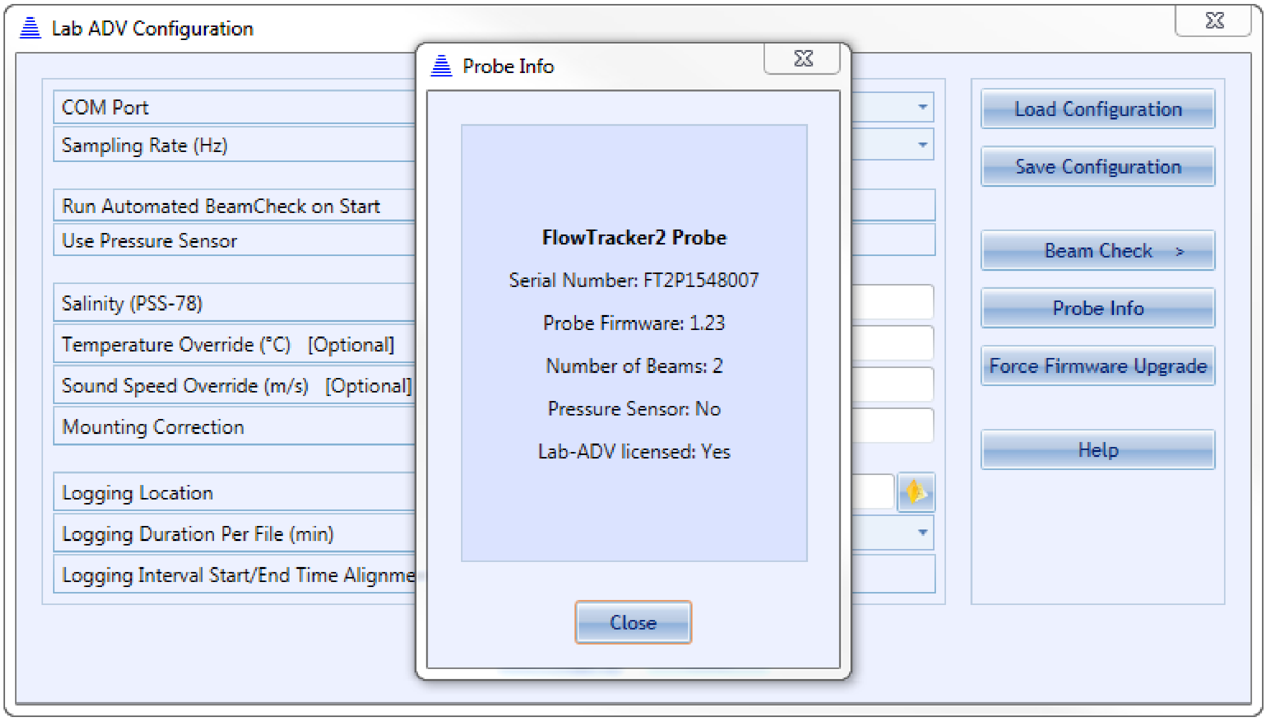


Figure 15:6 – Probe Info

15.3.5 **Force Firmware Upgrade**

Th Force Firmware Upgrade option allows the user to either recover a probe without firmware or downgrade the firmware. The warning supplied during the operation is shown in Figure 15:7.

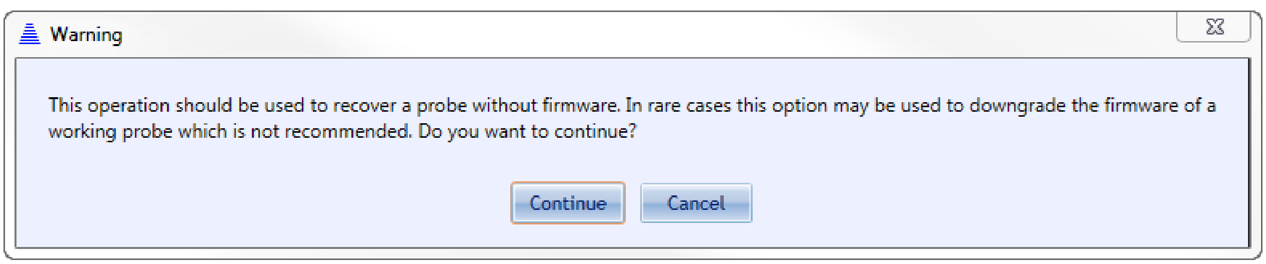


Figure 15:7 – Force Firmware Upgrade Warning

15.4. Data Collection

The Data Collection window displays the raw data collected by the FlowTracker2 ADV during the measurement, shown in Figure 15:8. The variables and layouts displayed within the Data Collection window are defined under Display Settings. The Data Collection window displays the raw data of each variable in graphic form, along with a numerical display of the instantaneous samples. The data labels of each variable are defined by the instantaneous samples color code (red, blue or green).

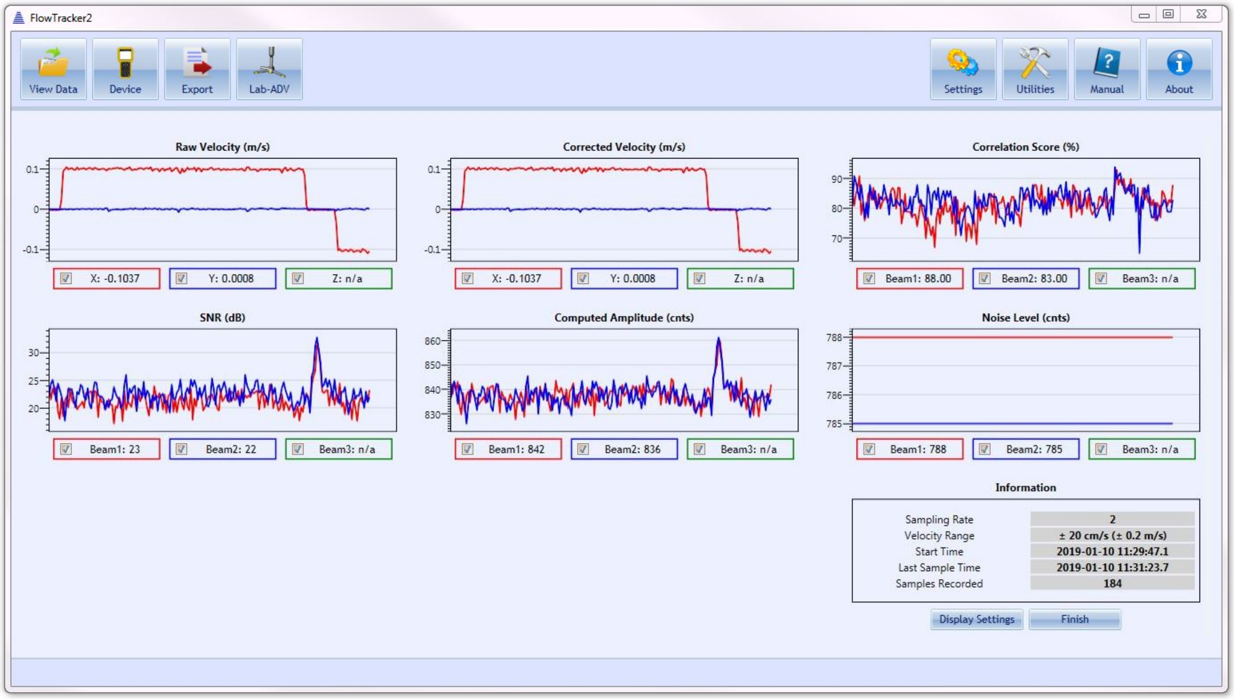


Figure 15:8 – Data Collection Window

15.4.1 Display Settings

Display settings window, shown in Figure 15:9 allows the user to define which variables should be displayed during data collection and the number of columns used for the layout.

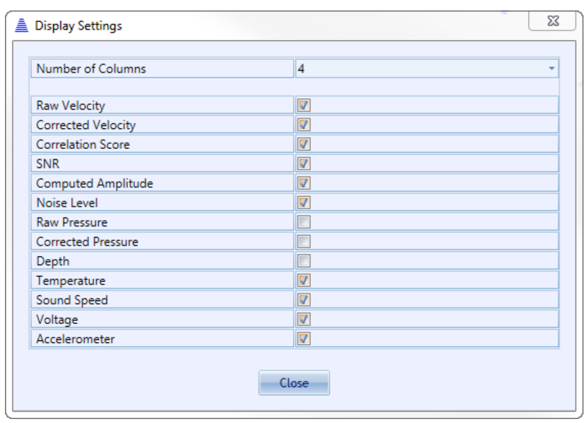


Figure 15:9 – Display Settings

15.4.2 Information

The information box supplied during data collection, shown in Figure 15:10 gives the user key information regarding sampling rate, duration and number of samples collected.

Information

a) Sampling Rate
b) Start Time
c) Last Sample Time
d) Samples Recorded

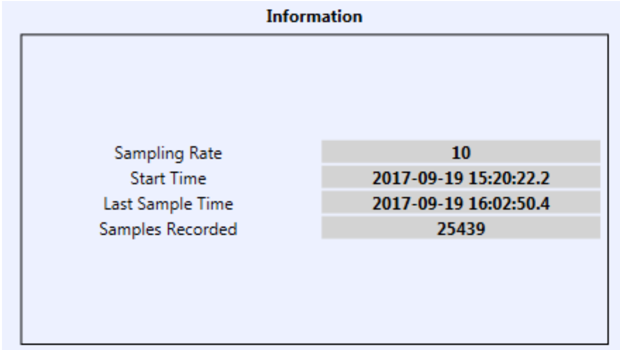


Figure 15:10 – Information Box

15.5. Data Export

The data collected during the measurement is automatically exported in a CSV format file after the measurement is completed. The file location is defined by the user under Logging Location in Configuration Settings.

The variables exported in the CSV file is dependent on the FlowTracker2 ADV model used in the measurement. The following FlowTracker2 probe assembly models will determine the variables that are populated in the CSV file.

- 2D
- 2D / 3D
- 2D with Pressure Sensor
- 2D / 3D with Pressure Sensor

The variables displayed during data collection will not affect the data export. The exported file will include all available variables as determined by the probe assembly configuration, irrespective of the variables the user has chosen to display.

Properties associated with the variables and numerical calculations performed on the raw data collected are defined in Table 15:3,

Table 15:3. CSV Data Export

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Operation			
UTC Time	Measurement time based on Coordinated Universal Time (UTC)	hh:mm:ss	
Local Time	Measurement time based on Local Time	hh:mm:ss	
Raw Velocity.X	Raw velocity, X velocity component	m/s or ft/s	4
Raw Velocity.Y	Raw velocity, Y velocity component	m/s or ft/s	4
Raw Velocity.Z	Raw velocity, Z velocity component	m/s or ft/s	4
Corrected	Corrected velocity, X velocity component.	m/s or ft/s	4

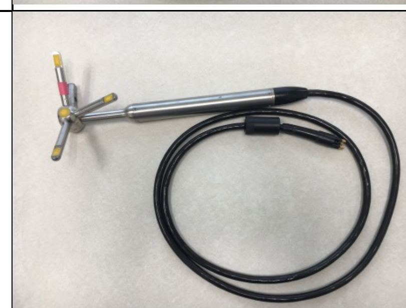
Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Velocity.X	Mounting correction applied to velocity.		
Corrected Velocity.Y	Corrected velocity, Y velocity component. Mounting correction applied to velocity.	m/s or ft/s	4
Corrected Velocity.Z	Corrected velocity, Z velocity component. Mounting correction applied to velocity.	m/s or ft/s	4
Correlation Score.Beam1	ADV Correlation Score, range from 1 - 100	%	0
Correlation Score.Beam2	ADV Correlation Score, range from 1 - 100	%	0
Correlation Score.Beam3	ADV Correlation Score, range from 1 - 100	%	0
SNR.Beam1	Signal to noise ratio of Beam 1	dB	0
SNR.Beam2	Signal to noise ratio of Beam 2	dB	0
SNR.Beam3	Signal to noise ratio of Beam 3	dB	0
Computed Amplitude.Beam1	Amplitude of Beam 1. Computed from SNR and Noise of Beam 1	cnts	0
Computed Amplitude.Beam2	Amplitude of Beam 2. Computed from SNR and Noise of Beam 2	cnts	0
Computed Amplitude.Beam3	Amplitude of Beam 3. Computed from SNR and Noise of Beam 3	cnts	0
Noise Level.Beam1	Noise level of Beam 1	cnts	0
Noise Level.Beam2	Noise level of Beam 2	cnts	0
Noise Level.Beam3	Noise level of Beam 3	cnts	0
Temperature	Internal temperature measurement	°C or °F	2
Sound Speed	Sound Speed to compute velocity from the measured Doppler Shift. Sound Speed is either internally calculated or user entry	m/s or ft/s	3
Raw Pressure	Raw pressure	dBar	
Corrected Pressure	Corrected pressure for Bernoulli effect	dBar	
Depth	Water depth calculated based on corrected pressure	m or ft	
PS Calibration	User defined period between calibration of pressure sensor against atmospheric pressure	min	
Voltage	Voltage of power supply	V	3

Variable	Description	Units	Decimal
Accelerometer.X	Raw X acceleration		5
Accelerometer.Y	Raw Y acceleration		5
Accelerometer.Z	Raw Z acceleration		5

15.6. Power and Communication Cable

The Power and Communication Cable connects the FlowTracker2 probe assembly to the power supply and Windows PC or Tablet. The hardware components associated with the FlowTracker2 Lab-AdV application are listed in Table 15:3.

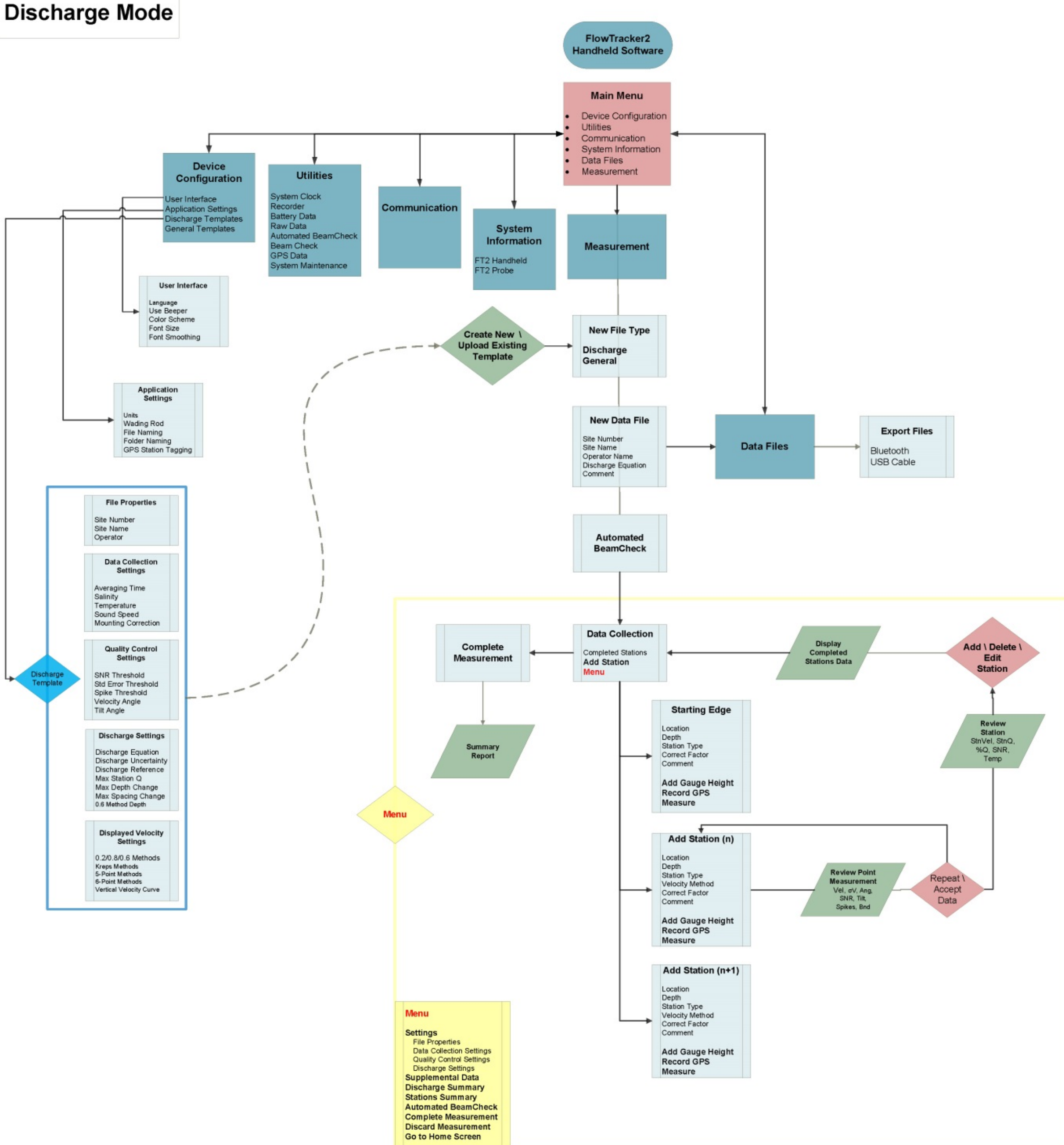
Table 15-3. FlowTracker2 Lab-Adv Hardware Components

Component	Description	
2D side-looking 10 MHz ADV probe assembly	FlowTracker2 2D side-looking 10 MHz ADV probe assembly	
2D/3D side-looking 10 MHz ADV probe assembly	FlowTracker2 2D/3D side-looking 10 MHz ADV probe assembly	
FlowTracker2 probe assembly sensor extension cable	The FlowTracker2 probe assembly extension cables are available in three different lengths. • 1.5m, • 3.5m, • 8.5m.	
	⚠	It is recommended that the maximum extension cable length of 8.5m not be exceeded, for a total cable length of 10m.

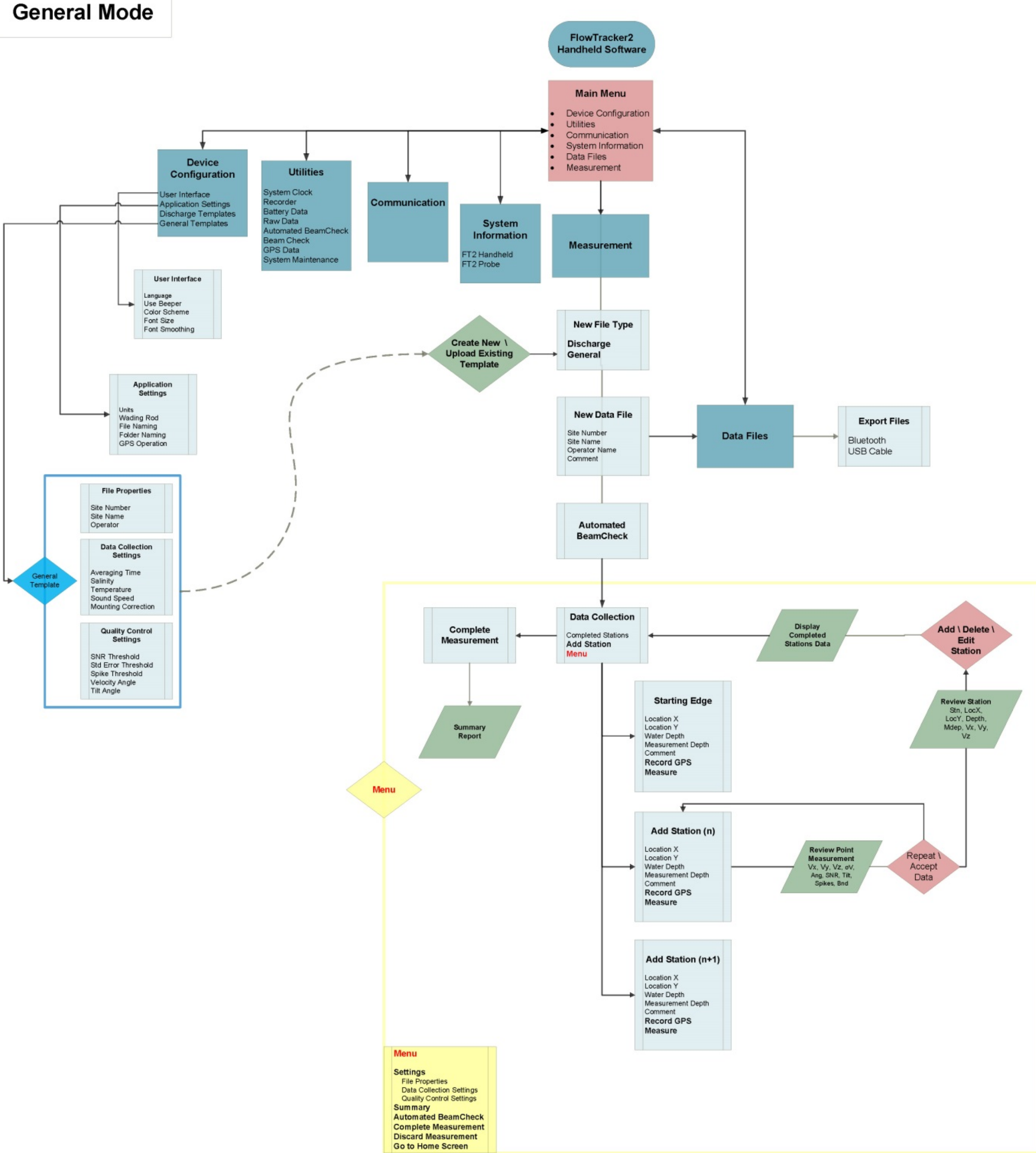
Component	Description	
Power and Communication Cable	Power and Communication Cable (1m, RS232)	
Power Supply	AC/DC Power Supply: 12VDC, 20W, 1.67A	
RS232 Cable	RS232 Cable	
	Data transmission between FlowTracker2 probe assembly and PC / Tablet can be impacted if the RS232 cable length exceeds the maximum recommend length. Performance of FlowTracker2 Lab-ADV application was verified using 8.5m extension cable and 33.3m RS232 cable.	
RS232 to USB Converter	RS232 to USB Converter	

Appendix A. Software Flow Diagram

Discharge Mode



General Mode



Appendix B. Site Selection Requirements

The **Site Selection Requirements** for performing discharge measurements using a FlowTracker2 instrument are based on a number of measurement site and hydraulic requirements. The measurement site and hydraulic requirements are similar to what a Hydrologists or Hydrographer will use in the selection of monitoring site for either natural or artificial control. The site and hydraulic requirements that need to be taken in into account with every discharge measurement are summarized under the following points.

a) Uniform flow conditions throughout the measurement section,
b) Straight length of channel with uniform cross-section and slope (10 times section width).
c) Flow in the channel should be confined to a single well-defined channel with stable banks.
d) Avoid a site with wide shallow sections or secondary side channels.
e) Bends upstream of site should be avoided as this will result in angular flow towards tagline,
f) Steep slopes upstream should be avoided as this could result in high approach velocities at the measurement site causing turbulent flow conditions.
g) Avoid measurement sections with deep pools as the reduction in velocity normally diverge from uniform flow conditions,
h) Avoid prominent obstructions in a pool or excessive plant growth that can affect the flow pattern.
i) Turbulent flow conditions should be avoided if possible.
j) Negative and or back flow should be avoided at all times.
k) Flow conditions must be within the instrument and equipment specifications

Appendix C. Japanese Method Example

The measurement example of the Japanese method given in Appendix C is based on an actual field measurement that was manually calculated to give an overview of the various steps involved. The section of the measurement site was greater than 10m and based on the Japanese Method, the measuring technique applicable is Equation 5:3.

Equation 5:1 - Japanese Method > 10m

$$Q = \sum \underbrace{\left\{\left[(b_1 - b_0) \times 0.5\left(\frac{d_1+d_1'}{2} + \frac{d_0+d_0'}{2}\right) + (b_2 - b_1) \times 0.5\left(\frac{d_2+d_2'}{2} + \frac{d_1+d_1'}{2}\right)\right] \times \left(\frac{\bar{v}_1+\bar{v}_1'}{2}\right)\right\}}_{\text{Edge}} +$$

$$\underbrace{\left\{\left[(b_n - b_{n-1}) \times 0.5\left(\frac{d_n+d_n'}{2} + \frac{d_{n-1}+d_{n-1}'}{2}\right) + (b_{n+1} - b_n) \times 0.5\left(\frac{d_{n+1}+d_{n+1}'}{2} + \frac{d_n+d_n'}{2}\right)\right] \times \left(\frac{\bar{v}_n+\bar{v}_n'}{2}\right)\right\}}_{\text{Open Water}}$$

Items to be field in the field survey											Items to be filled after survey					
Stn no	Dist from Bank (m)	Depth (m)			Velocity					Velocity		Station Area				Disc. (m^3/s)
		When going	When back	Average	Meas depth	Sound no.	Meas. Time (s)			Vel. (m/s)	Ave. (m/s)	Ave. Depth	Ave Width	Area (m^2)	Sum (m^2)	
							1st	2nd	Ave							
0	0	0.00	0.00	0.00								0.58	2.00	1.16		
1	2	1.15	1.16	1.16	0.23	9	25.0	25.6	25.3	1.20	1.16				3.32	3.85
					0.92	9	26.6	28.2	27.4	1.11		1.08	2.00	2.16		
2	4	1.00	1.00	1.00												
												0.90	2.00	1.80		
3	6	0.80	0.80	0.80	0.16	9	21.8	22.0	21.9	1.38	1.20				3.26	3.91
					0.64	9	30.8	29.4	30.1	1.01		0.73	2.00	1.46		
4	8	0.66	0.65	0.66												
												0.60	2.00	1.20		
5	10	0.54	0.54	0.54	0.32	6	23.1	23.0	23.0	0.88	0.88				2.20	1.94
					--	--	--	--	--	--		0.50	2.00	0.92		
6	12	0.45	0.45	0.45												
												0.46	2.00	0.92		

Appendix D. Measurement Equipment List

Cat.	Items	Quantity	Description
FlowTracker2	Probe	1	FlowTracker2 probe with cable
	Handheld	1	FlowTracker2 handheld
	Battery Cartridge	2	Battery cartridge for FlowTracker2
	Handheld Bracket	1	Handheld bracket to mount handheld to Top Setting Rod
	Top Setting Rod	1	Top setting wading rod
	S Bracket Screw	1	Screw to clamp probe to S bracket
	USB Cable	1	USB cable to download data from FlowTracker2
Safety Gear	Mobile \ Satellite Phone	1	Contact office, local authorities or emergency services
	Drink Water	1pp	5L drink water per person per day
	Night-day Safety Vest	1pp	Required when working during low visibility or from bridges \ culverts
	Road Signs	2	Required when working from bridges \ culverts
	Sun Hat	1pp	Large brim hat
	Rain Jacket	1pp	Only to be used when raining
	Wader or Water Boots	1pp	Select type of water proof boots based on the water depth.
	Life Jacket	1pp	When entering water an approved life jacket must be worn.
	First Aid Kit	1	Require first aid certificate
	Sunscreen	1	
	Insect repellent	1	Midge and Mosquito
Measurement Gear	Measuring Tape	1	Measuring tape length dependent on section width.
	Pocket Tape	1	Verify water depth or instrument setting.
	Steel Pegs	2	To anchor the measuring tape on both banks
	Hammer	1	5lb
	Shovel \ Rake	1	Shovel \ Rake to clean measurement section
	Camera	1	Photographs of measurement site and flow conditions
Reference	Laptop \ Tablet	1	Download measurements at measurement site to evaluate on desktop software
		1	CastAway, Verify water temperature and salinity (see Principle of Operations).

pp – per person

Appendix E. CE Declaration of Conformity

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Manufacturer's Name: SonTek, a Xylem brand
Manufacturer's Address: 9940 Summers Ridge Road
San Diego, CA 92121 U.S.A.

SonTek, a Xylem brand, DECLARES THAT THE FOLLOWING PRODUCTS:

Equipment Type: Flow Meter
Model: FlowTracker 2
Product Names: FlowTracker 2, FlowTracker 2 Lab-ADV

CONFORMS TO THE FOLLOWING EUROPEAN UNION COUNCIL DIRECTIVES:

EMC DIRECTIVE 2004/108/EC

TEST SPECIFICATIONS	BASIC STANDARDS
EN 61326-1: 2013	EN 55011
IEC 61326-1:2012	EN 55022
FCC 47 CFR PART 15, SUBPART B	EN 55032
FCC 47 CFR PART 18	EN 61000-3-2
ICES-003 ISSUE 4	EN 61000-3-3
	EN 61000-4-2
	EN 61000-4-3
	EN 61000-4-4
	EN 61000-4-5
	EN 61000-4-6
	EN 61000-4-8
	EN 61000-4-11
	ANSI C63.4

RoHS 2 DIRECTIVE 2011/65/EU

Per the current RoHS Directive, the FlowTracker 2 and FlowTracker 2 Lab are classified as Category 9 Industrial Control and Monitoring Instruments and comply with the RoHS 2 Directive. However, due to the presence of piezo electric transducers in our product, with respect to exemptions permitted in Annex IV, section 14 & 15 of the RoHS Directive, the application of lead in single crystal piezo electric materials for ultrasonic transducers is exempted from the restriction in Article 4. All other components comply with the RoHS Directive.

WEEE DIRECTIVE 2012/19/EU

BATTERY DIRECTIVE 2006/66/EC

RADIO EQUIPMENT DIRECTIVE (RED) 2014/53/EU

SAFETY CERTIFICATION
IEC 61010-1:2010

CONFORMS TO THE FOLLOWING KOREAN TEST SPECIFICATIONS:

TEST SPECIFICATIONS
KN 61326-1
KN 11

E.J. Rollo

E.J. Rollo
Compliance Engineer
SonTek – a Xylem brand

INDEX

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

T

U

V

W

Z

SonTek – a Xylem brand
9940 Summers Ridge Road, San Diego, CA 92121-3091 USA
Telephone (858) 546-8327 • Fax (858) 546-8150
E-mail: inquiry@sontek.com • Internet: http://www.sontek.com

SonTek-IQ® Series
Principles of Operation

SonTek-IQ Series – Principles of Operation

This document introduces the operating principles of the SonTek-IQ products (SonTek-IQ, SonTek-IQ Plus and SonTek-IQ Pipe) Doppler current meters. It does not attempt to provide a detailed discussion of all technical issues, nor does it provide a detailed description of SonTek-IQ products operation. To learn more about specific SonTek-IQ applications, please refer to the *SonTek-IQ User's Manual* or contact SonTek Support.

1. Overview

SonTek-IQ products are Doppler current meters designed for water velocity, level, and flow measurements in the field. The SonTek-IQ product line provides the technological advantages of complex/expensive current profilers, but in a simple, inexpensive, and easy to use package. SonTek-IQ products attributes include:

- Horizontally and vertically integrated velocity measurement (using along axis and skew beams)
- Measurements to the maximum possible extent of the water column
- Invariant factory calibration — no periodic recalibration required
- Simple operation (very few user entries needed)
- Excellent performance for low and high flows
- Accuracy — 1% of measured velocity
- Water level measured by vertical beam and pressure sensor
- Built-in temperature sensor

The SonTek-IQ product line combines horizontally and vertically integrated velocity data with precise stage measurements to determine real-time flow data. A variety of real-time flow calculations are supported and are presented below:

- Natural streams
- Regular (trapezoidal) channels (typically concrete lined)
- Irregular channels (typically, not lined or earthen channels)
- Pipes and closed conduits (SonTek-IQ Pipe)
- Theoretical flow calculations
- Full support for index velocity sites (SonTek-IQ Plus)
- Calculation of total water volume for water deliveries

2. The Doppler Shift

The SonTek-IQ products measures the velocity of water using a physical principle called the Doppler shift. This principle states that if a source of sound is moving relative to the receiver, the frequency of the sound at the receiver is shifted from the transmit frequency. For a Doppler current meter, this can be expressed as:

$F_d = (2 F_0 V/C)$

Where:

F_d = Change in received frequency (Doppler shift)

F_0 = Frequency of transmitted sound

V = Represents the relative velocity between source and receiver (i.e., motion that changes the distance between the two); positive V indicates that the distance from source to receiver is increasing

C = Speed of sound

The SonTek-IQ products are a *monostatic* Doppler current meter. Figure 1 illustrates the operation of a monostatic Doppler current meter.

- Monostatic means the same transducer is used as transmitter and receiver.
- The transducer generates a short pulse of sound at a known frequency (F_0), which then propagates through the water.
- The transducer is constructed to generate a narrow beam of sound where the majority of energy is concentrated in a cone a few degrees wide.
- As the sound travels through the water, it is reflected in all directions by particulate matter (i.e., sediment, biological matter, bubbles).
- Some of the reflected energy travels back along the transducer axis, where the transducer receives it.
- The IQ electronics measure the change in frequency of the received signal.
- The Doppler shift measured by a single transducer relates to the velocity of the water along the axis of the acoustic beam of that transducer.
- If the distance between the transducer and the target is decreasing, frequency (F_D) increases; if the distance is increasing, frequency (F_D) decreases. Motion perpendicular to the line-connecting source and receiver has no effect on the frequency of received sound.

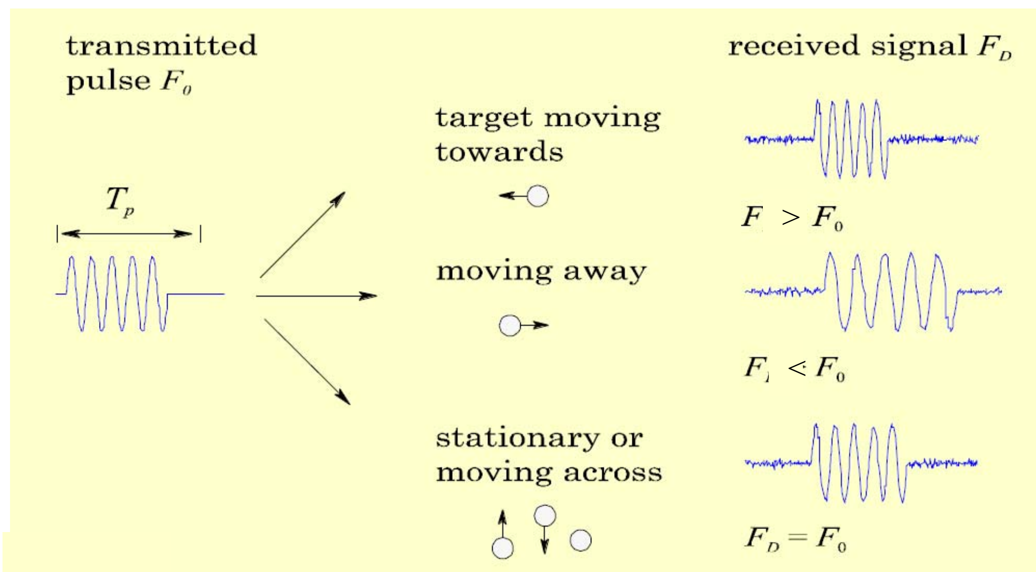


Figure 1. Measuring water velocity using a target with a monostatic Doppler system

The location of measurements made by a monostatic Doppler current meter is a function of the time at which the return signal is sampled.

- The time since the pulse was transmitted determines how far the pulse has propagated, and thus specifies the location of the particles that are the source of the reflected signal.

- By measuring the return signal at different times following the transmit pulse (T_P), the SonTek-IQ measures the water velocity at different distances from the transducer.
- It is important to note that SonTek-IQ products measure the velocity of particles in the water, and not the velocity of the water itself.
- The velocity of particles in the water is assumed to match the velocity of the water. This assumption has been tested extensively and found to be highly reliable. So much so that SonTek and many other companies have built their business upon this assumption.
- If there is no particulate matter in the water, the IQ is unable to measure velocity. In general, the practical limitation of clear water is not whether the IQ can make velocity measurements, but what is the maximum range (distance from the system) at which the IQ can measure velocity. In clear water, the maximum measurement range may be reduced.

Important Note: *Clear water* is a relative term; visual inspection is not a good way to determine particulate matter concentration. Beam Check, in the Utilities Tab of the IQ software can be used to make an on-site field determination of range.

3. Beam Geometry

The SonTek-IQ product line is a class of flowmeter that is typically mounted in the bottom of open channels or pipes. In cases where a closed conduit is known to always be full flowing, the instrument can be mounted to the top of the conduit looking down. Regardless of being mounted at the bottom or top of the channel, the SonTek-IQ products measure velocity along the axis of flow as well as horizontally using the along-axis beams skew beams respectively.

- The IQ is mounted such that the along axis transducer are aligned with the center of the channel (Figure B2).

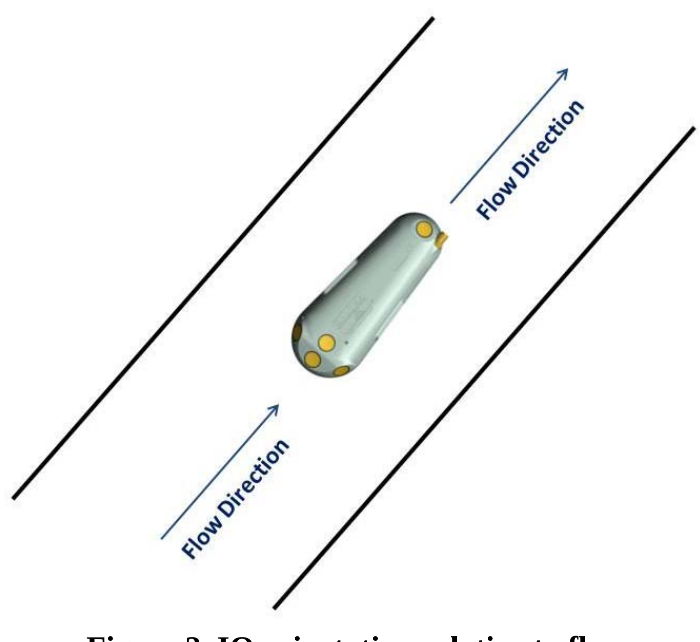


Figure 2. IQ orientation relative to flow

Note: SonTek-IQ and IQ Plus are represented in the Figure above – the same instructions apply for the SonTek-IQ Pipe.

- The IQ uses four transducers to measure velocity — two along-axis beams and two skew beams. This beam geometry optimizes the balance between total measurement range and performance in shallow water.
    - Along axis beams are 25° off the vertical axis
    - Skew beams are 60° off the vertical axis and 60° of the center axis of channel

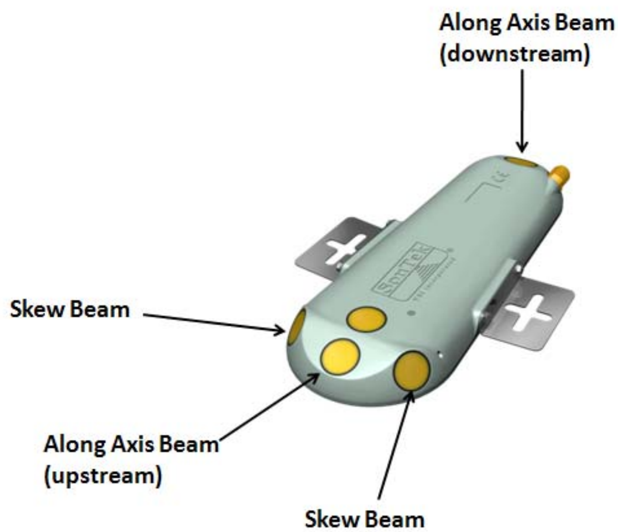


Figure 3. Beam geometry for the SonTek-IQ

- The SonTek-IQ Pipe uses four transducers to measure velocity — two along-axis beams and two skew beams. This beam geometry optimizes the balance between total measurement range and performance in shallow water (Figure B2).
    - Along axis beams are 25° off the vertical axis
    - Skew beams are 37° off the vertical axis and 45° of the center axis of channel

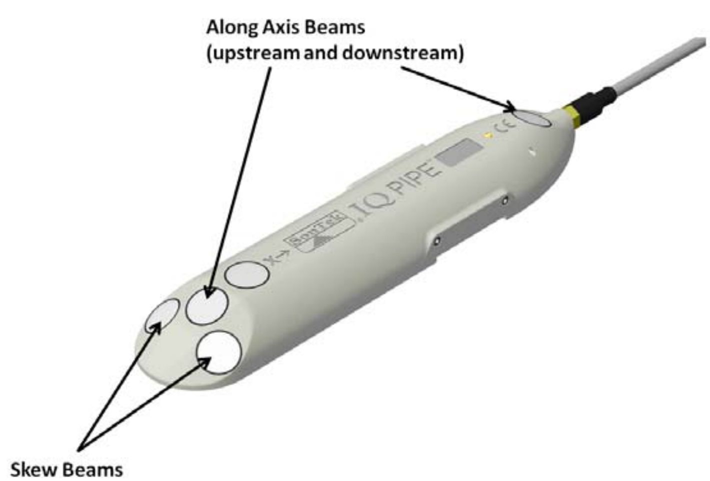


Figure 4. Beam geometry for the SonTek-IQ Pipe

- The IQ products use the relative orientation of the transducers to calculate the 3D water velocity.
- The velocity measured by one transducer is the projection of the 2D water velocity onto the axis of the acoustic beam, and is referred to as the beam velocity.
- Beam velocities are converted to XY (Cartesian) velocities using the beam geometry.
- The X velocity for the IQ is the along-channel water velocity; the Z velocity is the vertical water velocity (typically very small).
- The IQ typically measures as much of the water column as possible — from a short distance above the transducer head all the way to the water surface.
- The starting point of the velocity measurement is 0.02 m above the transducer. This distance (called the *blanking distance*) is required for the transducers to recover after transmitting the acoustic pulse.
- The IQ dynamically adjusts the ending point of the velocity measurement based on the measured *water level* from the vertical acoustic beam. This lets the IQ automatically optimize operation with changing water level.

4. Water Level Measurement

Water level is determined by using a vertical beam and integrated pressure sensor.

- The vertical beam sends a short sound pulse and listens for the reflection from the surface.
- The surface reflection is very strong and clearly defined, allowing SonTek-IQ products to precisely measure the time at which the return reflection is received.
- To convert the reflection time to surface range, SonTek-IQ products needs to know the speed of sound in the water at the site, which is primarily a function of temperature and salinity.
  - SonTek-IQ products have an internal temperature sensor that automatically compensates for changing conditions by continually updating the sound speed used for surface range calculations.
  - Salinity is user defined (i.e., SonTek-IQ products do not automatically adjust for salinity variations).
- The vertical beam can operate with water depths from 0.08 to 1.5 m (above the transducer) for the SonTek-IQ, and 0.08 to 5 m for the SonTek-IQ Plus and IQ Pipe.
- The vertical beam works in conjunction with the integrated pressure sensor to determine water level
  - The vertical beam is the principle measurement
  - The pressure sensor is used as a secondary measurement in the case that there is no valid data from the vertical beam
- The pressure sensor is not vented to the atmosphere thus it must be calibrated for changes in atmospheric conditions.
  - The pressure sensor is calibrated during the deployment using data from the vertical beam thus both sensors provide reliable and accurate water level data.
- Water level data are used to modify the measurement volume location in real-time, optimizing performance with changing water level.
- For pressurized pipes, note the pressure sensor range, as well as the IQ's (all models) housing rating is 30 m of water (or 42 psi).

5. Flow Calculations

One of the primary functions of the SonTek-IQ products is to provide real-time flow data and total volume data for water deliveries. SonTek-IQ products combine water velocity data and level data with user-supplied channel geometry information about the installation site to calculate flow and volume. SonTek-IQ products support flow calculations for a variety of environments.

- Natural streams (defined by a series of survey points)
- Regular and irregular (trapezoidal) channels (typically concrete lined)
- Regular (trapezoidal) culverts with a closed top (SonTek-IQ Plus)
- Any channel that can be represented with a stage/area equation (SonTek-IQ Plus)
- Pipes and other closed conduits (SonTek-IQ Pipe)
    - **It is important to note that although both the IQ Plus and IQ Pipe can be installed in either open channels or closed conduits, pipe flow algorithms only exist in the IQ Pipe system and open channel flow algorithms only exist in the IQ Plus (and IQ Standard).**
    - **If an IQ Pipe is installed in an open channel, or an IQ Plus is installed inside a pipe, flow (volumetric discharge) must be computed outside of the system using the index velocity. For best results, SonTek strongly recommends that the SonTek-IQ Plus be used in open channels and the SonTek-IQ Pipe be used in closed conduits.**

SonTek-IQ products combine channel geometry with stage to calculate the cross-sectional area. The area is then multiplied by the mean channel velocity to determine flow. The relationship between the velocity measured by SonTek-IQ products and the mean channel velocity can be determined two ways.

- Theoretical flow calculations
- Index velocity calibration

SonTek-IQ products can use the measured flow rate to compute the total volume. Total volume is the cumulative sum of flow rate multiplied by time. An example of this type of data is total irrigation volume. This the amount of water delivered through an irrigation channel over a given time span. Total volume is available both in real-time display and output, as well as in the recorded data.

6. Theoretical Flow Calculations

Theoretical flow calculations are used when no reference flow data are available; that is, only channel geometry and data measured directly by the SonTek-IQ products are utilized. For theoretical flow calculations SonTek-IQ products make use of the following information.

- The largest variations of velocity occur with changing depth

- SonTek-IQ products measure a vertically integrated velocity over the largest possible portion of the water column, including information about the variation of vertical velocity
  - The SonTek-IQ outputs average velocity data from 0.08 – 1.5 m
  - The SonTek-IQ Plus and IQ Pipe outputs velocity profile data from 0.08 – 5.0 m
- A power-law velocity profile model is used, assuming a 1/6 power-law coefficient for open channels and pipes.
- The theoretical flow model accounts for the portion of the vertical velocity profile measured by the SonTek-IQ product. It determines the relationship between the mean velocities measured in this portion of the water column with the mean velocity through the vertical profile.
- The model provides a velocity scaling factor that relates the SonTek-IQ product measured velocity to the mean channel velocity.
- The flow model is customized based on specified channel type — open channel, round pipe (full/partially full), elliptical pipe (full/partially full), or closed culvert (full/partially full).

B-6-1 Index Velocity Calibration

An index velocity calibration is a popular technique for monitoring discharge when reference discharge measurements are available.

- Discharge measurements are made at a variety of water levels and flow conditions.
- IQ water velocity data and stage data are collected at the same time as reference discharge measurements.
- These data are analyzed to determine an empirical relationship between the IQ measured velocity and the mean channel velocity. This empirical relationship is then input into the IQ, which outputs calibrated flow data in real time.
- The empirical index relationship uses the following form:

$$V_{mean} = V_{intercept} + V_{meas} * (V_{slope} + (StageCoef * Stage))$$

where:

V_{mean} = mean velocity in the channel
$V_{intercept}$ = user-supplied* velocity offset (cm/s or ft/s)
V_{meas} = IQ measured velocity
V_{slope} = user-supplied* velocity scale factor (no units)
StageCoef = user-supplied* water depth coefficient (1/s)
Stage = measured stage (total water depth) (m or ft)

***Important**: These constants are empirically derived coefficients based on several user-made, independent discharge measurements. These coefficients relate IQ product measured velocity to mean channel velocity as determined by the independent measurements. The details of how these constants are derived are beyond the scope of this appendix. For more information, contact SonTek.

An index velocity calibration will usually supply more accurate flow data than a theoretical flow calculation. However, an index calibration requires extensive reference data and data analysis expertise to construct — for many applications, this is not practical. In these situations, the theoretical flow calculations can provide good quality flow data.

7. SonTek-IQ Data

Below are details on collecting data with the SonTek-IQ product line.

B-6.1 Sampling Strategy

The SonTek-IQ products average data for a fixed interval for each reported water velocity sample.

- The IQ samples velocity (via ping) each second. The type of velocity pings depends upon flow conditions.
- The IQ pings the vertical beam once per second to measure stage data.
- Pings are accumulated over a user-specified sample duration (typically 1 to 15 minutes) and average values for velocity, stage, and a variety of diagnostic data are reported.
- The sampled data are normally recorded to the IQ's internal recorder, and can also be reported to an external data logger.
- The IQ can operate continuously (i.e., start the next sample immediately after completing a sample), or it can enter a low power (i.e., sleep) state between samples to conserve power.

B-6.2 Velocity Data

The IQ velocity data are determined using three types of acoustic pulses. The IQ automatically determines the best pulse scheme to provide the best possible velocity data.

- The IQ can measure water velocities from ±0.001 to 10 m/s.
- The IQ also measures flow direction and will accurately report reversing flow.
  - The standard IQ outputs average velocity
  - The IQ Plus outputs velocity profiles
- Data are output in Cartesian coordinates (XY) relative to system orientation.
- If one transducer is buried or blocked, the IQ may switch to a one-beam solution for velocity.
- Velocity data are accurate to 1% of the measured velocity (after accounting for random noise).
- The IQ provides diagnostic parameters with each sample to verify the quality and accuracy of these data.
- The IQ calibration will not change with time; the system never requires re-calibration.

B-6.3 Accuracy of Velocity data

The IQ is well suited to low-flow applications to less than 0.01 m/s. When discussing the accuracy of the IQ water velocity data, we are referring to the presence of any bias in mean velocity measurements. Velocity data may have random short-term variations (noise) that do not reflect a bias to velocity data. Two factors influence the accuracy of IQ velocity data: sound speed and beam geometry.

- With properly specified salinity data, sound speed errors are negligible (less than 0.25%).
- Beam geometry is fixed during system construction and will not change with time (unless there is catastrophic physical damage to the system).
- The IQ calibration is specified to 1.0% of the measured velocity.
- There is no potential for zero offset or drift in velocity measurements and no inherent minimum measurable velocity.

B-6.4 Signal-to-Noise Ratio

The IQ measures velocity by looking at the reflections of an acoustic pulse from particles in the water.

- The magnitude of the reflection is called signal strength. It varies with the amount and type of suspended material, and with the distance from the transducers.
- Signal strength decreases with distance from the transducer due to geometric spreading and sound absorption.
- The distance at which signal strength approaches the electronics noise level determines the maximum measurement range of the IQ.
- Signal strength is commonly used as the signal-to-noise ratio (SNR), which compares the magnitude of the received signal to the ambient electronics noise level.
- SNR is reported in logarithmic scale.
- Signal strength data are measured and recorded in internal logarithmic units called counts.
    - Signal strength and noise level are recorded in counts; one count equals 0.43 dB.
    - Signal strength is converted to SNR by subtracting the noise level and converting to dB.
- The IQ requires a minimum SNR (≈3 dB) to make accurate velocity measurements.

For the IQ, the location and size of the measurement volume is variable over a range up to 1.5 m for the standard IQ and up to 5.0 m from the IQ Plus.

- Signal strength and SNR reported are the mean value over the measurement volume.

- Signal strength decreases with range from the transducers and will vary with conditions in the water. For good operating conditions, SNR should be greater than 3 dB.

The IQ will continuously change vertical extent of the measurement based on water depth.

- In most conditions, the IQ is able to measure to the specified maximum range of 5 m for the IQ Plus and 1.5 m for the standard IQ.

- If at any point the signal strength is too low for reliable velocity measurements, the IQ will end the measurement volume at that range. In this situation, the system will automatically cut off the measurement volume at the maximum effective range. The exact limits of the measurement volume are recorded with each sample.

Signal strength is primarily a function of the amount and type of particulate matter in the water. While signal strength cannot be immediately converted to sediment concentration, it provides an excellent qualitative picture of sediment fluctuations and, with proper calibration, can be used to estimate sediment concentration.

8. Flow Data

With each sample, the IQ records cross-sectional area and flow.

- Cross-sectional area depends on the user-supplied channel geometry and water level determined by the vertical beam and pressure sensor.
- Typically, the accuracy of area data is most strongly influenced by the accuracy of channel geometry, rather than uncertainty in stage data.

The IQ can also be programmed to calculate total volume in addition to flow rate.

- Total volume is the cumulative sum of flow rate multiplied by elapsed time, and represents the total volume of water than has passed the IQ.
- Total volume can be accumulated continuously between files (when data collection is interrupted and restarted) or reset with each data file. Several methods are also provided to reset total volume (restart the accumulation at zero) within a data file, if required.
- Total volume can be output in a variety of different units as required by the user.

The accuracy of flow data depends on a few factors.

- Accuracy of cross-sectional area
- Accuracy of velocity data
- Method used to relate measured velocity to mean channel velocity

In general, the largest factor in determining the accuracy of flow data is the method used to relate measured velocity to mean velocity. Some guidelines are presented below:

- A well-established index calibration can give real-time flow accuracy of about 2-3% of the measured flow.
- Theoretical flow calculations in a regular channel (i.e., trapezoidal, concrete lined) may give accuracy of about 3-5%. This can be strongly affected by nearby intake or outlet structures or by nearby changes in channel geometry (including bends in the channel).
- Theoretical flow calculations in natural streams are difficult. They can provide reasonable results in streams with a simple, uniform cross section, but are notably limited in wide, shallow streams where velocity can vary dramatically across the width of the stream.

9. Real-time Data Output

The IQ offers several options for real-time data output, including SDI-12, Modbus, RS232 ASCII and 4-20 mA outputs.

- Only one real-time output type (RS232, RS422, SDI-12, Modbus, analog outputs) can be used at a time.
- The SDI-12 serial bus can be used to output a portion of the IQ sample data, including velocity and limited diagnostic data. Multi-cell velocity data can also be output in real-time using SDI-12.
    - For SDI-12 operation, the IQ is programmed using the RS-232 serial bus, and then Connected to an SDI-12 datalogger.
    - The IQ's SDI-12 interface is compatible with SDI-12 revisions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3. Options are provided to allow integration with a variety of data logger types.
    - When using SDI-12, the external data logger controls the timing of IQ's data collection.
    - Sample duration must be configured for the IQ to provide accurate battery life calculations when using SDI-12.
- The Modbus protocol provides a standardized means to acquire reliable digital data from a variety of sensors.
- The IQ can optionally be set up to generate analog output signals.
    - The IQ can generate up to four analog output signals at the same time.
    - Analog outputs can be either 4-20 mA or 0-5 VDC (only one analog output type can be used on a single system at any given time).

- An external analog converter and special software are required to generate the analog output signals.
- Each analog output signal can represent one variable.
- The user specifies the range of values represented by the analog output signal, customizing the output range to the particular environment.

The IQ can record data to the internal recorder at the same time as any of the above real-time data outputs are being used. SonTek encourages users to always record (and regularly download and archive) data on the internal recorder to ensure full access to diagnostic data.

10. Speed of Sound Calculations

The IQ uses sound speed to convert Doppler shift to water velocity. This section describes how to correct IQ velocity data for errors in the sound speed used for data collection.

- Since the IQ uses an internal temperature sensor for automatic sound speed compensation, user corrections are rarely needed.
- The only time sound speed corrections are normally required is if salinity has been incorrectly specified.

In shallow water, speed of sound is a function of temperature and salinity. Generally, a temperature change of 5°C or a salinity change of 12 parts per thousand (ppt) results in a change in sound speed of one percent. The full range of typical temperature and salinity levels (from -5 to 60°C and 0-60 ppt) gives a sound speed range of 1375-1600 m/s (total change of 14%).

IQ velocities scale directly with sound speed; that is, a 1% error in sound speed results in a 1% error in velocity measurements. The following formula is used for post-processing corrections and can be directly applied to the output velocity data of the IQ.

$$V_{true} = V_{orig} (C_{true} / C_{orig})$$

where:

V_{true} = Corrected velocity measurements
V_{orig} = Uncorrected (original) velocity measurements
C_{true} = True speed of sound
C_{orig} = Speed of sound used in original calculations

Errors in sound speed also affect the physical location of the IQ measurement volume, although these errors are generally very small. To calculate the correct location of the IQ measurement volume, use the following formula.

$$Z_{true} = Z_{orig} (C_{true} / C_{orig})$$

where:

Z_{true} = Corrected measurement volume location
Z_{orig} = Uncorrected (original) measurement volume location
C_{true} = True speed of sound
C_{orig} = Speed of sound used in original calculations

11. Contact Information

Any questions, concerns, or suggestions can be directed to SonTek by telephone, fax, or email.
Business hours are 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m., Pacific Standard Time, Monday through Friday.
Phone: (858) 546-8327
Fax: (858) 546-8150

Email: inquiry@sontek.com (General information)
sales@sontek.com (Sales information)
support@sontek.com (Support information)
Web: http://www.sontek.com
See our web site for information concerning new products and software/firmware upgrades.

APPENDIX C

Example Field Form

Alpine Lakes - Transducer Install/Download Form

Project Number: ____

Background Information		
Site Location (Lake):	Date of Site visit (mm/dd/yyyy):	
Aspect field personell, County staff, IPID staff:		
Manual Water Level Measurement		
Measuring point description:		
Measurement 1		
Measuring method (circle): staff plate reading rod and level survey RTK GPS survey other:		
Measurement:	Time:	Photo taken? (if staff plate) Y / N
Accuracy (+/-ft):	Units (circle one): ft, ft below survey monument, elevation NAD83, other:	
Measurement 2 (Duplicate)		
Measuring method (circle): staff plate reading rod and level survey RTK GPS survey other:		
Measurement:	Time:	Photo taken? (if staff plate) Y / N
Accuracy (+/-ft):	Units (circle one): ft, ft below survey monument, elevation NAVD88, other:	

Submersible Transducer Information	**Barometric Transducer Information**
Model:	Model:
Serial number:	Serial number:
Download time (hh:mm):	Download time (hh:mm):
Download file name:	Download file name:
Re-deployment time (hh:mm):	Re-deployment time (hh:mm):
Installation location:	Installation location:
Datalogger time synced?	Datalogger time synced?
Measurement interval:	Measurement interval:
Installation appx. depth below WL (ft):	
Installation method:	

Additional Observations or Comments
Did data logger move since last install?
Any observed data outliers?
Did water level decrease below datalogger install location during monitoring period?

Alpine Lakes - GPS Survey Form

Project Number: ____

Background Information
Date of Site visit (mm/dd/yyyy):
Aspect field personell, County staff, IPID staff:
Survey equipment:

Location		**Point Name**	**Measurement point description**
Base Station	☐		

Colchuck

Staff Plate (reservoir)	☐		
Staff Plate (outlet channel)	☐		
Sontek-IQ Install Location	☐		

Square

Survey Monument (on dam)	☐		
Staff Plate (outlet channel)	☐		
Sontek-IQ Install Location	☐		

Klonoqua

Staff Plate (reservoir)	☐		
Staff Plate (outlet channel)	☐		
Sontek-IQ Install Location	☐		

Random Duplicate

	☐		

Other

	☐		
	☐		
	☐		
	☐		
	☐		
	☐		

Survey measurements should be downloaded and corrected following each field deployment using NOAA's Online Positioning User Service (OPUS).

Additional Observations or Comments

Alpine Lakes - Flow Monitoring Form

Project Number: ____

Background Information
Date of Site visit (mm/dd/yyyy):
Aspect field personell, County staff, IPID staff:
Location (Lake):

Measurement Method (Circle): **Sontek-IQ** **Other:**

Installation Location (lat/long):		Installation method:
Battery life:		Measurement interval:
Flow observed in channel before installation? Y / N		Photo taken? Y / N
Start flow measurement		
Flow (cfs):	Stage (ft) :	Time:
End flow measurement		
Flow (cfs):	Stage (ft) :	Time:

Notes: At least one repeat measurement should be taken.
Channel geometry should be measured using an RTK GPS.

Staff plate readings (min. 3)

Measurement (ft):	Time:	Channel Flow (cfs):
Measurement (ft):	Time:	Channel Flow (cfs):
Measurement (ft):	Time:	Channel Flow (cfs):
Measurement (ft):	Time:	Channel Flow (cfs):
Measurement (ft):	Time:	Channel Flow (cfs):
Measurement (ft):	Time:	Channel Flow (cfs):
Measurement (ft):	Time:	Channel Flow (cfs):
Measurement (ft):	Time:	Channel Flow (cfs):

Confirmation Measurement Method (Circle): **FlowTracker2** **Other:**

Measurement location (lat/long):

Location along reel tape (ft)	WL depth (ft)	Velocity
Resulting flow (cfs):		

Additional Observations or Comments
